DRIVER INSTRUCTOR TRAINING MANUAL

Kentucky Department of Education
Pupil Transportation Branch
2008

EVERY CHILD
PROFICIENT & PREPARED FOR SUCCESS
KENTUCKY DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

The Kentucky Department of Education recognizes the need to have a uniform driver training program.

The Pupil Transportation Branch, with the assistance of the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and other national and state agencies, developed a standardized and comprehensive school bus driver training instructor manual to continue coordinated efforts to ensure the safety of school children statewide.

The purpose of the instructional program is to provide school bus driver training instructors, across the state of Kentucky, with a standardized and comprehensive curriculum to train and qualify new and previously employed school bus drivers.

FOREWORD

This manual was developed by Pupil Transportation Branch staff within the Kentucky Department of Education, and a selected writing committee consisting of representatives from Kentucky school districts.

This curriculum becomes the official curriculum for the Kentucky Department of Education, Pupil Transportation, to utilize when training local school district school bus driver instructors and the official curriculum for local school district driver training instructors to utilize when training local district school bus drivers.

All curriculum changes shall be made when necessary to bring curriculum into compliance with Kentucky Revised Statutes, Kentucky Administrative Regulations and departmental policies.

Curriculum revisions shall be made when changes in transportation philosophy and experience indicate revision is needed, at which time the “School Bus Drivers Curriculum Instructor’s Manual” shall be revised by the Kentucky Department of Education’s Pupil Transportation, Training and Safety Branch.

TRAINING CONCEPT

The purpose of this school bus training manual is to:

A. Train and qualify Kentucky school bus driver training instructors, utilizing the approved curriculum contained in this "School Bus Drivers Curriculum Instructor's Manual."

   1. Satisfactory completion of a minimum of thirty-three (33) hours of classroom and driving instruction is mandatory for initial instructor certification.

   2. Instructor certification renewal requires an annual completion of six (6) hours update training.

      NOTE: A curriculum of Completion/Renewal will be issued by the Kentucky Department of Education, Pupil Transportation, upon satisfactory completion of the minimum thirty-three (33) hours of classroom and driving instruction, and after each annually scheduled six (6) hours mandatory update training.

B. Qualified school bus driver training instructors shall:

   1. Train and qualify new Kentucky school bus drivers utilizing the approved curriculum provided in the "School Bus Drivers Curriculum Instructor's Manual." This curriculum is provided in the laws and regulations section of the "School Bus Driver's Curriculum Instructors Manual" (702 KAR 5:080).

   2. The Department of Education, Pupil Transportation, grants certification of all driver training instructors. This certification may be revoked by the Division, at any time, at their discretion.

   3. School Bus Driver Certification renewal requires an annual completion of eight (8) hours mandatory update training.

CURRICULUM OBJECTIVES

Train and qualify school bus driver training instructors.

Certify and prepare instructors to train and qualify school bus drivers.

Re-train and update experienced school bus drivers.

Certify and renew all school bus drivers meeting the qualifications required by the Kentucky Department of Education, Pupil Transportation.

TRAINING REQUIREMENTS

Driver training instructors shall satisfactorily complete curriculum requirements and evaluation through a training workshop, provided by Pupil Transportation, prior to the awarding of an instructor certificate.

School bus drivers are to be trained using the "School Bus Drivers Curriculum," and shall satisfactorily complete training requirements and evaluation by the training instructor prior to the awarding of a driver certificate from the Kentucky Department of Education, Pupil Transportation.

SCHOOL ENROLLMENT

The Kentucky School Bus Driver Instructor Course was developed for the state certification of currently certified Kentucky public school bus drivers. The main focus of this program is the overall enhancement of school bus safety in Kentucky. Pupil Transportation does not wish to cause undue hardship to any independent contractor or private school personnel. With this in mind, the order of enrollment in the state instructor program shall be as follows: Kentucky public school bus drivers that are nominated by their local districts and accepted by Pupil Transportation shall be enrolled first.

SCHOOL BUS DRIVER CURRICULUM INSTRUCTOR'S MANUAL

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER

1	Method of Instruction
2	Training, Certifying and Properly Scoring School Bus Drivers
3	Kentucky Laws and Regulations Governing School Bus Drivers
4	Care and Maintenance
5	Pupil Behavior Management
6	Vehicle Operation
7	Loading and Unloading
8	Driving Fundamentals
9	Forward Control Buses
10	Defensive Driving
11	Critical Situations
12	Accidents and Emergency Procedures
13	First Aid
14	Transporting Students with Special Needs
15	Commercial Driver's License
16	Extra-Curriculum Trips
17	Traffic Control Devices, Signs and Markings

= Point of Emphasis

CHAPTER 1

METHOD OF INSTRUCTION

(MOI)

PRINCIPLES OF INSTRUCTION

A. The Instructional Situation

1. Objective of scope (what and why).
2. Level of student (who).
3. Facilities (where).
4. Instructional aids (how).
5. Time (when).
6. Method (how).
7. Evaluation.

B. Organization of Materials

1. Teaching unit.
2. Dry run.

THE INSTRUCTOR

A. Characteristics of a good instructor.

1. Knowledge of the subject.
2. Leadership ability.
3. Positive personality.
4. Knowledge of teaching techniques.
5. Professional attitude.

B. Instructor Improvement

1. Know what makes a good instructor.
2. Seek help of associates.
3. Concentrate on specific elements.
4. Observe on specific element.
5. Analyze your own characteristics.
6. Make constant effort to improve.

C. Understand Students

1. Learn background.
2. Student characteristics.

D. Pitfalls to Avoid

1. Do not bluff.
2. Do not use profanity or obscenity.
3. Do not use sarcasm or ridicule.
4. Do not talk down to class.
5. Do not lose patience.

SPEECH TECHNIQUES

A. Traits of a Good Speaker

1. Commit yourself.
2. Analyze audience.
3. Organize thoughts.
4. Think sight and sound.
5. Practice.
6. Relax.
7. Enjoy.

B. Avoid Nervousness

1. Be prepared.
2. Have a good attitude.
3. Know opening remarks.
4. Review previous instruction.
5. Tell a story.
6. Slow down.

C. Characteristics of a Speaker

DESIRABLE	UNDESIRABLE
humorous	monotone
dynamic	hmm-well ah-ya know
confident	no eye contact
enthusiastic	rambling
organized/to the point	no continuity

QUESTIONING TECHNIQUES

A. Purpose of Questions

1. Improves student interest.
2. Stimulates thinking.
3. Adjusts instruction to class level.
4. Reveals student attitude.
5. Permits student contribution.
6. Provides emphasis and reinforcement of main points.
7. Checks effectiveness of instruction.

B. Characteristics of a Good Question

1. Have a specific purpose.
2. Emphasis one point.
3. Understood by all.
4. Discourage guessing.
5. Thought-provoking.

C. Questioning Strategies

1. Build-up
2. Asking the question.
   a. Ask.
   b. Pause.
   c. Call.

3. Follow-up.
    a. Guide the subject in depth.
    b. Develop the subject in depth.
    c. Develop total student participation.

INSTRUCTIONAL AIDS

A. Advantages of Learning Aids
    1. Takes pressure off.
    2. Saves time.
    3. Produces better learning.
    4. Introduces more than two (2) senses into learning process.

B. Proper Steps in Using Learning Aids
    1. Determine lesson objectives.
    2. Select appropriate aid.
    3. Prepare for use of aid.
    4. Keep aid covered or turned off.
    5. Explain to class.
    6. Be sure all can see and hear.
    7. Use pointer to direct attention.
    8. Use assistant, if appropriate.

C. Use of Specific Aids
    1. Chalkboard:
        a. Neat, simple, legible.
        b. Quick.
        c. Prepare: chalk, pencil, overhead, etc.
        d. Cover newsprint.

2. Overhead Projector:
    a. Prepare: check bulb, focus, adaptor, extension cord, lines of vision, functional pens, on and off switch.
    b. Techniques
        - Use actual object.
        - Use commercially prepared overlays, if possible.
        - Use teacher-prepared materials.
3. Filmstrips, Film, Tapes (Audio and Video)
    a. Discuss advantages (technical, professional quality).
    b. Discuss disadvantages (may not be right for your situation).
    c. Others – list bulletin board models, simulators, handouts, television and print materials.

CAUTIONS:

- **DON'T OVERUSE – "A FEW TRANSPARENCIES GO A LONG WAY."**
- **USE TITLES ON ALL CHARTS, ETC.**
- **PRACTICE WITH IT BEFORE USING IT IN CLASS.**

DEMONSTRATION METHODS

A. EXPLANATION

1. Convey to students the precise actions they are to perform.
2. Describe desired results of efforts.
3. Encourage questions during demonstrations, if needed, to clarify understanding.
4. Use training aids, if helpful, in explanation.
5. Motivate.

B. DEMONSTRATION

Instructor shows students the actions necessary in performing skills – can be concurrent with explanation.

1. Informal Demonstration on job training – (i.e., a foreman stops by where employee is working).
    a. Advantages
        - easier – less planning
        - good for individual coaching or to cover points that students have not learned well.
    b. Disadvantages
        - time consuming
        - permits waste of materials and man hours
2. Formal Demonstration – requires more planning, but results in better prepared trainees. Makes best use of available time for training.

    A good demonstration…

    a. follows logical sequences, with distinct breaks between steps;
    b. is seen and understood – (student placement);
    c. has frequent check on student understanding (asks specific questions and encourages questions); and
    d. visual aids are used when appropriate.

C. STUDENT PERFORMANCE – AND

D. INSTRUCTOR SUPERVISION

Discussed together because they are performed concurrently.

1. INSTRUCTOR

    Must allow enough time for student learning.

2. STUDENT

    a. Must practice (needs instructor supervision on occasion)

    b. Follow correct procedures

    c. Meet a reasonable time schedule.

E. <u>EVALUATION</u>

1. Judge student performance.

2. Keep student interest high.

3. Instructor measures quality of his/her instruction.

REMEMBER!

NOBODY CARES HOW MUCH YOU KNOW….

UNTIL HE OR SHE KNOWS HOW MUCH YOU CARE!

CHAPTER 2

TRAINING, CERTIFYING AND PROPERLY SCORING SCHOOL BUS DRIVERS

INTRODUCTION

This chapter deals with the sequence of events that should occur when training a school bus driver. All school districts have their own training calendar. Many are time-efficient, while others are not. This chapter gives a recommended step-by-step procedure for training school bus drivers. Pupil Transportation recommends the sequential training events outlined in this chapter. Documentation must be present in the driver's file that represents each of the training requirements or steps.

To further aid you, the Driver Training Instructor, in the training and scoring of perspective driver applicants, this chapter also fully explains the proper scoring of all driver candidates.

STEP 1

APPLICATION

Have the applicant complete an application. (See the sample application.)

(STEP 1 – APPLICATION)

SAMPLE SCHOOL BUS DRIVER APPLICATION

(Example of a form that may be used)

NAME:		AGE:	SEX:
CURRENT ADDRESS:			
HOW LONG HAVE YOU LIVED AT CURRENT ADDRESS?			
PREVIOUS ADDRESS:			
HOW LONG DID YOU LIVE THERE?			
SSN#	DOB:	PLACE:	
YEARS OF FORMAL EDUCATION COMPLETED: GRADE SCHOOL: HIGH SCHOOL: COLLEGE:			
CURRENT DRIVER'S LICENSE: OPERATOR'S		CDL:	
OTHER:	NUMBER:		STATE:
HAVE YOU HAD ANY TYPE OF VEHICLE ACCIDENT IN THE LAST THREE YEARS? YES: NO: IF YES, GIVE APPROXIMATE DATE:			
HAVE YOU BEEN ARRESTED FOR A MOVING TRAFFIC VIOLATION IN THE LAST THREE YEARS? YES: NO: IF YES, GIVE APPROXIMATE DATE:			
HAS YOUR DRIVER'S LICENSE EVER BEEN SUSPENDED OR REVOKED? YES: NO:			
TO THE BEST OF MY KNOWLEDGE, THE ANSWERS TO THE ABOVE QUESTIONS ARE COMPLETE AND CORRECT: DATE: SIGNATURE:			
REFERENCES (DO NOT USE RELATIVES, INCLUDE AT LEAST TWO PROFESSIONALS.)			
NAME	ADDRESS	PHONE	OCCUPATION

STEP 2

FIVE QUESTIONS TRANSPORTATION INTERVIEW

You, the Driver Training Instructor, must interview the driver applicant and score their answers. This is part of the FIXED 610 point total. The score sheet must become part of the Driver's Training File.

(STEP 2 – INTERVIEW)

INTERVIEW SHEET

DRIVER: _____INSTRUCTOR: _____

DATE: _____

INTERVIEW

MAX SCORE _____50___ SCORE EARNED _____

PERSONAL APPEARANCE AND INTERVIEW EXAMINATION:		
TOPIC	MAX SCORE	SCORE EARNED
A. Personal Cleanliness and Wearing Apparel	10	
B. Personality	10	
C. General Attitude	15	
D. Job Interview:		
1. Why do you want to be a school bus driver?	3	
2 What qualifications do you have?	3	
3. Do you have a plan for pupil management? (Explain)	3	
4. Do you have previous over-the-road driving experience in a bus, truck or extended auto travel?	3	
5. Why should we consider you for this job?	3	
TOTAL POSSIBLE:	50	
TOTAL SCORE:		

STEP 3

EDUCATION VERIFICATION

The driver applicant must have at least a high school diploma, GED or currently show progress toward obtaining his/her diploma in an accredited program. This requirement became effective on July 13, 1990. Have the applicant bring verification to the interview.

LEGAL OPINION

KRS 161.011 mandates that any person initially hired to hold a position of a classified employee after July 13, 1990 (which would include bus drivers) must hold at least a high school diploma or GED certificate or show progress toward obtaining a GED.

To show progress toward obtaining a GED, a person shall be enrolled in a GED program and be progressing satisfactorily through the program. For those classified employees (bus drivers) who were initially hired before July 13, 1990, local school districts shall encourage such employees who do not have a high school diploma or GED certificate to enroll in a program to obtain a high school diploma.

STEP 4

PRE-EMPLOYMENT ROAD TEST

You, the Driver Training Instructor, must administer the pre-employment road test. It only takes five minutes. You decide, "Can I train this applicant?" Not, "Can he/she already drive?"

This needs to be done on school property, if possible, and not on a school bus. The question of insurance coverage must be addressed before putting anyone in a vehicle.

(SEE THE SCORE SHEET.)

1/02

PRE-EMPLOYMENT ROAD TEST

SCORE SHEET

APPLICANTS NAME: _____DATE: _____

DRIVER TRAINING INSTRUCTOR NAME: _____DATE: _____

BOARD OF EDUCATION: _____

The driver applicant should exhibit basic knowledge in the following:

	Acceptable	Unacceptable
1) Applicant followed instruction	_____	_____
2) Applicant was open to advice	_____	_____
3) Steering technique used:	_____	_____
Place check by technique used:		
a) Hand over Hand _____		
b) Push-Pull _____		
c) Palm _____		
d) Hook _____		
e) Other _____		
4) Backing vehicle in straight line using mirrors only	_____	_____
5) Applicant consistently performed visual scan	_____	_____
6) Posture	_____	_____
a) Hand position on wheel	_____	_____
b) Right foot positioning on pedal	_____	_____
c) Adaptability to bus size	_____	_____

I recommend the applicant for enrollment into the Kentucky School Bus Driver Certification Program.

Yes _____ No _____

Comments:

_____

_____

_____

Driver Training Instructor Signature: _____ DATE: _____

Applicants Signature: _____ DATE: _____

STEP 5

MOTOR VEHICLE RECORD (MVR) CHECK

Have the applicant complete a request for a motor vehicle record check. You, the Driver Training Instructor, should review the motor vehicle record check and your local school board transportation employment policies and decide whether the applicant qualifies to be admitted into your district school bus driver training program. Each local school district **must** develop local board polices outlining employment parameters.

(STEP 5 – MVR CHECK)

MVR RELEASE AUTHORIZATION

TRANSPORTATION DEPARTMENT

I, _____.DO HEREBY AUTHORIZE THE DIVISION OF DRIVER LICENSING TO RELEASE A FIVE (5) YEAR COPY OF MY DRIVING RECORD TO THE _____ _____.

SOCIAL SECURITY NUMBER: _____

DATE OF BIRTH: _____

_____ _____

SIGNATURE DATE

SUBSCRIBED IN MY PRESENCE AND SWORN UNTO ME THIS _____ DAY OF _____, _____.

_____

NOTARY PUBLIC

MY COMMISSION EXPIRES: _____

STEP 6

CRIMINAL RECORD CHECK

A Criminal Record Check must be requested from the Kentucky State Police. Each school district **must** develop board policies outlining employment parameters. The criminal record check must then be examined to determine whether the applicant qualifies to be admitted into your district school bus driver training program.

STEP 7

PHYSICAL

Send the applicant to get his/her physical.

Give the applicant all three (3) sections of the physical form plus the white wallet size card. Once you get the physical forms back – go over them. Did the applicant pass? Are the eyes O.K.? Is the hearing O.K.? Does everything look O.K.? Did he/she pass their drug test?

The three (3) sections of the school bus driver physical are:

1) TC94-35E
2) Tuberculosis check page (required upon initial employment only)
3) Medical Examiner's Certificate

MEDICAL EXAMINATION REPORT
For Commercial Driver Fitness Determination

1. DRIVER'S INFORMATION
Driver completes this section

Driver's Name (Last, First, Middle)	Social Security Number	Birthdate (mm/dd/yyyy)	Age	Sex ☐ M ☐ F

☐ New Certification ☐ Recertification ☐ Follow Up	Date of Exam	Driver License Number	License Class ☐ A ☐ C ☐ B ☐ D ☐ Other	State of Issue

Address	City, State, Zip Code	Telephone Numbers Work ( ) Home ( )

2. HEALTH HISTORY
Driver completes this section, but medical examiner is encouraged to discuss with driver.

Yes	No	
☐	☐	Any illness or inury in last five years?
☐	☐	Head/Brain injuiries, disorders or illnesses
☐	☐	Seizures, epilespy
		☐ medication
☐	☐	Eye disorders or impaired vision (except corrective lenses)
☐	☐	Ear disorders, loss of hearing or balance
☐	☐	Heart disease or heart attack; other cardiovascular condition
		☐ medication
☐	☐	Heart surgery (valve replacement/bypass, angioplasty, pace-maker)
☐	☐	High blood pressure ☐ medication
☐	☐	Muscular disease
☐	☐	Shortness of breath
☐	☐	Lung disease, emphysema, asthma, chronic bronchitis
☐	☐	Kidney disease, dialysis
☐	☐	Liver disease
☐	☐	Digestive problems

Yes	No	
☐	☐	Diabetes or elevated blood sugar controlled by:
		☐ diet
		☐ pills
		☐ insulin
☐	☐	Nervous or psychiatric disorders, e.g. severe depression
		☐ medication
☐	☐	Loss of, or altered consciousness
☐	☐	Fainting, dizziness
☐	☐	Sleep disorders, pauses in breathing while asleep, daytime sleepiness, loud snoring
☐	☐	Stroke or paralysis
☐	☐	Missing or impaired hand, arm, foot, leg, finger, toe
☐	☐	Spinal injury or disease
☐	☐	Chronic low back pain
☐	☐	Regular, frequent alcohol use
☐	☐	Narcotic or habit forming drug use

For any YES answer, indicate onset date, diagnois, treating physician's name and address, and any current limitation. List all medications (including over-the-counter medications) used regularly or recently.

_____

_____

_____

I certify that the above information is complete and true. I understand that inaccurate, false or missing information may invalidate the examination and my Medical Examiner's Certificate.

Date

Medical Examiner's Comments on Health History (The medical examiner must review and discuss with the driver any 'yes' answers and potential hazards of medications, including over-the-counter medications, while driving.)

TESTING (Medical **Examiner** completes Section -3 through 7)

3. VISION

Standard: At least 20/40 acuity (Snellen) in each eye with or without correction. At least 70° peripheral in horizontal meridian measured in each eye. The use of corrective lenses should be noted on the Medical Examiner's Certificate.

INSTRUCTIONS: *When other than the Snellen chart is used, give test results in Snellen-comparable values. In recording distance vision, use 20 feet as normal. Report visual acuity as a ratio with 20 as numerator and the smallest type read at 20 feet as denominator. If the applicant wears corrective lenses, these should be worn while visual acuity is being tested. If the driver habitually wears contact lenses, or intends to do so while driving, sufficient evidence of good tolerance and adaptation to their use must be obvious. Monocular drivers are not qualified.*

Numerical readings must be provided.

ACUITY	UNCORRECTED	CORRECTED	HORIZONTAL FIELD OF VISION
Right Eye	20/	20/	Right Eye °
Left Eye	20/	20/	Left Eye °
Both Eyes	20/	20/	°

Applicant can recognize and distinguish among traffic control signals and devices showing standard red, green and amber colors? ☐ Yes ☐ No

Applicant meets visual acuity requirement only when wearing:

☐ Corrective Lenses

Monocular Vision: ☐ Yes ☐ No

Complete next line only if vision testing is done by an ophthalmologist or optometrist

Date of Examination | Name of Ophthalmologist or Optometrist (print) | Telephone No. | License No./State of Issue

Signature

4. HEARING

Standard: a) Must first perceive forced whispered voice ≥ 5 ft., with or without hearing aid, or b) average hearing loss in better ear ≤ 40 dB

☐ Check if hearing aid used for test. ☐ Check if hearing aid required to meet standard.

INSTRUCTIONS: *To convert audiometric test results from ISO to ANSI, -14 dB from ISO for 500 Hz, -10 dB for 1,000 Hz, -8.5 dB for 2,000 Hz. To average, add the readings for 3 frequencies tested and divide by 3.*

Numerical readings must be recorded.

a) Record distance from individual at which forced whispered voice can first be heard.	Right Ear Feet	Left Ear Feet

	Right Ear			Left Ear		
b) If audiometer is used, record hearing loss in decibels. (acc. to ANSI Z24.5-1951)	500 Hz	1000 Hz	2000 Hz	500 Hz	1000 Hz	2000 Hz
	Average:			Average:		

5. BLOOD PRESSURE/PULSE RATE

Numerical readings must be recorded.

Blood Pressure	Systolic	Diastolic

Driver qualified if ≤ 160/90 on initial exam.

Pulse Rate	☐ Regular ☐ Irregular

GUIDELINES FOR BLOOD PRESSURE EVALUATION

On initial exam		Within 3 months		Certify
If 161-180 and/or 91-104, qualify 3 mos. only.	→	If ≤ 160 and/or 90, qualify for 1 yr. Document Rx & control the 3rd month.	→	Annually if acceptable BP is maintained.
If > 180 and/or 104, not qualified until reduced to < 181/105. Then qualify for 3 mos. only.	→	If ≤ 160 and/or 90, qualify for 6 mos. Document Rx. & control the 3rd month.	→	Biannally

Medical examiner should take at least 2 readings to confirm blood pressure.

6. LABORATORY AND OTHER TEST FINDINGS

Numerical readings must be recorded.

Urinalysis is required. Protein, blood or sugar in the urine may be an indication for further testing to rule out any underlying medical problem.

URINE SPECIMEN	SP. GR.	PROTEIN	BLOOD	SUGAR

Other Testing (Describe and record)

7. PHYSICAL EXAMINATION Height:_____(in.) Weight:_____(in.)

The presence of a certain condition may not necessarily disqualify a driver, particularly if the condition is controlled adequately, is not likely to worsen or is readily amenable to treatment. Even if a condition does not disqualify a driver, the medical examiner may consider deferring the driver temporarily. Also, the driver should be advised to take the necessary steps to correct the condition as soon as possible particularly if the condition, if neglected, could result in more serious illness that might affect driving.

Check YES if there are any abnormalities. Check NO if the body system is normal. Discuss any YES answers in detail in the space below, and indicate whether it would affect the driver's ability to operate a commercial motor vehicle safely. Enter applicable item number before each comment. If organic disease is present, note that it has been compensated for.

See ***Instructions to the Medical Examiner*** for guidance.

BODY SYSTEM	CHECK FOR:	YES*	NO
1. General Appearance	Marked overweight, tremor, signs of alcoholism, problem drinking, or drug abuse.	☐	☐
2. Eyes	Pupillary equality, reaction to light, accommodation, ocular motility, ocular muscle imbalance, extraocular movement, nystagmus, exophthalmos, strabismus uncorrected by corrective lenses, retinopathy, cataracts, aphakia, glaucoma, macular degeneration.	☐	☐
3. Ears	Middle ear disease, occlusion of external canal, perforated eardrums.	☐	☐
4. Mouth and Throat	Irremediable deformities likely to interfere with breathing or swallowing.	☐	☐
5. Heart	Murmurs, extra sounds, enlarged heart, pacemaker.	☐	☐
6. Lungs and chest, not including breast examination	Abnormal chest wall expansion, abnormal respiratory rate, abnormal breath sounds including wheezes or alveolar rales, impaired respiratory function, dyspnea, cyanosis. Abnormal findings on physical exam may require further testing such as pulmonary tests and/or x-ray of chest.	☐	☐
7. Abdomen and Viscera	Enlarged liver, enlarged spleen, masses, bruits, hernia, significant abdominal wall muscle weakness.	☐	☐
8. Vascular System	Abnormal pulse and amplitude, carotid or arterial bruits, varicose veins.	☐	☐
9. Genito-urinary	Hernias.	☐	☐
10. Extremities - Limb impaired. Driver may be subject to SPE certificate if otherwise qualified.	Loss or impairment of leg, foot, toe, arm, hand, finger. Perceptible limp, deformities, atrophy, weakness, paralysis, clubbing, edema, hypotonia. Insufficient grasp and prehension in upper limb to maintain steering wheel grip. Insufficient mobility and strength in lower limb to operate pedals properly.	☐	☐
11. Spine, other musculoskeletal	Previous surgery, deformities, limitation of motion, tenderness.	☐	☐
12. Neurological	Impaired equilibrium, coordination or speech pattern; paresthesia, asymmetric deep tendon reflexes, sensory or positional abnormalities, abnormal patellar and Babinski's reflexes, ataxia.	☐	☐

*COMMENTS:_____

Note certification status here. ***See instructions to the Medical Examiner for guidance.***

Meets standards in **49** CFR 391.41; qualifies for **2** year certificate

Does not meet standards

Meets standards, but periodic evaluation required

Due to driver qualified for only:

3 months year

6 months Other

F] Temporarily disqualified due to (condition or medication):

Return to medical examiner's office for follow up on-

O wearing corrective lenses
wearing hearing aid
Accompanied by a____-waiver/exemption Skill Performance Evaluation (SPE) Certificate Driving within an exempt intracity zone Qualified by operation of 49 CFR 391.64

Medical Examiner's Signature

Medical Examiner's Name (print)-

Address-

Telephone **Number--:**

If meets standards, complete a Medical Examiner's Certificate according to 49 CFR 391.43(h).
(Driver must ca" certificate when operating a commercial vehicle.)

49 CFR 391.41 Physical Qualifications for Drivers

THE DRIVER'S ROLE

Responsibilities, work schedules, physical and emotional demands, and lifestyles among commercial drivers vary by the type of driving that they do. Some of the main types of drivers include the following: turn around or short relay (drivers return to their home base each evening); long relay (drivers drive 8-10 hours and then have an 8-hour off-duty period), straight through haul (cross country drivers); and team drivers (drivers share the driving by alternating their 4-hour driving periods and 4-hour rest periods).

The following factors may be involved in a drivers performance of duties: abrupt schedule changes and rotating work schedules, which may result in irregular sleep patterns and a driver beginning a trip in a fatigued condition; long hours; extended time away from family and friends, which may result in lack of social support; tight pickup and delivery schedules, with irregularity in work, rest, and eating patterns, adverse road, weather and traffic conditions, which may cause delays and lead to hurriedly loading or unloading cargo in order to compensate for the lost time; and environmental conditions such as excessive vibration, noise, and extremes in temperature. Transporting passengers or hazardous materials may add to the demands on the commercial driver.

There may be duties in addition to the driving task for which a driver is responsible and needs to be fit. Some of these responsibilities are: coupling and uncoupling trailer(s) from the tractor, loading and unloading trailer(s) (sometimes a driver may lift a heavy load or unload as much as 50,000 lbs. of fright after sitting for a long period of time without any stretching period); inspecting the operating condition of tractor and trailer(s) before, during and after delivery of cargo; lifting, installing, and removing heavy tire chains; and, lifting heavy tarpaulins to cover open top trailers. The above tasks demand agility, the ability to bend and stoop, the ability to maintain a crouching position to inspect the underside of the vehicle, frequent entering and exiting of the cab, and the ability to climb ladders on the tractor and/or trailer(s).

In addition, a driver must have the perceptual skills to monitor a sometimes complex driving situation, the judgment skills to make quick decisions, when necessary, and the manipulative skills to control an oversize steering wheel, shift gears using a manual transmission, and maneuver a vehicle in crowded areas.

391.41 PHYSICAL QUALIFICATIONS FOR DRIVERS

(a) **A** person shall not drive a commercial motor vehicle unless he is physically qualified to do so and, except as provided in §391.67, has on his person the original, or a photographic copy, of a medical examine(s certificate that **he** is physically qualified to drive a commercial motor vehicle.

(b) A person is physically qualified to drive a motor vehicle if that person:

(1) Has no loss of a foot, a leg, a hand, or an arm, or has been granted a Skill Performance Evaluation (SPE) Certificatory (formerly Limb Waiver Program) pursuant to §391.49.

(2) Has no impairment of: (i) **A** hand or finger which interferes with perhension or power grasping-, or (ii) An arm, foot, or leg which interferes with the ability to perform normal tasks associated with operating a commercial motor vehicle; or any other significant limb defect or limitation which interferes with the ability to perform normal tasks associated with operating a commercial motor vehicle: or has been granted a SPE Certificate pursuant to §391.49.

(3) Has no established medical history or clinical diagnosis of diabetes mellitus currently requiring insulin for control;

(4) Has no currently clinical diagnosis of myocardial infarction, angina pectoris, coronary insufficiency, thrombosis or any other cardiovascular disease of a variety known to be accompanied by syncope, dyspnea, collapse, or congestive cardiac failure.

(5) Has no established medical history or clinical diagnosis of a respiratory dysfunction likely to interfere with his ability to control and drive a commercial motor vehicle safely.

(6) Has no current clinical diagnosis of high blood pressure likely to interfere with his ability to operate a commercial motor vehicle safely. (7)

Has no established medical history or clinical diagnosis of rheumatic, arthritic, orthopedic, muscular, neuromuscular, or vascular disease which interferes with his ability to control and operate a commercial motor vehicle safely.

(8) Has no established medical history or clinical diagnosis of epilepsy or any other condition which is likely to cause loss of consciousness or any loss of ability to control a commercial motor vehicle',

(9) Has no mental, nervous, organic, or functional disease or psychiatric disorder likely to interfere with his ability to drive a commercial motor vehicle safely;

(10) Has distant visual acuity of at least 20140 (Snellen) in each eye without corrective lenses or visual acuity separately corrected to 20140 (Snellen) or better with corrective lenses, distant binocular acuity of at least 20140 (Snellen) in both eyes with or without corrective lenses, field of vision of at least 70 degrees in the horizontal meridi in each eye, and the ability to recognize the colors of traffic signals and devices showing standard red, green and amber;

(11) First perceives a forced whispered voice in the better ear not less than 5 feet with or without the use of a hearing aid, or, if tested by use of an audiometric device, does not have an average hearing loss in the better ear greater than 40 decibels at 500 Hz, 1,000 Hz and 2,000 Hz with or without a hearing aid when the audiometric device is calibrated to American National Standard (formerly ASA Standard) 7-24.5-1951;

(12) (i) Does not use a controlled substance identified in 21 CFR 1308.11 Schedule 1, an amphetamine, a narcotic, or any other habit-forming drug. (ii) Exception: A driver may use such a substance or drug, if the substance or drug is prescribed by a licensed medical practitioner who: (A) Is familiar with the driver's medical history and assigned duties; and (B) Has advised the driver that the prescribed substance or drug will not adversely affect the driver's ability to safely operate a commercial motor vehicle; and,

(13) Has no current clinical diagnosis of alcoholism.

INSTRUCTIONS TO THE MEDICAL EXAMINER

General Information

The purpose of this examination is to determine a driver's physical qualification to operate a commercial motor vehicle (CMV) in interstate commerce according to the requirements in 49 CFR 391.41-49. Therefore, the medical examiner must be knowledgeable of these requirements and guidelines developed by the FMCSA to assist the medical examiner in making the qualification determination. The medical examiner should be familiar with the drivers responsibilities and work environment and is referred to the section on the form, The Drive(s Role.

In addition to reviewing the Health History section with the driver and conducting the physical examination, the medical examiner should discuss common perceptions and the over-the-counter medications relative to the side effects and hazards of these medications while driving. Educate driver to read warning labels on all medications. History of certain conditions may be cause for rejection, particularly if required by regulation, or may indicate the need for additional laboratory tests or more stringent examination perhaps by a medical specialist. These decisions are usually made by the medical examiner in light of the driver's job responsibilities, work schedule and potential for the condition to render the driver unsafe.

Medical conditions should be recorded even if they are not cause for denial, and they should be discussed with the driver to encourage appropriate remedial care. This advice is especially needed when a condition, if neglected, could develop into a serious illness that could affect driving.

If the medical examiner determines that the driver is fit to drive and is also able to perform non-driving responsibilities as may be required, the medical examiner signs the medical certificate which the driver must carry with his/her license. The certificate must be dated. Under current regulations, the certificate is valid for two years, unless the driver has a medical condition that does not prohibit driving but does require more frequent monitoring. In such situations, the medical certificate should be issued for a shorter length of time. The physical examination should be done carefully and at least as complete as indicated by the attached form. Contact the FMCSA at (202) 366-1790 for further information (a vision exemption, qualifying drivers under 49 CFR 391-64, etc.).

Federal L4otor Carrier Safety Regulations
- Advise Criteria -

Interpretation of Medical Statements

Since the issuance of the regulations for physical qualifications of commercial drivers, the Federal Motor Carriers Safety Administration (FMCSA) has published recommendations called Advisory Criteria to help medical examiners in determining whether a driver meets the physical qualifications for commercial driving. These recommendations have been condensed to provide information to medical examiners that (1) is directly relevant to the physical examination and (2) is not already included in the medical examiner's form. The specific regulation is printed in italics and its reference by section is highlighted.

Loss **of Limb:**
§ 391.41(b)(1)

A person is physically qualified to drive a commercial motor vehicle if that person:

Has no loss of a foot, leg, hand or an arm, or has been granted a Skill Performance Evaluation (SPE) Certificate pursuant to Section 391.49.

Limb **Impairment: § 391.41(b)(2)**

A person is physically qualified to drive a commercial motor vehicle if that person:

Has no impairment of.- (i) A hand or finger which interferes with prehension or power grasping,, or (ii) An a/7n, foot, or leg which interferes with the ability to perform normal tasks associated with operating a commercial motor vehicle; or (iii) Any other significant limb defect or limitation which interferes with the ability to perform normal tasks associated with operating a commercial motor vehicle; or, (iv) Has been granted a Skill Performance Evaluation Certificate pursuant to Section 391.49.

A person who suffers loss of a foot, leg, hand or arm or whose limb impairment in any way interferes with the safe performance of normal tasks associated with operating a commercial motor vehicle is subject to the Skill Performance Evaluation (SPE) Certification Program pursuant to section 391.49, assuming the person is otherwise qualified.

With the advancement of technology, medical aids and equipment modifications have been developed to compensate for certain disabilities. The SPE Certification Program (formerly the Limb Waiver Program) was designed to all low persons with the loss of a foot or limb or with functional impairment to qualify under the Federal Motor Carrier Safety Regulations (FMCSRS) by use of prosthetic devices or equipment modifications which enable them to safely operate a commercial motor vehicle. Since there are no medical aids equivalent to the original body or limb, certain risks are still present, and thus restrictions may be included on individual SPE certificates when a State Director for the FMCSA determines they are necessary to be consistent with safety and public interest.

If the driver is found otherwise medically qualified (301.41(b)(3) through (13),). the medical examiner must check on the medical certificate that the driver is qualified only if accompanied by a SPE certificate. The driver and the employing motor carrier are subject to appropriate penalty if the driver operates a motor vehicle in interstate or foreign commerce without a current SPE certificate for his/her physical disability.

INSTRUCTIONS TO THE MEDICAL EXAMINER (CONTINUED)

federal Motor Carrier Safety Regulations - Advisory Criteria - (Continued)

Diabetes

§ **391.41 (b) (3)**

A person is physically qualified to drive a commercial motor vehicle if that person:

Has no established medical history or clinical diagnosis of diabetes mellitus currently requiring insulin for control.

Diabetes mellitus is a disease which, on occasion, can result in a loss of consciousness or disorientation in time and space. individuals who require insulin for control have conditions which can get out of control by the use of too much or too little insulin, or food intake not consistent with the insulin dosage. Incapacitation may occur from symptoms of hyperglycemic or hypoglycemic reactions (drowsiness, semi consciousness, diabetic coma or insulin shock).

The administration of insulin is, within itself, a complicated process requiring insulin, syringe, needle, alcohol sponge and a sterile technique. Factors related to a long-haul commercial motor vehicle operations, such as fatigue, lack of sleep, poor diet, emotional conditions, stress, and concomitant illness, compound the diabetic problem. Thus, because if these inherent dangers, the FMCSA has consistently held that a diabetic who uses insulin for control does not meet the minimum physical requirements of the FMCSRS.

Hypoglycemic drugs, taken orally, are sometimes prescribed for diabetic individuals to help stimulate natural body production of insulin. If the condition can be controlled by the use of oral medication and diet, then an individual may be qualified under the present rule.

(See Conference Report on Diabetic Disorders and Commercial Drivers and Insulin-Using Commercial Motor Vehicle Drivers at: http:/Iwww.fmcsa.dot.goviruiesregs/medreports.htm)

Cardiovascular Condition

§ **391.41 (b) (4)**

A person is physically qualified to drive a commercial motor vehicle if that person:

Has no current clinical diagnosis of myocardial infarction, angina pectoris, coronary insufficiency, thrombosis or any other cardiovascular disease of a variety known to be accompanied by syncope, dyspnea, collapse or congestive cardiac failure.

The term "has no current clinical diagnosis of' is specifically designed to encompass: *'a clinical diagnosis or*

(1) a current cardiovascular condition, or (2) a cardiovascular condition which has not fully stabilized regardless of the time limit. The term *'known to be accompanied by ' is* defined to include: *a clinical diagnosis of* a cardiovascular disease (1) which is accompanied by symptoms of syncope, dyspnea, collapse or congestive cardiac failure; and/or (2) which is likely to cause syncope, dyspnea, collapse or congestive cardiac failure.

It is the intent of the FMCSRs to render unqualified, a driver who has a current cardiovascular disease which is accompanied by and/or likely to cause symptoms of syncope, dyspnea, collapse, or congestive cardiac failure. However, the subjective decision of whether the nature and severity of an individual's condition will likely cause symptoms of cardiovascular insufficiency is on an individual basis and qualification rests with the medical examiner and the motor carrier. In those cases where there is an occurrence of cardiovascular insufficiency (myocardial infarction, thrombosis, etc.), ft is suggested before a driver is certified that he or she have a normal resting and stress electrocardiogram (ECG) no residual complications and no physical limitations, and taking no medication likely to interfere with safe driving.

Coronary artery bypass surgery and pacemaker implantation are remedial procedures and thus, not unqualifying. Coumadin is a medical treatment which can improve the health and safety of the driver and should not, by its use, medically disqualify the commercial driver. The emphasis should be on the underlying medical condition(s) which require treatment and the general health of the driver. The FMCSA should be contacted at (202) 366-1790 for additional recommendations regarding the physical qualification of drivers on coumadin.

(See Conference on Cardiac Disorders and Commercial Drivers at: http:Iwww.fmcsa.dot.gov/ruiesregs/medreports.htm)

Respiratory Dysfunction

§ **391.41 (b)(5)**

A person is physically qualified to drive a commercial motor vehicle if that person:

Has no established medical history or clinical diagnosis of a respiratory dysfunction likely to interfere with ability to control and drive a commercial motor vehicle safely.

Since a driver must be alert at all times, any change **in** his or her mental state is in direct conflict with highway safety. Even the slightest impairment in respiratory function under emergency conditions (when greater oxygen supply is necessary for performance) may be detrimental to safe driving.

There are many conditions that interfere with oxygen exchange and may result in incapacitation, including emphysema, chronic asthma, carcinoma, tuberculosis, chronic bronchitis and sleep apnea. If the medical examiner detects a respiratory dysfunction, that in any away is likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control and drive a commercial motor vehicle, the driver must be referred to a specialist for further evaluation and therapy. Anticoagulation therapy for deep vein thrombosis and/or pulmonary thromboembolism is not unqualifying once optimum dose is achieved, provided lower extremity venous examinations remain normal and the treating physician gives a favorable recommendation.

(See Conference on Pulmonary/Respiratory Disorders and Commercial Drivers at: http://www.faicsa.dot.govlruiesregs/medreports.htm)

INSTRUCTIONS **TO** THE MEDICAL EXAMINER (CONTINUED)

Federal Motor Carrier Safety Regulations - Advisory Criteria - (Continued)

Hypertension §

391.41(b)(6)

A person is physically qualified to drive a commercial motor vehicle if that person:

Has no current clinical diagnosis of high blood pressure likely to interfere with ability to operate a commercial motor vehicle safety.

Hypertension alone is unlikely to cause sudden collapse; however, the likelihood increases when target organ damage, particularly cerebral vascular disease is present. This regulatory criteria is based upon FMCSA's Cardiac Conference recommendations, which used the report of the 1984 Joint National Committee on Detection, Evaluation, and Treatment of High Blood Pressure.

A blood pressure of 161-180 and/or 9 1 -1 04 diastolic is considered mild hypertension, and the driver is not necessarily unqualified during evaluation and institution of treatment. The driver is given ;a 3-month period to reduce his or her blood pressure to less than or equal to 160/90; the certifying physician should state on the medical certificate that it is only valid for that 3-,nonth period. If the driver is subsequently found qualified with a blood pressure less than or equal to 160/90, the certifying physical may issue a medical certificate for 6 1-year period, but should confirm blood pressure control in the third month of this 1-year period. The individual should be certified annually thereafter. The expiration date must be stated on the medical certificate.

A blood pressure of greater than 180 systolic and/or greater than 104 diastolic is considered moderate to severe. The driver may not be qualified, even temporarily, until his or her blood pressure has been reduced to less than 181/105. The examining physician may temporarily certify the individual once the individual's blood pressure is below 181 and/or 105. For blood pressure greater than 180 and/or 104, documentation of continued control should be made very 6 months. The individual should be certified biannually thereafter. The expiration date must be stated on the medical certificate. Commercial drivers who present for certification with normal blood pressures but are taking medication(SE) for hypertension should be certified on the same basis as individuals who present with blood pressures in the mild or moderate to severe range. Annual recertification is recommended if the medical examiner is unable to establish the blood pressure at the time of diagnosis.

An elevated blood pressure finding should be confirmed by at least two subsequent measurements on different days. Inquiry should be made regarding smoking, r-ardiovasculardisease in relatives, and immoderate use of alcohol. An electrocardiogram (ECG) and blood profile, including glucose, cholesterol, HDL cholesterol, creatinine and potassium, should be made. An echocardiogram and chest x-ray are desirable in subjects with moderate or severe hypertension.

Since the presence of target damage increases the risk of sudden collapse, group 3 or 4 hypertensive retinopathy, left ventricular hypertrophy not otherwise explained (echocardiography or ECG by Estes criteria), evidence of severely reduced left ventricular function, or serum creatinine of greater than 2.5 warrants the driver being found unqualified to operate a commercial motor vehicle in interstate commerce.

Treatment includes nonpharmacologic and pharmacologic modalities as well as counseling to reduce other risk factors. Most antihypertensive medications also have side effects, the importance of which must be judged on an individual basis. Individuals must be alerted to the hazards of these medications while driving. Side effects of somnolence or syncope are particularly undesirable in commercial drivers.

A commercial driver who has normal blood pressure 3 or more months after a successful operation for pheochromocytoma, primary aidosteronism (unless bilateral adrenalectorny has been performed), renovascular disease, or unilateral renal parenchymal disease, and who shows no evidence of target organ may be qualified. Hypertension that persists despite surgical intervention with no target organ disease should be evaluated and treated following the guidelines set forth above.

(See Conference on Cardiac Disorders and Commercial Drivers at: http:/lwww.fmcsa.dot.govlrulesregstmedreports.htm)

Rheumatic, Arthritic, Orthopedic, Muscular, Neuromuscular or Vascular Disease § 391.41(b)(7)

A person is physically qualified to drive a commercial motor vehicle if that person:

Hasno establishedmedicalhistoryorclinicaldiagnosisofrheumatic, arthritic, orthopedic, muscular, neuromuscularorvasculardisease which interferes with ability to control and operate a commercial motor vehicle safely.

Certain diseases are known to have acute episodes of transient muscle weakness, poor muscular coordination (ataxia), abnormal sensations (paresthesia), decreased muscular tone (hypotonia), visual disturbances and pain which may be suddenly incapacitating. With each recurring episode, these symptoms may become more pronounced and remain for longer periods of time. Other diseases have more insidious onsets and display symptoms of muscle wasting (atrophy), swelling and paresthesia which may not suddenly incapacitate a person but may restrict his/her movements and eventually interfere with the ability to safely operate a motor vehicle. In many instances these diseases are degenerative in nature or may result in deterioration of the involved area.

Once the individual has been diagnosed as having a rheumatic, arthritic, orthopedic, muscular, neuromuscular or vascular disease, then he/she has an established history of that disease. The physician, when examining an individual, should consider the following: (1) the nature and severity of the individual's condition (such as sensory loss or loss of strength); (2) the degree of limitation present (such as range of motion); (3) the likelihood of progressive limitation (not always present initially but may manifest itself overtime); and (4) the likelihood of sudden incapacitation. If severe functional impairment exist. the driver does not qualify. In cases where more frequent monitoring is required, a certificate for a shorter time period may be issued. (See Conference on Neurological Disorders and Commercial Drivers at: http:tlwww.fmcsa.dot.govfruiesregs/medreports.htm)

INSTRUCTIONS TO THE MEDICAL EXAMINER (CONTINUED)

Federal Motor Carrier Safety Regulations - Advisory Criteria - (Continued)

Epilepsy

5:391.41(b)(8)

A person is physically qualified to drive a commercial motor vehicle if that person:

Has no established medical history or clinical diagnosis of epilepsy or any other condition which is likely to cause loss of consciousness or any loss of ability to control a motor vehicle.

Epilepsy is a chronic functional disease characterized by seizures or episodes that occur without warning, resulting in loss of consciousness and/or seizures. Therefore, the following drivers cannot be qualified: (1) a driver who has a medical history of epilepsy; (2) a driver who has a current clinical diagnosis of epilepsy; or (3) a driver who is taking antiseizure medication.

If an individual has had a sudden episode of a non epileptic seizure or loss of consciousness of unknown cause which did not require antiseizure medication, the decision as to whether that person's condition will likely cause loss of consciousness or loss of ability to control a motor vehicle is made on an individual basis by the medical examiner in consultation with the treating physician. Before certification is considered, it is suggested that a 6-month waiting period elapse from the time of the episode. Following the waiting period, it is suggested that the individual have a complete neurological examination. If the results of the examination are negative and antiseizure or episode loss of consciousness that resulted from a known medical condition (e.g., drug reaction, high temperature, acute infectious disease, dehydration or acute metabolic disturbance), certification should be deferred until the driver has fully recovered from that condition and has no existing residual complications, and not taking antiseizure medication.

(See Conference on Neurological Disorders and Commercial Drivers at: http://www.fmcsa.dot.govlruiesregs/medreports.htm)

Mental Disorders

§ 391.41(b)(9)

A person is physically qualified to drive a commercial motor vehicle if that person:

Has no mental, nervous, organic or functional disease or psychiatric disorder likely to interfere with ability to drive a motor vehicle safely.

Emotional or adjustment problems contribute directly to an individual's level **of** memory, reasoning, attention and judgment. These problems often underlie physical disorders. **A** variety **of** functional disorders can cause drowsiness, dizziness, confusion, weakness or paralysis that may lead to in coordination, inattention, loss **of** functional control **and** susceptibility to accidents while driving. physical fatigue, headache, impaired coordination, resuming physical ailments and chronic 'nagging' pain may be present to such a degree that certification to commercial driving is inadvisable. Somatic and psychosomatic complaints should be thoroughly examined when determining an individual's overall fitness to drive. Disorders of a periodically incapacitating nature, even in the early stages of development, may warrant disqualification.

Many bus and truck drivers have documented that in various trouble" related to neurotic, personality, emotional or adjustment problems **is** responsible for significant fraction of their preventable accidents. The degree to which an individual is able to appreciate, evaluate and adequately respond to environmental strain and emotional stress is critical when;3ssessing an individual's mental alertness and flexibility to cope with the stresses of commercial motor vehicle driving.

When examining the driver, it should be kept in mind that individuals who live under chronic emotional upsets may have deeply ingrained inadaptive or erratic behavior patterns. Excessively antagonistic, instinctive, impulsive, openly aggressive, paranoid or severely depressed behavior patterns. Excessively antagonistic, instinctive, impulsive, openly aggressive, paranoid or severely depressed behavior greatly interfere with the driver's ability to drive safely. Those individuals who are highly susceptible to frequent states of emotional instability (schizophrenia, affective psychoses, paranoia, anxiety or depressive neuroses) may warrant disqualification. See Psychiatric Conference Report for specific recommendations on the use of these medications and potential hazards for driving.

(See Conference on Psychiatric Disorders and Commercial Drivers at: http:/lwww.fmcsa.dot.govlruiesregs/medreports.htm)

Vision

§ 391.41 (b)(I 0)

A person is physically qualified to drive a commercial motor vehicle if that person:

Has distant visual acuity of at least 20140 (Snellen) in each eye with or without corrective lenses or visual acuity separately corrected to *20140 (Snellen) or better with corrective lenses, distant binocular acuity of at least 20140 (Snellen) in both eyes with or without corrective lenses, field of vision of at least 70 degrees in the horizontal meridian in each eye, and the ability to recognize the colors of traffic signals and devices showing standard red, green, and amber.*

The term "ability to recognize the colors or is interpreted to mean if a person can recognize and distinguish among traffic control signals and devices showing standard red, green and amber, he or she meets the minimum standard, even though he or she may have some type of color perception deficiency. If certain color perception tests are administered. (such as lshihara, Pseudoisochromatic, Yarn) and doubtful findings are discovered, a controlled test using signal red, green and amber may be employed to determine the driver's ability to recognize these colors.

Contact lenses are permissible if there is sufficient evidence to indicate that the driver has good tolerance and is well adapted to their use. Use of a contact lens in one eye for distance visual acuity and another lens in the other eye for near vision is not acceptable, or telescopic lenses acceptable for the driving of commercial motor vehicles.

If an individual meets the c6teria by the use of c lasses or contact lenses, the following statement shall appear on the Medical Examiner's

'I

Certificate: 'Qualified only if wearing corrective lenses."

(See Visual Disorders and Commercial Drivers at: http://www.fmcsa.dot.govlrulesregs/medreports.htm)

INSTRUCTIONS TO THE MEDICAL EXAMINER **(CONTINUED)**

Federal Motor Carrier Safety Regulations - Advisory Criteria - (Continued)

Hearing

§ 391.41(b)(11)

A person is physically qualified to drive a commercial motor vehicle if that person:

First perceives a forced whispered voice in the better ear at not less than 5 feet with or without the use of a hearing aid, or, if tested by use of an audiometric device, does not have an average hearing loss in the better ear greater than 40 decibels at 500 Hz, 1,000 Hz, and 2,000 Hz with or without a heating aid when the audiometric device is calibrated to American National Standard (formerly ASA Standard) Z24.5-1951.

Since the prescribed standard under the FMCSRs in the American Standards (ANSI), it may be necessary to convert the audiometric results from the ISO standard to the ANSI standard. instructions are included on the Medical Examination report form.

If an individual meets the criteria by using a hearing aid, the driver must wear that hearing aid and have it in operation at all times while driving. Also, the driver must be in possession of a spare power source for the hearing aid.

For the whispered voice test, the individual should be stationed at least 5 feet from the examiner with the ear being tested turned toward the examiner. The other ear is covered. Using the breath which remains after a normal expiration, the examiner whispers words or random numbers such as 66, 18, 23, etc. The examiner should not use only sibilants (s-sounding test materials). The opposite ear should be tested in the same manner. If the individual fails the whispered voice test, the audiometric test should be administered.

If the individual meets the criteria by the use of a hearing aid, the following statement must appear on the Medical Examiner’s Certificate’ Qualified only when wearing a hearing aid.'

(See Hearing Disorders and Commercial Motor Vehicle Drivers at: http://www.fmcsa.dot.gov/rulesregs/medreports.htm)

Drug Use

§ **391.41(b)(12)**

A person is physically qualified to drive a commercial motor vehicle if that person:

Does not use a controlled substance identified in 21'CFR 1308.11. Schedule 1, an amphetamine, a narcotic, or any other habit-forming drug. Excep6on: A driver may use such a substance or drug, if the substance or drug is prescribed by a licensed medical practitioner who is familiar with the driver's medical history and assigned duties; and has advised the driver that the prescribed substance or drug will not adversely affect the driver's ability to safely operate a commercial motor vehicle.

This exception does not apply to methadone. The intent of the medical certification process it to medically evaluate a driver to ensure that the driver has no medical condition which interferes with the safe performance of driver tasks on a public road. If a driver uses a Schedule I drug or other substance, an amphetamine, a narcotic, or any other habit-forming drug, it may be cause for the driver to be found medically unqualified. Motor carriers are encouraged to obtain a practitioner's written statement about the effects on transportation safety of the use of a particular drug.

A test for controlled substances is not required as part of this biennial certification process. The FMCSA or the driver's employer should be contacted directly for information on controlled substances and alcohol testing under Part 382 of the FMCSRS.

The term 'uses' is designed to encompass instances of prohibited drug use determined by a physician through established medical means. This may or may not involve body fluid testing. If body fluid testing takes place, positive test results should be confirmed by a second test of greater specificity. The term 'habit-forming' is intended to include any drug or medication generally recognized as capable of being habitual, and which may impair the users ability to operate a Commercial motor vehicle safely.

The driver is medically unqualified for the duration of the prohibited drug(s) use and until a second examination shows the driver is free from the prohibited drug(s) use. Recertification may involve **a** substance abuse evaluation, the negative drug test result. Additionally, given that the certification period is normally two years, the examiner has the option to certify for a period of less than 2 years if this examiner determines more frequent monitoring is required.

(See Conference on Neurological Disorders and Commercial Drivers and Conference on Psychiatric Disorders and Commercial Drivers at: http:llwww.fmcsa.dot.gov/ruiesregs/medreports.htrri)

Alcoholism

§ 391.41(b)(13)

A person is physically qualified to drive a commercial motor vehicle if that person:

Has no current clinical diagnosis of alcoholism.

The term "current clinical diagnosis of' is specifically designed to encompass a current alcoholic illness or those instances where the individual's physical condition has not fully stabilized, regardless of the time element. If an individual shows signs of having an alcohol-use problem, he or she should be referred to a specialist. After counseling and/or treatment, he or she may be considered for certification.

SUPPLEMENT TO TC 94-35 E

School Bus Drivers Must Be Tested For Tuberculosis Upon Initial Employment.

Tuberculin Test Required: Yes _____ No _____

Name: _____ Birthdate: _____
(Last) (First) (Middle)

Address: _____
(Street) (City) (State) (Zip)

Date Given: _____

Type of Test:_____

Millimeters of Induration: _____

Date Read: _____ By Whom: _____

OR

Date X-Ray Taken: _____

☐ No further follow-up necessary unless sign/symptoms of tuberculosis develop. *If test is positive, further follow-up with mantoux is recommended by the Cabinet for Human Resources.*

The above name patient has received a tuberculin skin test, a chest x-ray or other follow-up in accordance with current regulations.

_____ _____
(Date Issued) (Medical Examiner/Health Department)

MEDICAL EXAMINER'S CERTIFICATE

I hereby certify that _____
Has been examined by my in accordance with the Kentucky Administrative Regulations concerning the physical fitness requirements for school bus drivers and in accordance with the particular items shown on Form TC 94-35E MEDICAL EXAMINATION REPORT FOR COMMERCIAL DRIVER FITNESS DETERMINATION, which is on file in my office.

In my opinion, the above named person is physically and emotionally

QUALIFIED _____ DISQUALIFIED _____

to perform the duties of a school bus driver.

Qualified only while wearing glasses: Yes _____

No _____

Other qualification restrictions: _____

_____

_____

_____
Medical Examiner's Signature

_____ _____
Date Medical Examiner's Signature

MEDICAL EXAMINER: Send this sheet to the Board of Education.
This sheet will serve as the official record of
your examination of the above named person.

KENTUCKY DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION

STEP 8

PRE-EMPLOYMENT DRUG TEST

As a condition for employment, a driver applicant must be administered a drug test. The results of the test must be screened and are confidential. The test results should be in a separate folder and not be in with the driver's training records.

STEP 9

ALL CLEAR

If everything is acceptable at this point, the applicant can “now” be enrolled in the Driver Training Program.

Send a letter of acceptance to each driver applicant. This letter should congratulate them for being accepted and inform them of the specifics of the first class i.e. location, time, attire, etc.

STEP 10

CDL STUDY PERIOD

At this point, you, the Driver Training Instructor, should teach your applicant all information about the CDL written tests. This class should be held the day before the student takes the three (3) CDL written tests. The CDL manual, CDL study guides and Chapter 15 of this manual should be referenced to prepare the applicant to take these tests.

After passing the tests, the student will obtain their CDL permit. From this date, the student must wait ten (10) calendar days before taking the skills test. This is the perfect time to train the applicant.

STEP 11

CDL WRITTEN TESTS

A Kentucky School Bus Driver applicant should take three (3) tests. These tests are: 1) General Knowledge, 2) Air Brakes and 3) Passenger.

STEP 12

CARE AND MAINTENANCE

Before you start this section, **REMEMBER: YOU MUST TEACH THE CHAPTERS REQUIRED IN THIS MANUAL TO FULFILL THE STATE REGULATIONS (702 KAR 5:080).**

"Care and Maintenance" training is a two-hour minimum requirement. The student should score at least 80% on their "Care and Maintenance" written test. If the student scores below 80%, he/she needs remedial work and retesting. The student applicant should also be able to perform a legal and recognized pre-trip inspection to the satisfaction of you, the Driver Training Instructor.

*** Each required test is located at the end of each chapter. Each district may administer other tests, however, the supplied end of chapter test is state required.**

6/03

NAME: _____DATE:_____

CHAPTER 4
CARE AND MAINTENANCE
TEST
**** PLEASE ANSWER TRUE (T) OR FALSE (F) OR FILL IN THE BLANKS****

1. _____ Crossing gates shall be inspected during a pre-trip inspection and, if inoperable, the bus shall be deadlined immediately.

2. _____ Cuts or bruises in a tire side wall should not affect the tires overall life.

3. _____ When depressed, the clutch's function is to disengage the transmission from the drive shaft.

4. _____ High speed is more detrimental to tires in cold weather than hot.

5. _____ The voltmeter indicates the amount of charge in the battery.

6. _____ The parking brake should be used only when parking. It is not permissible to engage the parking brake to hold the bus on a hill.

7. _____ Which bus component works on fluid or air pressure?

8. _____ All front tires require a minimum of two thirty-seconds of an inch (2/32") of tread in all major grooves.

9. _____ Four (4) emergency items to check on a Kentucky school bus are 1) fire extinguisher, 2) first-aid kit, 3) reflective triangles and 4) a body fluid clean-up kit.

10. _____ The alternator belt should have no more than three quarters of an inch (3/4") play.

INSTRUCTOR'S SIGNATURE: _____ DATE: _____

CHAPTER 4
CARE AND MAINTENANCE
TEST

**** PLEASE ANSWER TRUE (T) OR FALSE (F) OR FILL IN THE BLANKS****

ANSWER KEY

The answer key is only released to KDE endorsed trainers.

STEP 13

DRIVING FUNDAMENTALS

"Driving Fundamentals" class is a two-hour minimum requirement. The student should score at least 80% on their "Driving Fundamentals" written test. If the student scores below 80%, he/she needs remedial work and retesting.

6/03

NAME:_____DATE:_____

CHAPTER 8
DRIVING FUNDAMENTALS
TEST
ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE OR FILL IN THE BLANK

1. _____ The width of a full size school bus, excluding mirrors, is how many inches?

2. _____ When performing a visual scan, a school bus driver should look ahead how many seconds?

3. _____ Parking is prohibited within thirty feet (30’) of a railroad crossing.

4. _____ The most effective steering technique is push-pull.

5. _____ An oil pressure gauge indicates how much oil you have in the bus.

6. _____ Warm up an engine at fast idle.

7. _____ A diesel engine should run at least three (3) minutes before it is shut down.

8. _____ Your foot should remain over the clutch at all times when you are driving.

9. _____ The correct hand position on the steering wheel is 9 and 2.

10. _____ When approaching a railroad crossing, a school bus driver should tap the brakes a minimum of how many times?

11. _____ It is not legal to pass another vehicle on the right at any time.

12. _____ The normal reaction time for most drivers is 1/2 second.

13. _____ Parking is prohibited within intersections.

14. _____ The distance a bus must stop at a railroad crossing is not less than fifteen (15) or more than thirty feet (30').

15. _____ The only turnabout that should be performed in a Kentucky school bus is a three point turnabout.

16. _____ School bus drivers should not turn right on red.

17. _____ An rectangular sign shape means information.

18. _____ A road sign with a red slash inside a circle means that something is prohibited.

19. _____ No person shall stop a school bus within 30 feet of any flashing beacon, stop sign, or traffic control signal located at the side of the road.

20. _____ You may legally stop a school bus in front of a driveway to load or unload students.

INSTRUCTOR'S SIGNATURE: _____ DATE: _____

CHAPTER 8
DRIVING FUNDAMENTALS
TEST

**** PLEASE ANSWER TRUE (T) OR FALSE (F) OR FILL IN THE BLANKS****

ANSWER KEY

The answer key is only released to KDE endorsed trainers.

STEP 14

DEFENSIVE DRIVING

Defensive Driving Training is not a state mandated chapter, however, the material is essential. The student should score at least 80% on the "Defensive Driving" test. If the student scores below 80%, he/she needs remedial work and retesting.

NAME: _____ DATE: _____

CHAPTER 10
DEFENSIVE DRIVING
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

1. _____ The number one cause of traffic accidents is driver error.

2. _____ An example of a vehicle condition that could lead to a hazardous situation is the driver being intoxicated.

3. _____ Driver attitude usually has little effect on driving ability.

4. _____ When learning to drive a school bus, it is best to become knowledgeable by driving with children on board.

5. _____ Preventative maintenance is a vital part of defensive driving.

INSTRUCTOR'S SIGNATURE: _____ DATE: _____

CHAPTER 10
DEFENSIVE DRIVING
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

ANSWER KEY

The answer key is only released to KDE endorsed trainers.

STEP 15

LAWS AND REGULATIONS

"Laws and Regulations" training is a two-hour minimum requirement. The student should score at least 80% on their "Laws and Regulations" test. If the student scores below 80% he/she needs remedial work and retesting.

6/03

NAME: _____DATE:_____

CHAPTER 3
KENTUCKY LAWS AND REGULATIONS GOVERNING SCHOOL BUS DRIVERS
TEST
**** PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

1. _____ School bus drivers must obey all Kentucky Laws unless superceded by a state regulation.

2. _____ A law is a rule of conduct that has been enacted by the Kentucky State Police.

3. _____ A regulation is an aid in carrying out the law.

4. _____ The Department of Education adopts laws and regulations governing pupil transportation.

5. _____ Local school districts do not receive money for pupil transportation from the state. Transportation monies originate from the local tax base.

6. _____ All local boards of education in Kentucky are required to provide pupil transportation.

7. _____ Local boards of education are required to provide liability and indemnity insurance for school buses.

8. _____ All school sponsored trips must be chaperoned by a school faculty or staff member.

9. _____ All school buses must have folding stop signs.

10. _____ All traffic must stop for school buses loading or unloading students on a two-lane highway.

11. _____ The Kentucky Board of Education governs the design and operation of school buses.

12. _____ The Department of Education establishes guidelines and procedures for school bus specifications and purchasing.

13. _____ School buses are not required to stop at all railroad crossings at grade level.

14. _____ The Department of Education helps local districts provide economy in operation.

15. _____ Each local superintendent is responsible for monthly school bus inspections.

16. _____ Local superintendents are required to provide training for bus drivers.

17. _____ All Kentucky school bus drivers are required to have had behind the wheel training during initial training.

18. _____ Local boards of education are not required to provide written contracts for all bus drivers.

19. _____ Local boards of education are required to make provisions for the mechanical maintenance for their districts' school buses.

20. _____ Local boards are not required to provide safety instruction for pupils riding buses, however it is recommended.

21. _____ All Kentucky school bus drivers are required to pass an annual physical examination.

22. _____ Each school principal is required to provide supervision and discipline relating to pupils riding buses.

23. _____ Bus drivers must report serious discipline problems to the principal.

24. _____ Drivers may carry firearms on a school bus if they are licensed to carry such.

25. _____ Principals are required to provide bus drivers with student rider names and addresses.

26. _____ A Kentucky public school bus driver must be a minimum of eighteen (18) years of age.

27. _____ A school bus driver must have the ability to recognize the colors of traffic signals.

28. _____ A school bus driver must have a current Kentucky driver license.

29. _____ Substitute bus drivers are not required to meet the same standards as regular drivers.

30. _____ A school bus driver must supervise the seating of students on the bus.

31. _____ Students riding a school bus cannot stand in the step-well or landing
area of the bus.

32. _____ School bus drivers who wear hearing aids, must have a spare battery with them when operating the bus.

33. _____ A student may bring a dog to school on the bus if the animal is to be used for class on that particular day.

34. _____ The driver is required to signal pupils that do not cross the roadway to board the bus.

35. _____ The driver is required to signal pupils that must cross the roadway to board the bus.

36. _____ The bus warning lights must be activated before the bus stops.

37. _____ A school bus may be filled with fuel while students are on the bus on extracurricular trips only.

38. _____ A bus driver may order a pupil off the bus.

39 _____ A school bus stop signal may be used at times other than when pupils get on and off the bus if it is an emergency situation.

40. _____ Each school bus driver is required to make a pre-trip inspection of his/her bus.

41. _____ All school bus drivers may drive over 35 miles per hour on interstates and intrastates only.

42. _____ A school bus driver must wear his/her seat belt at all times.

43. _____ Pupils must wait for a school bus at an assigned area.

44. _____ Pupils who cross the road must do so in front of the bus.

45. _____ Pupils must remain seated while the bus in motion.

46. _____ Pupils may extend only their hands out of the bus windows when the bus is not moving.

47. _____ Special Needs students may ride regular school buses.

48. _____ Pupils that attend vocational school may not ride local district school buses.

49. _____ Pupils that are blind and deaf can ride a school bus in Kentucky.

50. _____ A bus driver does not have to follow the local board adopted policies on transportation if the situation calls for other action.

INSTRUCTOR'S SIGNATURE: _____ DATE: _____

CHAPTER 3
KENTUCKY LAWS AND REGULATIONS GOVERNING SCHOOL BUS DRIVERS
TEST

**** PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

The answer key is only released to KDE endorsed trainers.

STEP 16

VEHICLE OPERATION (CLASSROOM)

Vehicle Operation Training (classroom) is not a state mandated chapter, however, the material should be covered before permitting a driver applicant to get behind the wheel of a bus.

The applicant should score at least 80% on the "Vehicle Operation" test. If the student scores below 80%, he/she needs remedial work and retesting.

NAME: _____ DATE: _____

CHAPTER 6
VEHICLE OPERATION CLASSROOM
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

1. _____ In rural driving, there is usually more dense traffic than in urban driving.

2. _____ Maximum speed limit for Kentucky school buses is determined by the Kentucky State Police.

3. _____ A school bus driver should periodically check the speedometer, at least every twelve (12) seconds.

4. _____ Fatigue is not one of the determining factors in increasing your following distance.

5. _____ "Blowing out of a curve" is another way of saying "maintaining a space cushion."

6. _____ A Kentucky school bus driver should never make more than one (1) stop at an intersection as it could confuse other drivers.

7. _____ The brown color on a highway sign indicates public recreation area.

8. _____ A flashing yellow light means come to a complete stop, then continue on with caution.

9. _____ Yellow lines separate traffic going in the opposite direction.

10. _____ White lines separate traffic going in the same direction.

INSTRUCTOR'S SIGNATURE: _____ DATE: _____

CHAPTER 6
VEHICLE OPERATION CLASSROOM TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

ANSWER KEY

The answer key is only released to KDE endorsed trainers.

STEP 17

VEHICLE OPERATION – PART 1 (ONE-HOUR)

(BEHIND THE WHEEL)

You, the Driver Training Instructor, should take the student applicant out at this point in their training and permit them to drive in an area that is not very congested. This is the time when the instructor and the student get to know each other's expectations and abilities. As the instructor, you should have a designed route, but don't hesitate to deviate from this route if it appears to be causing problems for the student.

Look for driving mechanics as opposed to how well the student made a right or left turn. Watch for proper steering techniques, visual search, following distance, spatial awareness, braking and general driving techniques. A score sheet should be used for documentation of this first, one-third segment of the "Vehicle Operation" part of the course.

(See scoring sheet.)

(STEPS 17, 19 AND 22 IN "TRAINING PROCEDURES")

THREE HOURS REQUIRED

BEHIND THE WHEEL IN "VEHICLE OPERATION"

DRIVING EXERCISE GRADING REPORT – PART I

CANDIDATE: _____ DATE: _____

LOCATION: _____ SCORE: _____

DRIVERS ARE TO FOLLOW THE LAW AND GOOD DRIVING PROCEDURES AT ALL TIMES.

	BASIC DRIVING SKILLS	PASS	FAIL	NEEDS IMPROVEMENT
1.	Perform Pre-Trip Inspection			
2.	Knowledge of Bus Controls and Gauges			
3.	Seat Belt Fastened			
4.	Hand Positioning on Steering Wheel 9 & 3 or 10 & 2			
5.	Proper Foot Positioning			
6.	Scanning: Constant Visual Monitoring			
7.	Follows Posted Traffic Signs & Signals			
8.	Steering Technique – Use of Hand Over Hand Only			
9.	Coachability			

INSTRUCTOR'S SIGNATURE: _____ DATE: _____

STEP 18

PUPIL MANAGEMENT

"Pupil Management" training is a two-hour minimum requirement. The student should score at least 80% on their "Pupil Management" test. If the student scores below 80%, he/she needs remedial work and retesting.

During "Pupil Management," the instructor is urged to role play, use videos and give the student a concrete approach to discipline. Tell the student applicants what is expected and practice the techniques and responses with them. Local board discipline policy should be thoroughly covered during this class.

6/03

NAME: _____DATE: _____

CHAPTER 5
PUPIL BEHAVIOR MANAGEMENT
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE OR FILL IN THE BLANK****

1. _____ Students who must cross the roadway when disembarking from the bus must cross at a distance between fifteen and fifty feet (15' and 50').

2. _____ The driver shall cancel the red signal loading/unloading lights after the students have reached the opposite side of the highway.

3. _____ Principals are responsible for reasonable behavior of pupils while in transit only.

4. _____ A positive reinforcer is a reward that follows a behavior and increases the possibility of that behavior occurring again.

5. _____ A negative reinforcer is a reward that precedes a behavior and increases the possibility of that behavior occurring again.

6. _____ In dealing with school bus riders, it is vital to be three (3) things. What are they?
   _____
   _____

7. _____ Elementary age girls are greatly influenced by boys.

8. _____ Are elementary or secondary age students more physically active?

9. _____ Generally speaking, no child likes to get into trouble.

10. _____ As a school bus driver, there are times when ignoring improper behavior may be the best avenue if no other students are affected.

11. _____ Behavior problems tend to be the same, or very similar, in every district.

12. _____ Becoming friends with student riders is an excellent way to keep trouble to a minimum.

13. _____ The best time to address behavior problems is before they occur.

14. _____ Favoritism or showing extra attention to the problem child tends to usually make the driver's job easier.

15. _____ A school bus driver should drive using their right foot only when driving a bus equipped with an automatic transmission.

16. _____ The person who has the greatest input on student discipline on a school bus is whom?

17. _____ The student should be at the bus stop how long before the bus is scheduled to arrive?

18. _____ Eating or drinking on the bus is acceptable with the driver's permission.

19. _____ In order for a student to exit the bus at a location other than his/her assigned stop, he/she must have written permission from the superintendent's office.

20. _____ Pupil management involves the combined efforts of four (4) distinct groups. Name these groups.
_____
_____
_____

INSTRUCTOR'S SIGNATURE: _____ DATE: _____

CHAPTER 5
PUPIL BEHAVIOR MANAGEMENT
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE OR FILL IN THE BLANK****

ANSWER KEY

The answer key is only released to KDE endorsed trainers.

STEP 19

VEHICLE OPERATION – PART II

(BEHIND THE WHEEL)

You, the Driver Training Instructor, should have a good idea by now of the students' abilities. During this one-hour drive, more difficult maneuvers should be practiced. A "behind-the-wheel" score sheet should be used. This score sheet tells you exactly where the students' capabilities and deficiencies are. The score sheet should declare exactly what is being graded. Share the results with the student applicants.

There is a good argument for putting three (3) or four (4) students on a bus and letting them each drive for fifteen (15) to twenty (20) minutes and then switch around. By using the rotation method of instruction, each driver gets to see the other drivers operate the bus and can learn by observation. A word of warning – it is recommended that no more than four (4) students be on a bus at a time for any training activity. The intent of the training is circumvented when more than four (4) are on the bus. This also lessens the hands-on opportunity for each student.

(STEPS 17, 19 AND 22 IN "TRAINING PROCEDURES")

THREE HOURS REQUIRED

BEHIND THE WHEEL IN "VEHICLE OPERATION"

DRIVING EXERCISE GRADING REPORT – PART II

CANDIDATE: _____ DATE: _____

LOCATION: _____ SCORE: _____

DRIVERS ARE TO FOLLOW THE LAW AND GOOD DRIVING PROCEDURES AT ALL TIMES.

	BASIC DRIVING SKILLS	PASS	FAIL	NEEDS IMPROVEMENT
1.	Perform Legal and Recognized Pre-Trip Inspection			
2.	Proper Seat Belt Usage			
3.	Hand Positioning on Steering Wheel 9 & 3 or 10 & 2			
4.	Proper Foot Positioning			
5.	Scanning: Constant Visual Monitoring			
6.	Follows Posted Traffic Signs & Signals			
7.	Steering Technique – Use of Hand Over Hand Only			
8.	Proper Use of Bus Controls			
9.	Knowledge of Bus Gauges - Placement			
10.	Proper Lane Positioning			
11.	Correct Lane Choice			
12.	Coachability			

INSTRUCTOR'S SIGNATURE: _____ DATE: _____

STEP 20

CRITICAL SITUATIONS

"Critical Situations" training is a one-hour minimum requirement. The student should score at least 80% on their "Critical Situations" test. If the student scores below 80%, he/she needs remedial work and retesting.

NAME: _____ DATE: _____

CHAPTER 11
CRITICAL SITUATIONS
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

1. _____ The driver can improve his/her ability to correctly respond to a critical situation.

2. _____ A critical situation is any situation which may result in a collision.

3. _____ Critical situations are caused by driver action, roadway situations and/or vehicle malfunctions only.

4. _____ Critical situations allow adequate time for decision making and usually produce hurried responses.

5. _____ A critical situation may occur when tires lose their grip on the road surface, resulting in partial or total loss of vehicle control.

6. _____ There are several ways to minimize skidding but the best way is by matching speed to road and vehicle conditions.

7. _____ When a critical situation is caused by loss of brakes, the best response is to put the transmission in neutral.

8. _____ A school bus must carry at least one (1) fire extinguisher.

9. _____ The fire extinguisher to be carried on a post 1986 Kentucky school bus is rated as a 3A-40-DC type.

10. _____ When using a fire extinguisher, it should be held in an upright position, directed at the base of the fire and rotated with a side to side motion.

11. _____ There are four (4) portable reflectors required on a Kentucky school bus.

12. _____ Each reflector should be placed fifty feet (50’) apart when staking out a school bus.

13. _____ There are times when a critical situation occurs of such severity, or poses such a threat to the passengers, that the best thing to do is evacuate the school bus.

14. _____ When a school bus is in a dangerous position, it should be evacuated.

INSTRUCTOR'S SIGNATURE: _____ DATE: _____

CHAPTER 11
CRITICAL SITUATIONS
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

ANSWER KEY

The answer key is only released to KDE endorsed trainers.

STEP 21

FIRST AID

"First Aid" is a one-hour minimum requirement. The student should score at least 80% on their "First Aid" test. If the student scores below 80%, he/she needs remedial work and retesting.

The area of "First Aid" lends itself to using outside professionals as guest speakers. It is acceptable to use outside professional sources as references, speakers, etc., in any classroom topic. You, the Driver Training Instructor, must ensure that the pertinent information in this manual is covered. "You" must sign off that the proper training has taken place – not the "guest speaker."

6/03

NAME: _____DATE:_____

<u>CHAPTER 13</u>
FIRST AID (TEST)
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

1. _____ First aid is the immediate and temporary care given to a victim of an accident/incident or sudden illness until medical services can be obtained.

2. _____ The three (3) primary first aid procedures are: restore breathing, control bleeding and prevent shock.

3. _____ Tourniquets should be used before trying pressure points.

4. _____ When minor first aid incidents occur, the supervisor need not be contacted.

5. _____ If an object lodges in a person's throat, give back blows immediately.

6. _____ Protective gloves should be worn when dealing with blood or blood products.

7. _____ If a bandage becomes soaked with blood, remove it and replace with a clean bandage as quickly as possible.

8. _____ The three (3) most common causes of shock are inadequate breathing, excessive bleeding and unsplinted fractures.

9. _____ The body temperature of a shock victim usually rises.

10. _____ A open fracture is usually associated with an open wound.

11. _____ Open fractures are usually more serious than closed because of tissue damage, danger of infection and bleeding.

12. _____ Abdominal thrusts and the Heimlich Maneuver are the only two (2) accepted methods of choking control for all ages.

13. _____ All drivers should know the limitations of their capabilities when giving first aid.

14. _____ Hepatitis B is more contagious than HIV.

15. _____ Drivers should report exposure to blood and blood products to their supervisor.

16. _____ Fainting is usually accompanied by a flushed face and extremely hot skin.

17. _____ Drivers should only use the body fluid clean-up kit for severe incidents.

18. _____ Drivers should be familiar with the contents of the bus first aid kit.

19. _____ The primary objective of first aid is to save lives.

20. _____ When giving first aid, the driver could cause further injury to the victim.

INSTRUCTOR'S SIGNATURE: _____ DATE: _____

CHAPTER 13
FIRST AID (TEST)
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

ANSWER KEY

The answer key is only released to KDE endorsed trainers.

STEP 22

VEHICLE OPERATION – PART III

(BEHIND THE WHEEL)

This is the third and final segment of "Vehicle Operation." If the student applicant is unsatisfactory in any area, you have the authority to spend more time on the students' weakness(es). As difficult as it is to recruit drivers, we need to give them every chance to develop into safe drivers. This does not mean that any Driver Training Instructor should ever certify any student applicant that doesn't meet the qualifications. The scoring of drivers will be covered in a later section of this chapter.

(STEPS 17, 19 AND 22 IN "TRAINING PROCEDURES")

THREE HOURS REQUIRED

BEHIND THE WHEEL IN "VEHICLE OPERATION"

DRIVING EXERCISE GRADING REPORT – PART III

CANDIDATE: _____ DATE: _____

LOCATION: _____ SCORE: _____

DRIVERS ARE TO FOLLOW THE LAW AND GOOD DRIVING PROCEDURES AT ALL TIMES.

	BASIC DRIVING SKILLS	PASS	FAIL	REASON(S) FOR FAILURE
1.	Perform Legal and Recognized Pre-Trip Inspection			
2.	Proper Seat Belt Usage			
3.	Hand Positioning on Steering Wheel 9 & 3 or 10 & 2			
4.	Proper Foot Positioning			
5.	Scanning: Constant Visual Monitoring			
6.	Merging and Exiting onto and from Roadway			
7.	Follows Posted Traffic Signs & Signals			
8.	Steering Technique – Use of Hand Over Hand Only			
9.	Proper Use of Bus Controls			
10.	Knowledge of Bus Gauges – Placement			
11.	Proper Lane Positioning and Space Cushion			
12.	Correct Lane Choice			
13.	Performance of a Legal and Accepted Two Point Turnabout (Back in, Pull out only)			
14.	Maintain Adequate Minimum Following Distance			
15.	Speed for Conditions			
16.	Intersection Negotiation and Right of Ways			
17.	Use of Proper Gear for all Situations			
18.	Coachability			

INSTRUCTOR'S SIGNATURE: _____ DATE: _____

STEP 23

VEHICLE CONTROL AT SPEED

"Vehicle Control at Speed" training is a one-hour minimum requirement. This is the unit where most of the 610 points originate. All Driver Training Instructors were trained, in their initial training how to set up each activity. Remember, you, the Driver Training Instructor, have the authority to say whether a student applicant has mastered each part of the "Behind-the-Wheel" training at an acceptable level.

VEHICLE OPERATION SPEED

PART 1 (FIXED/OBJECTIVE SCORING)

APPLICANTS NAME _____ **LOCATION** _____

DATE: _____

				FIXED SCORING							VEHICLE AT SPEED			
TEST INTERVIEW				(POSSIBLE POINTS)										
		100	50	50	50	50	25	50	35	50	60	15	75	610
Applicant number	Applicant Name	Written Exam	Personal app. Intv. Exam	Faculty Bus	Back Up	Dim. Clear	Right Turn	Straight Line	Serpen-Tine	Offset Alley	Rail-Road	Stop Line	Student Pick-up	TOTAL SCORE
1														
2														
3														
4														
5														
6														
7														
8														
9														
10														
11														
12														
13														
14														
15														
16														
17														

VEHICLE AT SPEED – PART 1

PHYSICAL AND VERBAL VEHICLE INSPECTION

TIME: _____ MAXIMUM SCORE – 50

SCORE EARNED - _____

A six (6) minute time limit is allowed to complete this test.

CONTESTANT WILL INFORM JUDGE OF EACH DEFECT LOCATED

DEFECT # 1: _____ (9) POINTS) _____

DEFECT # 2: _____ (9) POINTS) _____

DEFECT # 3: _____ (9) POINTS) _____

DEFECT # 4: _____ (9) POINTS) _____

DEFECT # 5: _____ (9) POINTS) _____

USED SYSTEMATIC PROCEDURE_____ (5) POINTS) _____

ENTER TOTAL SCORE HERE,
BUT NOT MORE THAN 50. _____

DRIVER NAME: _____

DRIVER TRAINING INSTRUCTOR SIGNATURE: _____

DATE: _____

VEHICLE AT SPEED – PART I

STOP LINE

MAXIMUM SCORE – 15

TOTAL DEMERITS - _____

SCORED EARNED: _____

1. Check each instance of bus being brought to a stop more than once.

   (3) (3) (3) (3) (3) (Not more than 15 demerits) _____

2. Bus brought to final stop over stop line. (15 demerits) _____

3. After stop, measure distance to stop line. Score according to chart below:

0-2”		0 demerits	
2-4”		2 demerits	
4-6”		4 demerits	
6-8”		6 demerits	
8-10”		8 demerits	
10-12”		10 demerits	
12-14”		12 demerits	
14-16”		13 demerits	
16-18”		14 demerits	
18 +”		15 demerits	

4. Driver opens door at improper time, each occurrence 5 demerits. _____

ENTER TOTAL OF ALL DEMERITS HERE BUT DO NOT ENTER MORE THAN 15 _____

DRIVER NAME: _____

DRIVER TRAINING INSTRUCTOR SIGNATURE: _____

DATE: _____

VEHICLE AT SPEED – PART 1

RAILROAD CROSSING

		MAXIMUM SCORE – 60 TOTAL DEMERITS -	
APPROACH		SCORE EARNED	
1.	Tap brakes four to five (4-5) times	5 demerits	
2.	Failure to check outside mirrors	5 demerits	
3.	Failure to check inside rearview mirror	5 demerits	
STOP			
4.	Failure to set parking brake.	30 demerits	
5.	Activates any lights except highlights, if needed	30 demerits	
6.	Failure to stop in right lane of roadway	10 demerits	
7.	Failure to turn off all noise makers	10 demerits	
8.	Failure to stop more than 15 feet and less than 50 feet from the nearest rail.	10 demerits	
9.	Failure to open door and window	10 demerits	
10.	Failure to check railroad tracks in both directions	60 demerits	
11.	Failure to check inside rear view mirror	5 demerits	
CONTINUE			
12.	Failure to keep bus in lowest gear while crossing tracks.	10 demerits	
13.	Failure to check outside mirrors	5 demerits	
14.	Failure to check inside rearview mirror	5 demerits	
ENTER TOTAL OF ALL DEMERITS HERE, BUT DO NOT ENTER MORE THAN 60			

DRIVER NAME: _____

DRIVER TRAINING INSTRUCTOR SIGNATURE: _____

DATE: _____

VEHICLE AT SPEED – PART I

RIGHT TURN

		MAXIMUM SCORE – 25 TOTAL DEMERITS -	
		SCORE EARNED	
1.	Failure to check mirrors	5 demerits	
2.	Failure to use correct (or any) turn signal	10 demerits	
3.	Failure to approach in proper lane	5 demerits	
4.	Failure to check traffic in both directions.	10 demerits	
5.	Turn corner too short (runs over inside curb – hits any cones)	10 demerits	
6.	Turns too wide (runs over outside curb – hits any cones)	10 demerits	
7.	Too fast for conditions	10 demerits	
8.	Failure to use hand over hand steering	25 demerits	
ENTER TOTAL OF ALL DEMERITS HERE, BUT DO NOT ENTER MORE THAN 25			

DRIVER NAME: _____

DRIVER TRAINING INSTRUCTOR SIGNATURE: _____

DATE: _____

VEHICLE AT SPEED – PART I

SERPENTINE

		MAXIMUM SCORE – 35 TOTAL DEMERITS -	
		SCORE EARNED	
1.	Check each instance of jerky or uneven movement of bus. (2) (2) (2) (2) (2)	Not more than 10 demerits	
2.	Check each instance of stopping during problem. (5) (5)	Not more than 10 demerits	
3.	Check each instance of bus touching marker standards. (7) (7) (7) (7) (7)	Not more than 35 demerits	
4.	Driver opens door – each occurrence	5 demerits	
5.	Does not complete problem or follow instructions	35 demerits	
ENTER TOTAL OF ALL DEMERITS HERE, BUT DO NOT ENTER MORE THAN 35			

DRIVER NAME: _____

DRIVER TRAINING INSTRUCTOR SIGNATURE: _____

DATE: _____

VEHICLE AT SPEED – PART I

OFFSET ALLEY

	MAXIMUM SCORE – 50 TOTAL DEMERITS -	
	SCORE EARNED	
1.	Check each instance of stopping forward motion of bus and charge 8 demerits for each instance. (Not more than 16 demerits) (8) (8)	
2.	Check each instance of barrier being touched, and charge 7 demerits for each instance. (Not more than 35 demerits) (7) (7) (7) (7) (7)	
3.	Check each instance of driver opening door and charge 5 demerits for each instance. (5) (5) (5)	
4.	Driver backs up bus (50 demerits)	
ENTER TOTAL OF ALL DEMERITS HERE, BUT DO NOT ENTER MORE THAN 50		

DRIVER NAME: _____

DRIVER TRAINING INSTRUCTOR SIGNATURE: _____

DATE: _____

VEHICLE AT SPEED – PART I

DIMINISHING CLEARANCE

	MAXIMUM SCORE – 50 TOTAL DEMERITS -	
	SCORE EARNED	
1.	Check each instance of jerky or uneven movement of bus. (Not more than 10 demerits) (2) (2) (2) (2) (2)	
2.	Check each instance of stopping forward motion of bus. (Not more than 10 demerits) (2) (2) (2) (2) (2)	
3.	Check each instance of bus touching marker standards. (Not more than 50 demerits) (10) (10) (10) (10) (10)	
4.	Driver opens door – each occurrence 5 demerits.	
ENTER TOTAL OF ALL DEMERITS HERE, BUT DO NOT ENTER MORE THAN 50.		

DRIVER NAME: _____

DRIVER TRAINING INSTRUCTOR SIGNATURE: _____

DATE: _____

VEHICLE AT SPEED – PART I

STRAIGHT LINE

	MAXIMUM SCORE – 50 TOTAL DEMERITS -	
	SCORE EARNED	
1.	Check each instance of jerky or uneven movement of bus. (Not more than 10 demerits) (2) (2) (2) (2) (2)	
2.	Check each instance of stopping forward motion of bus. (Not more than 10 demerits) (2) (2) (2) (2) (2)	
3.	Check each instance of bus touching marker standards. (Not more than 50 demerits) (10) (10) (10) (10) (10)	
4.	Drives to either side of pair or markers. (Not more than 50 demerits) (10) (10) (10) (10) (10)	
5.	Does not complete problem or fails to follow instructions. (50 demerits)	
ENTER TOTAL OF ALL DEMERITS HERE, BUT DO NOT ENTER MORE THAN 50.		

DRIVER NAME: _____

DRIVER TRAINING INSTRUCTOR SIGNATURE: _____

DATE: _____

VEHICLE AT SPEED – PART I

STUDENT LOADING

		MAXIMUM SCORE – 75 TOTAL DEMERITS -	
STUDENT LOADING ZONE		SCORE EARNED	
1.	Failure to check left outside mirror	5 demerits	
2.	Failure to check inside mirror	5 demerits	
3.	Failure to check right outside mirror.	5 demerits	
4.	Failure to set parking brake.	25 demerits	
5.	Failure to activate 8-lamp system.	50 demerits	
6.	Bus stopped closer than 6 feet from student sign.	10 demerits	
7.	Failure to allow students to be seated before moving bus.	10 demerits	
8.	Failure to put transmission in neutral.	5 demerits	
9.	Failure to signal students to board bus.	25 demerits	
LEAVING STUDENT LOADING ZONE			
10.	Failure to check right outside mirror.	5 demerits	
11.	Failure to check inside mirror.	5 demerits	
12.	Failure to check left outside mirror.	5 demerits	
13.	Failure to check crossover mirror.	2 demerits	
14.	Failure to close door prior moving.	10 demerits	
ENTER TOTAL OF ALL DEMERITS HERE, BUT DO NOT ENTER MORE THAN 75			

DRIVER NAME: _____

DRIVER TRAINING INSTRUCTOR SIGNATURE: _____

DATE: _____

VEHICLE AT SPEED – PART I

BACK UP

MAXIMUM SCORE – 50
TOTAL DEMERITS - _____
SCORED EARNED: _____

1. Check each instance of bus being brought to a stop more than once.

   (5) (5) (5) (5) (5) (Not more than 25 demerits) _____

2. Strikes marking standard backing in or pulling out. (50 demerits) _____

3. Centering bus in space:

0-1”		2 demerits	
1-2”		4 demerits	
2-3”		6 demerits	
3-4”		8 demerits	
4-5”		10 demerits	
5-6”		12 demerits	
6-7”		14 demerits	
7-8”		16 demerits	
8-9”		18 demerits	
9-10”		20 demerits	
10-11”		22 demerits	
11-12”		24 demerits	

4. Distance from rear barrier:

		0 demerits	
12-18”		5 demerits	
18-24”		10 demerits	
24-30”		15 demerits	
30-36”		20 demerits	
36-42”		25 demerits	

ENTER TOTAL OF ALL DEMERITS HERE BUT DO NOT ENTER MORE THAN 50 _____

DRIVER NAME: _____

DRIVER TRAINING INSTRUCTOR SIGNATURE: _____

DATE: _____

NAME: _____ DATE: _____

VEHICLE OPERATION AT SPEED

PART 2

(FLEXIBLE/SUBJECTIVE SCORING)

LOCAL SCHOOL DISTRICT TRANSPORTATION DEPARTMENTS SHOULD USE THESE SCORE SHEETS TO VERIFY THAT "VEHICLE AT SPEED" WAS PERFORMED FOR A MINIMUM OF ONE (1) HOUR. THE FOLLOWING ITEMS MUST BE COVERED DURING THE "VEHICLE AT SPEED" PART 2 STAGE.

A.

A.	VEHICLE OPERATION AT SPEED – ONE (1) HOUR	PASS	FAIL	COMMENTS
1.	90 Degree left hand turn, range course to include 10 mph. (50' outside radius and 36' inside radius)			
2.	90 Degree right hand turn (same radius)			
3.	Irregular surface – driving right wheels off an irregular surface 3" curb or road at 10 mph in an 11' landing area. Maneuver shall be performed at 75' distance dimension, safe recovery.			
4.	Straight ahead panic brake at 20 mph on command. Stop the bus 30' from designated stopping point and prior to reaching a marking cone 40' from first cone.			
5.	Evasive maneuver through an opening, driving the serpentine right or left on tester command at 15mph hitting no cones. (80' from opening to first cone, other cones 60' apart) make 180 degree turn and serpentine opposite direction.			

INSTRUCTOR'S SIGNATURE _____ DATE: _____

STEP 24

SPECIAL NEEDS TRANSPORTATION

"Special Needs Transportation" is a one-hour minimum requirement. The student should score at least 80% on their "Special Needs Education Transportation" test. If the student scores below 80%, he/she needs remedial work and retesting.

6/03

NAME: _____DATE: _____

CHAPTER 14
TRANSPORTING STUDENTS WITH SPECIAL NEEDS
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

1. _____ The driver cannot be expected to accept a special needs child as he/she would any child, since the child has obvious differences.

2. _____ The driver of a special needs bus should be fair, firm and consistent when dealing with pupil behavior management.

3. _____ There is a law that requires seat belts on special needs buses.

4. _____ Two types of seizures are aura and clonic spasms.

5. _____ During a tonic spasm seizure, a victim usually remains conscious.

6. _____ A petit mal seizure usually lasts less than thirty (30) seconds.

7. _____ An Emotionally Mentally Handicapped student has an IQ in the 75-50 range.

8. _____ When dealing with special needs students, it is almost impossible to have a set of clear-cut rules for the entire bus.

9. _____ Two of the things that parents and children expect from the driver when loading and unloading is care and protection.

10. _____ Any misunderstanding between the driver and the aide should be dealt with immediately at all times, so as to keep the lines of communication open.

INSTRUCTOR'S SIGNATURE: _____ DATE: _____

CHAPTER 14
TRANSPORTING STUDENTS WITH SPECIAL NEEDS
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

ANSWER KEY

The answer key is only released to KDE endorsed trainers.

STEP 25

EXTRA CURRICULAR TRIPS

"Extra-Curricular Trips" training is a one-hour minimum requirement. The student should score at least 80% on their "Extra-Curricular Trips" test. If the student scores below 80%, he/she needs remedial work and retesting.

6/03

NAME: _____ DATE: _____

CHAPTER 16
EXTRA-CURRICULAR TRIPS
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

1. _____ The best way to ensure a safe and happy trip is through post-trip planning.

2. _____ Generally, departure times and locations are flexible.

3. _____ It is not necessary for the driver to have the name, address and phone number of the insurance carrier on a special trip.

4. _____ On an overnight trip, it is an excellent idea for the driver(s) to have a room of their own.

5. _____ On out-of-district trips, there should be no more than two-thirds of bus capacity on any one bus with middle and high school students.

6. _____ Usually, the driver plans the special trips routes.

7. _____ It is not necessary for the driver to have a list of the students on the bus since the school district has one.

8. _____ The maximum speed limit on an extra-curricular trip in a Kentucky school bus is five (5) miles per hour under the posted speed limit unless addressed in local board policy.

9. _____ Only on an extra-curricular trip can a Kentucky school bus tow a trailer behind the bus with written permission from the State Department of Education.

10. _____ Only on an extra-curricular trip can a Kentucky school bus be fueled while passengers are on board.

11. _____ Students should arrive for the extra-curricular trip thirty (30)minutes prior to departure.

12. _____ On athletic trips, a volunteer coach or volunteer assistant may serve as chaperone.

13. _____ A school bus driver should not work over fifteen (15) hours in a twenty-four (24) hour period with not over ten of these hours being driving.

14. _____ The trip chaperone pays for all tolls.

15. _____ The length of the activity trip does not create additional problems in itself.

INSTRUCTOR'S SIGNATURE: _____ DATE: _____

CHAPTER 16
EXTRA-CURRICULAR TRIPS
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

ANSWER KEY

The answer key is only released to KDE endorsed trainers.

STEP 26

INCIDENTS AND EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

"Incidents and Emergency Procedures" training is a two-hour minimum requirement. The student should score at least 80% on their "Incidents and Emergency Procedures" test. If the student scores below 80%, he/she needs remedial work and retesting.

NAME: _____ DATE: _____

CHAPTER 12
INCIDENTS AND EMERGENCY PROCEDURES
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

1. _____ Failure to yield the right of way is the most common driver violation that causes collisions.

2. _____ Defective brakes is the most common mechanical failure on a school bus.

3. _____ Young drivers have a lower accident rate than older drivers.

4. _____ Negligence on the part of a bus driver may result in the driver being liable for pupil injuries.

5. _____ The school board is directly responsible for maintaining a safe vehicle.

6. _____ State law requires that certain procedures be followed at the time of an incident.

7. _____ A school bus driver's first responsibility is to the passengers when an incident occurs.

8. _____ Three emergency reflectors are required equipment on all Kentucky school buses.

9. _____ A school bus should never be moved before the police officer arrives at the scene of an incident.

10. _____ A school bus driver should check for injuries after all incidents.

11. _____ A driver involved in an incident is required to give his/her name and address to the investigating officer.

12. _____ The local school district should give pertinent emergency information to give all drivers, including substitutes and coaches.

13. _____ During the investigation of an incident, pupils should be released to an adult at the scene to lessen confusion.

14. _____ A school bus should not drive through standing water.

15. _____ The danger of fire and unsafe conditions during a school bus emergency, requires passenger evacuation.

16. _____ State Regulations require pupil evacuation drills.

17. _____ There are four (4) emergency evacuation plans or procedures that should be followed.

18. _____ All school buses are equipped with a pick-head ax.

19. _____ The bus driver should not help with the emergency evacuation drill.

20. _____ Each Kentucky school bus is required to have a fire extinguisher as part of its equipment.

21. _____ The hazard flashers on a school bus should only be used to warn other motorists of a dangerous situation.

22. _____ All Kentucky school buses are required to have first-aid kits.

23. _____ The first three (3) first-aid procedures are (1) stop bleeding, (2) restore pulse and (3) prevent shock.

24. _____ There are three classes of fires that may occur on a bus: A, B and C.

25. _____ A school bus driver must know how, when and what to do if an emergency arises on the bus.

INSTRUCTOR'S SIGNATURE: _____ DATE: _____

CHAPTER 12
INCIDENTS AND EMERGENCY PROCEDURES
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

ANSWER KEY

The answer key is only released to KDE endorsed trainers.

STEP 27

LOADING AND UNLOADING (CLASSROOM)

Loading and unloading training (classroom) is not a state mandated chapter, however, the material should be covered before permitting a driver to drive the Bus Route Identification part of the course. **Extreme care should be given to this material.** This is a vital section of the training curriculum. The applicant should score at least 80% on the "Loading and Unloading" test. If the student scores below 80%, he/she needs remedial work and retesting. This material is so vital, that there is a good argument for requiring 100% on the end of chapter test and full memorization of the steps and procedures.

NAME: _____ DATE: _____

CHAPTER 7
LOADING AND UNLOADING TEST
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

1. _____ Consistency is of primary importance when teaching loading and unloading procedures.

2. _____ The transported student is in the greatest danger while riding on the school bus.

3. _____ The parking brake need not be set every time when loading or unloading since the service brake is being used.

4. _____ The yellow warning lights should be activated one hundred and fifty to two hundred feet (150’ – 200’) from the loading area.

5. _____ When loading, all students should line up, two abreast, in a straight line.

6. _____ Since the service brake is used when unloading students, the gear selector should not be moved.

7. _____ Stop arms need not be used on school grounds.

8. _____ Students who must cross the roadway should cross ten to fifteen feet (10’-15’) in front of the bus.

9. _____ Students should arrive at the bus stop at least ten (10) minutes before the bus is to arrive.

10. _____ If a student should drop an object in the roadway, he/she should never stop and pick it up until the driver is made aware and gives permission.

INSTRUCTOR’S SIGNATURE: _____ DATE: _____

CHAPTER 7
LOADING AND UNLOADING TEST
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

ANSWER KEY

The answer key is only released to KDE endorsed trainers.

STEP 28

FORWARD CONTROL AND REAR ENGINE BUSES

(CLASSROOM)

Forward Control and Rear Engine Buses training (classroom) is not a state mandated chapter, however, the material should be covered before permitting a driver to operate a Forward Control or Rear Engine Bus. Additionally, common sense would dictate that a driver would practice driving a Forward Control or Rear Engine Bus before taking one out on a bus run. This would be the same for all buses that are different than what a driver normally operates.

NAME: _____ DATE: _____

CHAPTER 9
<u>FORWARD CONTROL BUS</u>
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

1. _____ The crossover mirror shows the front of the bus.

2. _____ The forward control bus has a longer wheelbase than a conventional bus.

3. _____ The Type D forward control bus has greater visibility to the rear than a conventional bus.

4. _____ Generally speaking the best steering technique for a non-tilt steering wheel is the push-pull method.

5. _____ Proper lane positioning is vital before turning at an intersection.

6. _____ Proper hand positioning on the steering wheel is at the clock position of 10 and 3.

7. _____ To counter steer is to turn the steering wheel counter clockwise.

8. _____ A right turn in a forward control bus can be made in less space than a right turn in a conventional bus.

9. _____ When making a left turn, the vehicle is moved partially into the intersection before starting the turn.

10. _____ Stopping distance is increased when operating a forward control bus.

11. _____ A Type D bus is a conventional bus.

12. _____ The housing for the engine compartment is commonly referred to as the dog house.

13. _____ Some differences between a forward control and conventional bus are mirrors, windshields and maneuverability.

14. _____ Drivers should climb onto the dog house to enter and exit the driver's seat on all forward control buses.

15. _____ Communication between driver and passenger is more difficult to achieve on a forward control bus.

16. _____ Rear engine buses compared to forward control buses provide increased visibility in the front of the bus.

17. _____ Rear engine buses are to be utilized on extra-curricular trips only.

18. _____ The driver area in a rear engine bus is quieter than one in a forward control bus.

19. _____ Due to its increased size and weight, rear engine buses require drivers to have a Class A. C.D.L.

20. _____ Rear engine buses require more maintenance than a forward control bus.

INSTRUCTOR'S SIGNATURE: _____ DATE: _____

CHAPTER 9
FORWARD CONTROL AND REAR ENGINE BUSES
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

ANSWER KEY

The answer key is only released to KDE endorsed trainers.

STEP 29

COMMERCIAL DRIVER'S LICENSE

This chapter, although not state mandated, is an aid in helping the new school bus driver in obtaining their commercial driver's license. You, the driver training instructor, should assist driver candidates in their endeavor to obtain a commercial driver's license.

6/03

NAME: _____DATE: _____

CHAPTER 15
COMMERCIAL DRIVERS LICENSE (CDL)
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

1. _____ An "L" restriction on your license means you can drive on interstate highways only.

2. _____ You should look ahead of your bus 12-15 seconds.

3. _____ Rear tires may be recapped.

4. _____ Stopping distance includes: perception distance, reaction distance and braking distance.

5. _____ Wet roads will triple your stopping distance.

6. _____ You should slow down before entering a curve, then speed up as you exit the curve.

7. _____ High beam headlights allow you to see 500-750 feet in front of you.

8. _____ In hot weather, you should check your tires every 3 hours or 150 miles.

9. _____ The use of brakes on a long steep downgrade is only a supplement to the braking effect of the engine.

10. _____ A hazard is any road condition or road user that is a possible danger.

11. _____ Most accidents are caused by driving too fast for road conditions.

12. _____ Inspecting the front slack adjusters is required during a pre-trip inspection.

13. _____ Front tires may be recapped.

14. _____ The driver's seat belt must be worn when transporting students only.

15. _____ When using the on again off again braking technique, the brake applications phase should last about 5 seconds.

INSTRUCTOR'S SIGNATURE: _____ DATE: _____

CHAPTER 15
COMMERCIAL DRIVERS LICENSE (CDL)
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

ANSWER KEY

The answer key is only released to KDE endorsed trainers.

STEP 30

BUS ROUTE IDENTIFICATION

(BEHIND THE WHEEL)

"Bus Route Identification" is a two-hour minimum requirement. This is a vital part of "Behind-the-Wheel" training. The majority of student injuries and deaths occur while loading or unloading. This block of instruction is not part of the 610 points, however, a student applicant can be failed or sent back for remedial training in certain areas if you, the Driver Training Instructor, deem that their ability is not adequate in one or more of the areas. Always remember, the requirement listed on the score sheet is a minimum.

(See the score sheet.)

BUS ROUTE IDENTIFICATION, DRIVER REVIEW AND INSTRUCTION

NAME: _____ DATE: _____ BUS # _____

B. BUS ROUTE IDENTIFICATION, DRIVER REVIEW AND INSTRUCTION – TWO (2) HOURS

The driver applicant must drive a school bus route under the supervision of the driver training instructor with the school bus empty.

		PASS	FAIL	COMMENTS
1.	**SCHOOL LOADING/UNLOADING**			
a.	Loading and/or unloading steps followed (in sequence) 100% required on this activity			
b.	Loading area bus placement from curb			
c.	Proper use of lights			
2.	**SCHOOL BUS ROUTE DRIVING**			
a.	Proper transmission use			
b.	Blind curves			
c.	Hills			
d.	Proper downhill braking			
e.	High density traffic			
f.	Speed for conditions			
g.	Railroad negotiation			
3.	**PUPIL LOADING/UNLOADING ON ROUTES**			
a.	Loading and/or unloading steps followed (in sequence) 100% accuracy of all steps required for this activity			
b.	Students counted when entering/exiting the bus.			
c.	Mirror usage before stopping and before pulling away			
d.	Allow student to be seated before moving the bus.			

INSTRUCTOR'S SIGNATURE: _____ DATE: _____

STEP 31

DRIVER REVIEW I

(TO BE COMPLETED WITHIN FIVE DAYS OF COMPLETION OF THE CORE CURRICULUM)

"Driver Review I" is a two-hour minimum requirement. This review is a total overview of everything that has been covered. The "Basic Driving Skills" on the Review Score Sheet must be covered, however, you will – no doubt – have many other areas that you will want to review. This is not a teaching time as such, but a review of everything covered. That is not to say that the transfer of knowledge can't and shouldn't take place. In many cases, this the last time that the Driver Training Instructor has to observe the student before he/she drives with children. DO NOT RELEASE THE STUDENT APPLICANT UNLESS YOU KNOW THAT THEY ARE SAFE.

DRIVER REVIEW I

DRIVING EXERCISE GRADING REPORT

NAME: _____ DATE: _____BUS# _____

REVIEW I

TO BE COMPLETED WITHIN FIVE (5) DAYS OF COMPLETION OF THE CORE CURRICULUM. TWO (2) HOURS MINIMUM REQUIREMENT.

	SKILLS TESTED	PASS	FAIL	COMMENTS
A.	Seat belt fastened			
B.	Proper use of the turn signals.			
C.	Speed for conditions			
D.	Knowledge of all bus components/controls			
E.	Orderly and regimented mirror usage			
F.	Proper hand positioning on steering wheel			
G.	Acceptable two-point turnabout			
H.	Proper following distance - 4 seconds (5 seconds over forty miles per hour)			
I.	Continuous visual scanning			
J.	Proper foot positioning			
K.	Good posture			
L.	Loading and unloading steps followed in sequence (160% accuracy required for all steps for this activity)			
M.	Railroad negotiation			
N.	Hand over hand steering technique used exclusively			

INSTRUCTOR'S SIGNATURE: _____ DATE: _____

STEP 32

100 QUESTION TEST

All students must take the "100 Question" test. A score of 80% should be attained on this test. If a student scores less than 80%, too great of a weakness is indicated and the student needs remedial work. No test may take the place of the "100 Question" test. You may also want to give your student applicants a test that is directed toward your school district's policies. This is perfectly acceptable. Remember you must administer the State Mandated "100 Question" test.

NAME: _____ DATE: _____

100 QUESTION TEST

(EACH QUESTION IS WORTH ONE (1) POINT IN ITS TOTALITY)

ANSWER EACH QUESTION TRUE OR FALSE

_____ 1. A school bus driver can serve as his/her own chaperon on a extra-curricular trip if he/she is a member of the school faculty or administrative staff and his/her load is of reasonable age.

_____ 2. When exiting a highway, a driver should know the exit number, watch for signs, signal to move into the correct lane and reduce speed just before entering the deceleration lane.

_____ 3. The normal absolute speed limit for a highway construction area is 45 MPH, unless otherwise posted.

_____ 4. It is legal to split the lanes when making a right turn from a four (4) lane street.

_____ 5. Legally speaking, it is never permissible to pass another vehicle on the right.

_____ 6. White lines separate traffic moving in opposite directions.

_____ 7. The color white on a traffic sign indicates regulation.

_____ 8. When stopping at railroad tracks, the stop shall be made not less than 15' or more than 50' from the nearest track.

_____ 9. A solid yellow line is used to mark the edge of the roadway on the driver's right.

_____ 10. Sustained periods of high speed driving tend to dull a person's judgement of speed.

_____ 11. If you are being tailgated, you should increase your following distance.

_____ 12. The Heimlich maneuver is used when a victim has an obstructed airway.

_____ 13. The recommended initial technique to be used to control bleeding is the use of pressure points.

_____ 14. The primary objective of first aid is to save lives.

_____ 15. Shock is defined as a depressed state of many vital bodily functions.

(TRUE OR FALSE)

_____ 16. A multi-lane highway is defined as a highway with four (4) or more lanes.

_____ 17. There is no law that requires a turn signal to be used when lane changing.

_____ 18. When turning in a motor vehicle equipped with signal lamps or mechanical signal devices, hand signals are not allowed.

_____ 19. A school bus driver encounters more drunken drivers during daylight hours than after dark.

_____ 20. All pupils who are entering the bus or leaving the bus shall wait until signaled to do so by the bus driver.

_____21. A person shall not be employed as a Kentucky school bus driver if convicted of driving a motor vehicle under the influence of alcohol or any illegal drug within the last five (5) years.

_____ 22. A criminal records and motor vehicle records (MVR) check shall be performed by a local district on new bus drivers prior to initial employment or after a break in service, excluding summers.

_____ 23. Certified Kentucky school bus drivers shall complete annually an eight (8) hour in-service update, relevant to the core curriculum, prior to the beginning of the school year.

_____ 24. All Kentucky public school buses transporting three (3) and four (4) year old children shall be staffed with a minimum of one (1) driver assistant.

_____ 25. The superintendent shall require that a safety inspection be made on each school bus owned and operated by the board or contracted to the board, at least once each month.

_____ 26. All persons who operate a Kentucky school bus must have a contract in which the terms of employment are clearly defined.

_____ 27. A law that has been enacted by a legislative body is called a statute, thus the Kentucky Administrative Regulations.

_____ 28. Pupils shall remain seated until the bus has come to a complete stop before leaving their seats.

_____ 29. When loading students, the driver shall bring the bus to a complete stop approximately ten (10) feet from the nearest students.

_____ 30. A state certified school bus driver must have an annual physical exam each school year.

(TRUE OR FALSE)

_____ 31. An inoperable crossing gate discovered during the pre-trip inspection deadlines the bus until repairs are made.

_____ 32. At 45 MPH, a four (4) second following distance should be maintained.

_____ 33. An oil pressure gauge indicates how much oil you have in the bus.

_____ 34. The front brake slack adjusters must be checked for play during a five minute walk-a-round.

_____ 35. Failure to perform a pre-trip inspection on every bus you drive each and every day is a violation of state and Federal law.

_____ 36. The use of service brakes on a long and/or steep downgrade is only a supplement to the braking effect of the engine.

_____ 37. If a front hub oil seal is leaking, it can increase the stopping distance of your vehicle.

_____ 38. When braking a bus with ABS type brakes, you pump the brakes to stop.

_____ 39. The loading steps to be performed by a driver is broken down into four (4) categories: 1) approach; 2) stop; 3) loading and 4) door.

_____ 40. There are instances when a school bus stop should be made in an intersection.

_____ 41. When turning a forward control bus, a driver should turn earlier than when turning a conventional style bus.

_____ 42. The best and most efficient steering technique is controlled slipping.

_____ 43. A concave mirror has the mirror center higher than its sides.

_____ 44. Egress means "to enter."

_____ 45. The expert driver adjusts his/her speed to specific road and traffic conditions.

_____ 46. The school bus eight (8) light system may be used in an emergency as well as when students are loading or unloading the bus.

_____ 47. The crossing gate shall not be used on school grounds.

_____ 48. When evacuating a school bus, the students should move to a minimum distance of 100 feet from the bus.

(TRUE OR FALSE)

_____ 49. The stop arm shall be used at all times when loading or unloading students, this includes while on school property.

_____ 50. A driver should always set the parking brake when loading or unloading students to avoid driver error that may allow the bus to move.

FILL IN THE BLANKS WITH THE APPROPRIATE ANSWER(S)

51. Between _____ and _____ feet from the loading zone, the driver shall activate the big yellow loading lights.

52. When a vehicle _____, the tires lose contact with the road and ride on a thin film of water.

53. If your bus begins to skid, immediately turn the wheel in the _____ (same/opposite) direction as the skid.

54. Each student who rides a school bus must receive _____ emergency evacuation drills per year.

55. There a total of eight (8) emergency evacuation options, but only _____ should be practiced.

56. A school bus driver will make close to _____ major decisions every mile.

57. There are _____ different classifications of fires.

58. All Kentucky school buses are equipped with (how many) _____ reflective triangles?

59. The number of driver assistants required on a school bus transporting three (3) and four (4) year old children shall be recommended to the superintendent by the _____ _____ _____ _____ or _____.

60. The width of a Kentucky school bus, excluding mirrors is _____ (state feet or inches).

CIRCLE THE BEST ANSWER

61. The person(s) designated by the Board of Education who is responsible for the discipline of pupils who ride school buses is the:

    a. school bus driver
    b. transportation director
    c. principal

62. School bus drivers shall be provided with a list of students who ride their bus by:

    a. the principal
    b. the superintendent
    c. the transportation director

63. A school bus driver should look ahead when driving, a minimum of:

    a. 4-5 seconds
    b. 1/2 of a mile
    c. 12-15 seconds

64. If you are driving a Kentucky school bus, you should have a minimum of _____ seconds following distance when traveling over 40 MPH.

    a. 4
    b. 5
    c. 12

(MULTIPLE CHOICE)

65. The proper method to negotiate a curve is to brake:

    a. when coming out of the curve
    b. in the middle of the curve
    c. before entering the curve

66. In heavy traffic, it is best to:

    a. drive at the speed of other traffic; provided the traffic is moving below the posted speed limit
    b. drive slowly on the extreme right
    c. pass cars until you find an open space ahead

(MULTIPLE CHOICE)

67. The person who recommends whether the crossing gate is to be used on school grounds is:

    a. superintendent
    b. driver training instructor
    c. transportation director

68. Skids are generally caused by:

    a. driving too fast for the road conditions
    b. too much air in the tires
    c. poorly adjusted brakes

69. Most traffic accidents are the result of:

    a. mechanical defects of the bus
    b. bad weather conditions
    c. errors in the driver's judgement

70. A bus driver who cuts the corner too closely when making a right turn, causing his wheels to go over the curb, is probably:

    a. a poor judge of distance in other situations too
    b. deliberately trying to save time
    c. a safe driver in other ways

71. When parallel parking on the right edge of the roadway, with a curb and on an upgrade, it is best to:

    a. turn the front wheels turned toward the edge of the road
    b. turn the front wheels turned toward the center of the road
    c. keep the front wheels pointed straight ahead

72. When approaching a traffic signal showing a flashing red light, you should:

    a. continue at a reasonable speed provided no cars are approaching on the side streets
    b. stop and remain stopped until a green light appears
    c. come to a full stop and proceed with caution when clear

73. Which of these turning movements is involved in the most serious types of accidents?

    a. right turns
    b. left turns
    c. turns into private driveways

(MULTIPLE CHOICE)

74. When approaching oncoming vehicles at night, you should:

    a. use lower headlight beams
    b. use upper headlight beams
    c. use parking lights

75. When meeting a car with glaring headlights, you should:

    a. watch the right side of the road
    b. turn on your own bright lights
    c. watch the center line of the road

76. The most common driver violations that result in an accident is:

    a. speeding
    b. failure to yield right of way
    c. failure to use proper turn indicators

77. Children of what ages are generally considered capable of recognizing traffic danger?

    a. 5 to 6 years of age
    b. 7 to 8 years of age
    c. 10 to 12 years of age

78. Normal following distances should be _____ on highways because traffic in front of you is traveling at a higher rate of speed

    a. reduced
    b. increased
    c. about the same

79. Defective exhaust systems can contribute to

    a. carbon monoxide poisoning
    b. carbon dioxide poisoning
    c. hydroplaning

80. A Kentucky school bus driver must wear his/her seat belt when operating a school bus

    a. only when transporting children
    b. always
    c. never

(MULTIPLE CHOICE)

81. The reason you never shift gears while crossing railroad tracks is because of

    a. the time it takes to shift the gears
    b. your attention is diverted from the outside of the bus
    c. the fact that a vehicle is most likely to stall when shifting gears

82. The driver shall not transport adult employees of the board or any person not employed by the board unless he receives written permission from the

    a. superintendent
    b. school board
    c. principal

83. A Kentucky school bus driver must have a minimum of _____ vision in each eye, with or without corrective lenses.

    a. 20/80
    b. 20/30
    c. 20/40

84. Basic transportation of non-handicapped students is

    a. required by law
    b. not required by law
    c. proportionate to the enrollment scale of the district

85. ABS stands for

    a. airbags, brakes, steering
    b. airway, breaks, shock
    c. anti-lock braking system

86. Each Kentucky school bus must receive a safety inspection

    a. every 14 days
    b. monthly
    c. every 3 months

87. Kentucky school bus drivers must have a physical every

    a. year
    b. two years
    c. four years

(MULTIPLE CHOICE)

88. A Kentucky school bus driver must be tested for tuberculosis

    a. each year
    b. never
    c. at initial employment only

89. A LAB test performed during a pre-trip inspection stands for

    a. leaks, alarms, button
    b. leaks, air supply, brakes
    c. looseness, air, bulges

90. Yielding the right of way means

    a. slow down and proceed when light is green
    b. allow the other person to go first
    c. stop, look in all directions, go when clear

91. When approaching cyclists, give a short beep on horn at least how many feet prior to passing to warn them that you are near?

    a. 50
    b. 100
    c. 200

92. A school bus driver should periodically check the speedometer (gauges). This should occur about every _____ seconds.

    a. 5
    b. 12
    c. 20

FILL IN THE BLANKS WITH THE CORRECT ANSWER(S)

93. The loading of students is broken down in to four (4) categories. These are:

    _____
    _____
    _____
    _____

94. Students who must cross the roadway cross _____ to _____ feet in front of the bus.

FILL IN THE BLANKS WITH THE CORRECT ANSWER(S)

95. The safest and best steering technique for school bus drivers to use is called _____ _____ _____.

96. Parking is prohibited within _____ feet of a fire hydrant.

97. In Kentucky, all school bus drivers should adhere to the motto "SAFETY _____, _____ SECOND."

98. A pentagon (five-sided) shaped sign tells you there is a _____ _____ ahead.

99. A diesel engine should run at least _____ minutes before it is shutdown.

100. The _____ mirrors show the front of the bus.

INSTRUCTOR'S SIGNATURE: _____ DATE: _____

100 QUESTION TEST

(EACH QUESTION IS WORTH ONE (1) POINT IN ITS TOTALITY)

ANSWER KEY

The answer key is only released to KDE endorsed trainers.

This page intentionally left blank.

The answer key is only released to KDE endorsed trainers.

STEP 33

CDL SKILLS TEST

At this point, the student applicant should have made an appointment to take the "CDL Skills" test. The applicant should be able to obtain their CDL on the day of testing or no later than the next working day. A copy of the student applicant's CDL shall be placed in the driver's file.

STEP 34

CONTRACT

By regulation, each driver shall be provided with a written contract each school year. This is not only regular route drivers but all certified drivers.

All student applicants shall sign a written valid contract before they transport any children.

DRIVER'S CONTRACT

(BOARD-OWNED VEHICLES)

STATE OF KENTUCKY)
COUNTY OF _____) ss
This contract entered into this _____ day of _____, 20 _____, by and between the _____ School District whose address is _____ _____, Kentucky, Zip Code _____, hereinafter known as the District and _____ whose address is _____, Kentucky, Zip Code _____, hereinafter known as the driver.

WITNESSETH:

The District hereby employs the Driver to drive one of the school buses or special type vehicles owned by the District for that part of the 20_____- 20_____ school year during which the District's public schools remain in regular session following the signing of this contract subject to the conditions set forth in the subsequent provisions of this contract, to wit:

The duties to be performed are to commence on the first day requires by the school calendar adopted or amended by the District and approved by the State Department of Education for the school year, for the number of days required by such calendar, to end no later than June 30, of the school year.

<u>THE DISTRICT AGREES:</u>

1. To pay the Driver for his or her regular day-today services rendered at the rate of _____.

2. To pay the Driver for a maximum of _____ "Driver Training Days" during this school year. The exact number of "Driver Training Days" for which the Driver will be paid shall be determined by the District based upon that portion of this school year during which the Driver is employed. The District shall determine the number of "Driver Training Days" during which the Driver shall be engaged in training and preparation prior to driving the bus or special type vehicle in transporting pupils to and form school and the number of days to be spent in additional training during this school year. Any payment to the Driver for these days in contingent upon the Driver being present and taking part in the training activities. Payment for days shall be at the rate of _____ _____.

3. To pay the Driver for his or her services at the pay period time shown in this item and for the period of time covered by each pay_____
_____
_____
_____
_____

4. To maintain the school bus or special type vehicle to which the Driver is assigned in a safe mechanical condition at all times.

5. To provide the Driver with a copy of the State laws, Kentucky Administrative Regulations, and the District's regulations or policies that pertain to the Driver's responsibilities in driving a school bus or special type vehicle.

6. To provide the Driver with training required for State certification and any other training the District deems necessary for the Driver to carry out his or her duties as a school bus driver or special type vehicle driver.

7. To direct the principals of the schools, the teachers and other school personnel assigned responsibilities for pupil transportation to provide their reasonable assistance to the Driver in maintaining order and discipline on and about the school bus or special type vehicle.

8. To provide bodily injury, property damage, medical payments, and uninsured motorists insurance coverage on the school bus or special type vehicle to which the Driver is assigned up to at least the minimum amounts recommended by the Division of Pupil Transportation.

9. _____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____

10. _____
_____
_____
_____
_____

THE DRIVER AGREES:

1. To abide by the State laws, Kentucky Administrative Regulations, and the District's regulations or policies that pertain to his or her responsibilities as a school bus driver or special type vehicle driver.

2. To follow the instructions given to him or her by the proper school system authorities to the best of his or her ability.

3. To procure at his or her own expense the necessary Kentucky license or licenses required for a Kentucky school bus driver and to keep the license or licenses in force at all times.

4. To provide the District with a certificate from a physician designated by the District attesting to his or her physical fitness to drive a school bus or special type vehicle. This certificate to be provided prior to driving the school bus or special type vehicle in transporting pupils to and from school and at least annually thereafter.

5. To report for work at the times specified by the District and to run the bus route assigned to him or her and to maintain the time schedule for the route consistent with safety, road, and weather conditions.

6. To drive the school bus or special type vehicle to which he or she is assigned in a safe manner at all times and in a manner that will minimize mechanical wear on the parts of the school bus or special type vehicle, and to report mechanical difficulties promptly to the person designated to receive such reports.

7. To sweep or otherwise clean the inside of the school bus or special type vehicle daily and to keep all lights and safety signals clean at all times.

8. To wear clean clothes and to present a clean personal appearance when driving the school bus. The District, at its discretion, may require a certain type of dress or uniform for the Bus Driver.

9. To complete the training required for State certification and any other training required by the District before transporting pupils to and from school or school related events. The Driver may be required by the District to pass an examination based upon the instructional units set forth in the required training course to substantiate the qualifications of the Driver to carry out his or her duties.

10. To attend a reasonable number of school bus driver training meetings during the school year and to participate in the training required for certification renewal.

11. To not report for work when his or her physical condition is such that it would impair the ability of the Driver to carry out his or her duties.

12. To notify the person or persons designated by the District as far in advance as possible when the Driver is unable to report for work and to give a reasonable explanation for not reporting for work.

13. To not make any alterations, modifications, or add any equipment to the bus or remove any equipment from the bus without authorization from the board.

14. _____
_____
_____

MUTUAL AGREEMENTS:

1. It is mutually agreed by and between the District and the Driver that the District will release the Driver from this contract upon the presentation of a written request to the District at least _____ prior to the release date requested except in an emergency.

2. It is mutually agreed by and between the District and the Driver that the Driver will release the District from this contract, if for reasons of economy or efficiency the District determines that it is no longer necessary to operate the school bus or special type vehicle to which the Driver is assigned, provided that the District presents to the Driver a written notice of the District's intent to discontinue the operation of the school bus or special type vehicle at least, _____ in advance, and the Driver is given an appropriate opportunity to respond to such.

3. It is mutually agreed by and between the District and the Driver that the failure of either party to carry out their respective obligations in good faith as set forth in this contract shall cause this contract to become cancelable for cause.

4. It is mutually agreed by and between the District and the Driver that either party may terminate this contract by giving the other party at least _____ written notice when the provisions of this contract have been violated by the other party, provided that party is given an appropriate opportunity to respond to the proposed termination.

5. _____
_____
_____

WITNESSETH THESE SIGNATURES:

_____, School District

_____, Superintendent

_____, Driver

STEP 35

SCHOOL BUS DRIVER DATA SHEET

At this point in the training course, a "School Bus Driver Data Sheet" should be submitted. No one should be allowed to drive Kentucky school children until Pupil Transportation has received the driver's name and pertinent information. The certification comes from the State Department of Education. Therefore, if you permit someone to drive before submitting a "School Bus Driver Data Sheet," you are permitting an uncertified person to drive our children. No one may change anything on the school bus driver data sheet. This form is Kentucky Board of Education approved and as such is a binding document.

SCHOOL BUS DRIVER DATA SHEET

(MAKE COPIES AS NEEDED)

	DELETE	ADD	CHANGE/UPDATE
CIRCLE ONE:	1, 2, 3, 4 , 5 6 & 9	1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 & 10	1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 8 & 10

DISTRICT NAME: _____ DRIVER INSTRUCTOR SIGNATURE: _____

1 LAST NAME	2 FIRST NAME	3 MI	4 SSN #	5 LICENSE #	6 DOB MM-DD-YY	7 CERT DATE MM-DD-YY	8 ANNUAL UPDATE MM-DD-YY	9 TERM DATE MM-DD-YY	10 CDL EXP DATE MM-YY

FORM MUST BE SIGNED - PLEASE PRINT LEGIBLY

FAX OR MAIL TO PUPIL TRANSPORTATION, CPT, 500 MERO STREET, FRANKFORT, KY 40601-1972

****NOTE: LICENSE COPIES WILL NOT FAX, IF FAXING THIS SHEET INDICATE ON THIS FORM THAT LICENSE COPY WILL BE COMING BY MAIL****

KDE: 2205-1061

STEP 36

DRIVER REVIEW II

"Driver Review II" is a two-hour minimum requirement. Driver Review II must be completed after 20 days of completing Step 31, "Driver Review I," and within 30 days. This should be conducted with students on the bus, if possible. Check all required areas on the Review Score Sheet plus any other requirements that you might have. If your student checks out O.K., you need not submit any documentation to Pupil Transportation. If your student is unacceptable, you must at this point, make a decision regarding your course of action. Retraining or Termination. If you decide upon termination, another "School Bus Driver Data Sheet" must be submitted to Pupil Transportation deleting the driver.

VEHICLE OPERATION

DRIVING EXERCISE GRADING REPORT

NAME: _____DATE: _____

DRIVER REVIEW II

TO BE COMPLETED WITHIN TWENTY (20) TO THIRTY (30) DAYS OF COMPLETION OF DRIVER REVIEW I (CERTIFICATION) TWO-HOUR MINIMUM REQUIREMENT.

	SKILLS TESTED	PASS	FAIL	COMMENTS
A.	Seat belt fastened			
B.	Proper use of the turn signals.			
C.	Speed for conditions			
D.	Knowledge of all bus component/controls			
E.	Orderly and regimented mirror usage			
F.	Proper hand positioning on steering wheel			
G.	Acceptable two-point turnabout			
H.	Proper following distance - 4 seconds (5 seconds over forty miles per hour)			
I.	Continuous visual scanning			
J.	Proper foot positioning			
K.	Good posture			
L.	Loading and unloading steps followed in sequence (100% accuracy of all steps required for this activity)			
M.	Railroad negotiation			
N.	Openness to criticism and suggestions			
O.	All students signaled			
P.	All students counted when entering/exiting the bus.			
Q.	Students seated when bus is in motion.			
R.	Hand of hand steering technique used exclusively			

INSTRUCTOR'S SIGNATURE: _____ DATE: _____

STEP 37

DIPLOMA

Present the driver with a “Diploma,” stating all scores and responsible signatures. A copy of this “Diploma” should be kept in the driver’s file to substantiate that all training has taken place.

COMMONWEALTH OF KENTUCKY
DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION

_____County Public Schools

This is to certify that

_____

has demonstrated his/her ability to apply all the knowledge and skills gained in the Kentucky School Bus Driver Training Program with the following proficiency ratings:

CURRICULUM AREA	PROFICIENCY RATING	TRAINING HOURS
Law and Regulations	_____	_____
Driving Fundamentals	_____	_____
Care and Maintenance	_____	_____
Critical Situations	_____	_____
Accident and Emergency Procedures	_____	_____
Pupil Management	_____	_____
First Aid	_____	_____
Special Education Transportation	_____	_____
Extra Curricular Transportation	_____	_____
Vehicle Operation	_____	_____
Vehicle Control at Speed	_____	_____
Bus Route Identification	_____	_____
Driver Review I	_____	_____
Driver Review II	_____	_____
Driver Review III.	_____	_____

_____ Instructor

_____ Driver

_____ School Superintendent

_____ Transportation Director

COMMONWEALTH OF KENTUCKY
DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION

_____Independent Public Schools

This is to certify that

_____

has demonstrated his/her ability to apply all the knowledge and skills gained in the Kentucky School Bus Driver Training Program with the following proficiency ratings:

CURRICULUM AREA	PROFICIENCY RATING	TRAINING HOURS
Law and Regulations	_____	_____
Driving Fundamentals	_____	_____
Care and Maintenance	_____	_____
Critical Situations	_____	_____
Accident and Emergency Procedures	_____	_____
Pupil Management	_____	_____
First Aid	_____	_____
Special Education Transportation	_____	_____
Extra Curricular Transportation	_____	_____
Vehicle Operation	_____	_____
Vehicle Control at Speed	_____	_____
Bus Route Identification	_____	_____
Driver Review I	_____	_____
Driver Review II	_____	_____
Driver Review III	_____	_____

_____ Instructor

_____ Driver

_____ School Superintendent

_____ Transportation Director

STEP 38

DRIVER REVIEW III

Driver Review III is a one-hour minimum requirement to be done within three (3) to six (6) months of completion of Driver Review II. Driver Review III shall be done with students on the bus. The proper score sheet shall be completed and will become part of the driver's file.

DRIVER REVIEW III SCORE SHEET

NAME: _____ DATE: _____

	SKILLS TESTED	PASS	FAIL	COMMENTS
A.	Seat belt fastened			
B.	Proper use of the turn signals.			
C.	Speed for conditions			
D.	Knowledge of all bus component/controls			
E.	Orderly and regimented mirror usage			
F.	Proper hand positioning on steering wheel			
G.	Acceptable two-point turnabout			
H.	Proper following distance - 4 seconds (5 seconds over forty miles per hour)			
I.	Continuous visual scanning			
J.	Proper foot positioning			
K.	Good posture			
L.	Loading and unloading steps followed in sequence (100% accuracy of all steps required on this activity)			
M.	Railroad negotiation			
N.	Openness to criticism and suggestions			
O.	All students signaled			
P.	All students counted when entering/exiting the bus.			
Q.	Students seated when bus is in motion.			
R.	Student/Driver relationships			
S.	Bus atmosphere			
T.	Acceptable condition of bus			
U.	Pre-Trip Inspection			
V.	Post-trip Inspection			
W.	Check for children and articles before leaving the bus.			
X.	Hand over hand steering technique used exclusively			

INSTRUCTOR'S SIGNATURE: _____ DATE: _____

SUMMARY

STEPS TO FOLLOW WHEN TRAINING A SCHOOL BUS DRIVER

STEP 1	APPLICATION – (ADMINISTRATIVE)
STEP 2	INTERVIEW – (ADMINISTRATIVE)
STEP 3	EDUCATION VERIFICATION - (ADMINISTRATIVE)
STEP 4	PRE-EMPLOYMENT ROAD TEST - (ADMINISTRATIVE)
STEP 5	MVR - (ADMINISTRATIVE)
STEP 6	CRIMINAL RECORD CHECK - (ADMINISTRATIVE)
STEP 7	PHYSICAL - (ADMINISTRATIVE)
STEP 8	PRE-EMPLOYMENT DRUG TEST
STEP 9	ALL CLEAR
STEP 10	CDL STUDY PERIOD – (CLASSROOM)
STEP 11	CDL WRITTEN TESTS – (ADMINISTRATIVE)
STEP 12	CARE AND MAINTENANCE - (CLASSROOM)
STEP 13	DRIVING FUNDAMENTALS - (CLASSROOM)
STEP 14	DEFENSIVE DRIVING (CLASSROOM)
STEP 15	LAWS AND REGULATIONS - (CLASSROOM)
STEP 16	VEHICLE OPERATION (CLASSROOM)
STEP 17	VEHICLE OPERATION – PART I – (BEHIND-THE-WHEEL)
STEP 18	PUPIL MANAGEMENT - (CLASSROOM)
STEP 19	VEHICLE OPERATION – PART II
STEP 20	CRITICAL SITUATIONS - (CLASSROOM)
STEP 21	FIRST AID - (CLASSROOM)
STEP 22	VEHICLE OPERATION – PART III – (BEHIND-THE-WHEEL)
STEP 23	VEHICLE CONTROL AT SPEED – (BEHIND-THE-WHEEL)
STEP 24	SPECIAL NEEDS TRANSPORTATION - (CLASSROOM)

STEP 25	EXTRA-CURRICULAR TRIPS - (CLASSROOM)
STEP 26	INCIDENTS AND EMERGENCY PROCEDURES - CLASSROOM)
STEP 27	LOADING AND UNLOADING (CLASSROOM)
STEP 28	FORWARD CONTROL BUS (CLASSROOM)
STEP 29	COMMERCIAL DRIVER'S LICENSE (CLASSROOM)
STEP 30	BUS ROUTE ID - (BEHIND-THE-WHEEL)
STEP 31	DRIVER REVIEW I – (BEHIND-THE-WHEEL)
STEP 32	100 QUESTION TEST - (CLASSROOM)
STEP 33	CDL SKILLS TEST – (BEHIND-THE-WHEEL)
STEP 34	CONTRACT – (ADMINISTRATIVE)
STEP 35	DATA SHEET SUBMISSION – (ADMINISTRATIVE)
STEP 36	DRIVER REVIEW II – (BEHIND-THE-WHEEL)
STEP 37	DIPLOMA - (ADMINISTRATIVE)
STEP 38	DRIVER REWVIEW III

PROPER SCORING OF ALL SCHOOL BUS DRIVER APPLICANTS

The scoring of a Kentucky School bus driver applicant is a multifaceted endeavor. While each Driver Training Instructor has the 610 point guidelines to go by, Pupil Transportation desires to leave the Driver Training Instructor the flexibility to use their own judgement when scoring driver applicants. With this in mind, an instructor must understand all areas of grading. This section is divided into two basic grading modes. One is strictly fixed or objective, while the other is more flexible or subjective. Your goal as a Driver Training Instructor is to be as fixed or objective as possible. When operating on this premise, personal opinion or favoritism is removed.

PART I OF THE GRADING IS AS FOLLOWS:

FIXED --- 80% OVERALL SCORE NEEDED TO PASS ---PLUS 80% ON EACH SECTION

	POINTS POSSIBLE	PASSING SCORE
A. 100 QUESTION TEST (STEP 32)	100	80
B. INTERVIEW (STEP 2)	50	40
* THE FOLLOWING IS PERFORMED DURING VEHICLE AT SPEED*		
C. DEFUNCT/FAULTY BUS	50	40
D. BACK UP	50	40
E. DIMINISHING CLEARANCE	50	40
F. RIGHT TURN	25	20
G. STRAIGHT LINE	50	40
H. SERPENTINE	35	28
I. OFFSET ALLEY	50	40
J. RAILROAD	60	48
K. STOP LINE	15	12
L. STUDENT PICK-UP	75	60
TOTAL	**610**	**488**

A student must score at least 80% in order to have a passing score in the "Fixed" grading mode. This is a minimum of 488 points out of the 610 points possible.

FLEXIBLE

The Driver Training Instructor has the responsibility to also grade the applicant in the "flexible" mode. This method of grading is not as definitive as the fixed mode, but just as important. The following is an outline of grading to be used by the Driver Training Instructor throughout the course when grading.

STEP 1	**APPLICATION**
FLEXIBLE	Go over the application and look for any problem areas.
STEP 2	**INTERVIEW**
FIXED OR FLEXIBLE	What did you think of the applicant? Was he/she enthusiastic? Certainly this is no reason to exclude an applicant, however, it is wise to make mental notes during this process along with the "Fixed" scoring of 50 possible points.
STEP 3	**EDUCATION VERIFICATION**
FLEXIBLE	Verify proper education and place verification in the driver's file.
STEP 4	**PRE-EMPLOYMENT ROAD TEST**
FLEXIBLE	This segment, seems to be misunderstood. As a driver training instructor, you are simply deciding, "Can I train this driver? Be careful before you take the applicants out on a bus, they may not be covered by insurance. Why not use a car or school van. Be safe. Say on school property.

STEP 5 **MOTOR VEHICLE RECORD CHECK**

FLEXIBLE You must look over this document and determine whether he/she is a good candidate. Pupil Transportation does not feel that if would be proper for anyone to make the decision to place an applicant in a training class other than a local school district. The subjectivity of this decision should be removed as much as possible. Develop board policies governing enrollment in a class.

STEP 6 **CRIMINAL RECORD CHECK (THUMBPRINT)**

FLEXIBLE This is similar to the motor vehicle record check in that it should be gone over and board policies should be developed. This removes any allegations of favoritism or discrimination.

STEP 7 **PHYSICAL**

FLEXIBLE This document should not be received and just filed away. It needs to be looked at and an applicant's physical qualities need to be checked to make sure that he/she meets the minimum qualifications in our regulations.

STEP 8 **PRE-EMPLOYMENT DRUG TEST**

The results are confidential.

STEP 9 **ALL CLEAR**

ENROLLMENT

STEP 10 **CDL STUDY PERIOD**

STEP 11 **CDL WRITTEN TESTS**

STEP 12 **CARE AND MAINTENANCE**

FLEXIBLE Not a scored class in the "Fixed" scoring method in computation of the 610 points, however, you, the driving training instructor, have the right to ensure that the student can perform a pre-trip inspection to your satisfaction. The student should score at least 80% on the post chapter written test.

STEP 13 **DRIVING FUNDAMENTALS**

FLEXIBLE Not a scored class in the "Fixed" scoring method in computation of the 610 points, however, you, the driver training instructor, have the authority to ensure that the student has grasped the basic knowledge needed. The student should score at least 80% on the post-chapter written test.

STEP 14 **DEFENSIVE DRIVING**

FLEXIBLE

STEP 15 **LAWS AND REGULATIONS**

FLEXIBLE Not a scored class in computation of the 610 points, however, you, the driver training instructor, have the right to ensure that the student has grasped the basic knowledge needed. The student should score at least 80% on the post-chapter written test.

STEP 16 **VEHICLE OPERATION (CLASSROOM)**

STEP 17 **VEHICLE OPERATION (PART I)**

FLEXIBLE The is the first "Behind-The-Wheel" activity after the student applicant has been accepted into the training class. The instructor should be careful not to grade the student too difficultly this first trip out. The student will be nervous and will not fully understand what is expected. The scoring in this section is flexible. It is not part of the 610 points in the "Fixed" scoring mode. Keep the state supplied score sheet on the driver and go over it after the drive. Remember, never argue with a student if they say that they did not do this or that when reviewing their performance. State your observations, restate your expectations and proceed onward.

STEP 18 **PUPIL MANAGEMENT**

FLEXIBLE This section is not part of the "Fixed" 610 points. This section needs to be very concrete in as far as what is expected from the driver. Give the driver definite direction. Each school district should have their pupil management policy developed to the point where both driver and student fully understand what is expected of them. The student should score at least 80% on the post-chapter written test.

STEP 19 **VEHICLE OPERATION (PART II)**

FLEXIBLE This is the second time that you will have the student applicant behind the wheel. This segment is not part of the 610 points, however, you should start to expect more from your students at this point in their training. Keep the state supplied score sheet and be sure that all basics are acceptable.

STEP 20 **CRITICAL SITUATIONS**

FLEXIBLE This section is not scored in computation of the 610 points, however, you have the authority and the responsibility to ensure that the student has grasped the basic knowledge needed. The student should score at least 80% on the post-chapter written test.

STEP 21 **FIRST AID**

FLEXIBLE This section is not scored in computation of the 610 points, however, you should have the student take the post-chapter test and he/she should score at least 80%. This chapter affords a perfect opportunity for guest speakers. Whenever using guest speakers, be sure that all mandated materials are covered. The student should score at least 80% on the post-chapter written test.

STEP 22 **VEHICLE OPERATION PART (III)**

FLEXIBLE This is the third and final part of the "Vehicle Operation." Once again, it is not part of the 610 point "Fixed" scoring process, however, the state score sheet should be used and all pertinent information should be graded. This score sheet should become part of the driver training file. You should see vast improvement in the student applicant's ability level.

STEP 23 **VEHICLE CONTROL AT SPEED**

FIXED This section is what has evolved to be referred to as the "Road-E-O." It is not. There is no "Road-E-O" in the initial training of Kentucky school bus drivers. Although similar to the Rode-E-O,

there are differences within the vehicle control at speed segment and the Rode-E-O.

There are two (2) parts to Vehicle At Speed. The part 1 segment is the origin of 460 of the 610 points in the "Fixed" scoring. Add the 100 points from the "100 Question" test and 50 points from the interview and you get the following:

460 – Vehicle Control at Speed (See Score Sheet)
100 – 100 Question Test
50 – Personal Appearance and Interview
610 – TOTAL

A state mandated score sheet should be kept on each driver, showing the "Fixed" score of each applicant.

STEP 24 **SPECIAL NEEDS TRANSPORTATION**

FLEXIBLE This section is not a scored in computation of the 610 points, however, you have the right and responsibility to ensure that the student has grasped the basic knowledge needed. The student should score at least 80% on the post-chapter written test.

STEP 25 **EXTRA-CURRICULAR TRIPS**

FLEXIBLE This section is not a scored in computation of the 610 points, however, you have the right and responsibility to ensure that the student has grasped the basic knowledge needed. The student should score at least 80% on the post-chapter written test.

STEP 26 **INCIDENTS AND EMERGENCY PROCEDURES**

FLEXIBLE This section is not a scored in computation of the 610 points, however, you have the right and responsibility to ensure that the student has grasped the basic knowledge needed. The student should score at least 80% on the post-chapter written test.

STEP 27 **LOADING AND UNLOADING**

STEP 28 **FORWARD CONTROL BUS**

STEP 29 **COMMERCIAL DRIVER LICENSE**

STEP 30 **BUS ROUTE IDENTIFICATION**

FLEXIBLE The scoring for this part of the training, although not part of the 610 points, must be documented and, as all other segments, should be placed in the driver's file. You must grade the student applicant on the topics covered on the score sheet in this chapter. You may desire to check the student applicant in other areas that are pertinent to your school district.

STEP 31 **DRIVER REVIEW I**

FLEXIBLE This is a two-hour minimum requirement to be completed within five (5) days of completion of the curriculum. You should score the driver applicant on the areas that are on the score sheet contained in this chapter. The score sheet shall become part of the driver's file.

STEP 32 **100 QUESTION TEST**

FIXED Each question has the value of one point. This section is worth 100 of the 610 points and a copy of the answer sheet should become a part of the driver's file. Each driver applicant should score a minimum of 80% on this sheet.

STEP 33 **CDL SKILLS**

STEP 34 **CONTRACT**

STEP 35 **SCHOOL BUS DRIVER DATA SHEET**

STEP 36 **DRIVER REVIEW II**

FLEXIBLE This is a two-hour minimum requirement to be performed twenty (20) to thirty (30) days after completion of Driver Review I. A copy of the score sheet shall become part of the driver's file. Be sure that you, the driver training instructor, are satisfied, that the applicant is safe with our children.

STEP 37 **DIPLOMA**

STEP 38 **DRIVER REVIEW III**

FLEXIBLE This is a one-hour minimum requirement to be completed within three (3) to six (6) months of completion of Driver Review II. Driver Review III shall be completed with students on the bus. A copy of the score sheet shall become part of the driver's file.

APPLICANTS NAME: _____ LOCATION: _____

DATE: _____

				FIXED SCORING										
TEST INTERVIEW				VEHICLE AT SPEED (POSSIBLE POINTS)										
		100	50	50	50	50	25	50	35	50	60	15	75	610
Applicant Number	Applicant Name	Written Exam	Personal App. Intv. Exam	Faculty Bus	Back Up	Dim. Clear	Right Turn	Straight Line	Serpen-Tine	Offset Alley	Rail-Road	Stop Line	Student Pick-Up	**TOTAL SCORE**
1														
2														
3														
4														
5														
6														
7														
8														
9														
10														
11														
12														
13														
14														
15														
16														
17														

CHAPTER 3

KENTUCKY LAWS AND REGULATIONS GOVERNING SCHOOL BUS DRIVERS

KENTUCKY LAWS AND REGULATIONS
GOVERNING SCHOOL BUS DRIVERS

LESSON TOPIC:

KENTUCKY LAWS AND REGULATIONS GOVERNING SCHOOL BUS DRIVERS

OBJECTIVES:

- The current certified bus drivers and new driver applicants will have an understanding of state laws and regulations to legally operate a school bus.

- The applicant will gain knowledge and understanding of the daily demands and responsibilities required of a school bus driver.

- The applicant will be alerted of his/her responsibilities involving local transportation policies and regulations.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	It is not the purpose of this unit to cover all Kentucky laws, motor vehicle laws or administrative regulations. Time would not allow such an undertaking. Although the laws contained in these publications are important, we will only discuss those that most directly pertain to a school bus driver. Before we begin our discussion of specific laws and regulations, lets take a few minutes and talk about the difference between a law and a regulation. A law is a rule of conduct that has been enacted in this case by our State Legislature. A law that has been enacted by a legislative body is called a statute; thus, the KENTUCKY REVISED STATUTES (KRS). Once a law is passed, a government agency is given the responsibility of administering or enforcing the law and, if necessary, to aid in carrying out the intent of the law. In many cases, the law itself will direct an agency to write regulations governing specific areas of responsibility. Before any state regulation becomes effective, it must be approved by the Legislature Research Commission (LRC) and the Legislative Oversight Review Committee (LORC). The LRC makes certain that the regulation is not in conflict with any law, and the LORC, consisting of legislators, makes sure the regulation carries out the intent of the law they enacted. The LORC meeting is open to the public and individuals or organizations are given the

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	opportunity to express their views about any regulation being reviewed. Once approved, the regulation becomes a part of the **Kentucky Administrative Regulations** (KAR's) and has the effect of law unless it is in conflict with another law. Let's discuss some of the laws and regulations that are most important to you as a school bus driver. We will begin with the laws or statutes. **KRS 156.160 – Promulgation Of Administrative Regulations By The Kentucky Board Of Education.** "The Kentucky Board of Education shall promulgate administrative regulations establishing standards which schools districts shall meet in: . . . . (g) The transportation of children to and from school." This is an example of a law directing a state agency to adopt regulations relating to specific matters. **KRS 157.370 – Allotment Of Transportation Units** This law outlines the method by which state funds are allotted by way of an approved calculation formula, to each school district for transportation program costs. **702 KAR 5:020 – Program Cost Calculations** This regulation implements and interprets where necessary, those statutory provisions, in order to set out the method and steps for completion of the calculation of the district's pupil transportation program costs.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	<u>KRS 158.110 – Transportation of Pupils</u> "(1) Boards of education **may** provide transportation from their general funds, or otherwise, for any pupil of any grade to the nearest school to said pupil's residence within the district if the pupil does not live within a reasonable walking distance to such nearest school of appropriate grade level." Section 2 of this law states that if space is not available at the nearest school, the board may provide transportation from their general funds to the nearest school where space is available. Section 3 states that schools shall not change their present grade level structure without permission from the Kentucky Board of Education. "(4) The boards of education shall adopt such rules and regulations as will insure the comfort, health and safety of the children who are transported, consistent with the rules and regulations of the Kentucky Board of Education, dealing with the transportation of pupils. The word "may" of Section (1) means that it is permissive legislation and, in effect, a board is not required to provide transportation for pupils of any grade level. Since money is appropriated for transportation, the courts have, and probably would rule that it is mandatory for boards to provide transportation for pupils who do not live within a reasonable walking distance of the school attended.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	<u>KRS 160.310 – Board to Provide Insurance For School Buses</u> "Each board of education may set aside funds to provide for liability and indemnity insurance against the negligence of the drivers or operators of school buses…." This law goes on to state that contractors must carry indemnity or liability insurance in such amount as the board designates. Also, the policy must be issued by a company authorized to transact business in the state. **<u>KRS 161.185 – Teacher or Staff Member to Accompany Students on School-Sponsored or Endorsed Trips – Exceptions.</u>** 1. Except as provided in subsection (2), boards of education shall require a member of the school faculty or a member of the administrative staff to accompany students on all school-sponsored or school-endorsed trips. 2. Boards of education may permit a nonfaculty coach or nonfaculty assistant, as defined by administrative regulation promulgated by the Kentucky Board of Education under KRS 156.070(2), to accompany students on all school-sponsored or school-endorsed athletic trips. A nonfaculty coach or nonfaculty

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

assistant shall be at least twenty-one (21) years of age, shall not be a violent offender or convicted of a sex crime as defined by KRS 17.165 which is classified as a felony, and shall submit to a criminal record check under KRS 160.380.

3. Prior to assuming his or her duties, a nonfaculty coach or nonfaculty assistant shall successfully complete training provided by the local school district. The training shall include, but not be limited to, information on the physical and emotional development of students of the age with whom the nonfaculty coach and nonfaculty assistant will be working, the district's and school's discipline policies, procedures for dealing with discipline programs and safety and first aid training. Follow-up training shall be provided annually. (Repealed and reenact. Acts 1990, ch.476, PT. V, § 482, effective July 13, 1990, 1998, ch. 178, § 1, effective July 1998.)

KRS 178.290 – Construction of Sidewalks Along Public Roads; School Bus Turn-Around Areas

"…..(2) The fiscal court may where needed, build and maintain suitable areas for the safe turning around of school buses."

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	This law gives the fiscal court permission to spend money for this purpose. **KRS 189.370 – Passing Stopped School or Church Bus Prohibited: Application to Properly Marked Vehicles; Rebuttable Presumption As To Identity of Violator** "(1) If any school bus or church bus used in the transportation of children is stopped upon a highway for the purpose of receiving or discharging passengers, with the stop arm and signal lights activated, the operator of a vehicle approaching from any direction shall bring his/her vehicle to a stop and shall not proceed until the bus has completed receiving or discharging passengers and has been put into motion. The stop requirement provided for in this section shall not apply to vehicles approaching a stopped bus from the opposite direction upon a highway of four (4) or more lanes. (2) Subsection (1) of this section shall be applicable only when the bus displays the marking and equipment required by Kentucky Minimum Specifications for School Buses. (3) If any vehicle is witnessed to be in violation of Subsection (1) of this section and identify of the operator is not otherwise apparent, it shall be a rebuttable presumption that the person in whose name the vehicle is registered or leased was the operator of the vehicle at the time of the alleged violation and is subject to the penalties as provided for in KRS 189.990(5)."

INSTRUCTOR GUILDELINES/NOTE	CONTENT
	<u>KRS 189.375 – School Bus Stop Signaling Device; Use; Stopping Regulation</u> No school bus shall be licensed or operated for the transportation of school children unless it is equipped with a stop arm folding sign on the driver's side with letters at least six inches (6") in height displaying the word "STOP" on both sides. Once the bus comes to a complete stop, and before receiving or discharging passengers, the driver shall open out the sign so that it will be plainly visible to traffic approaching from both directions. No driver shall stop a school bus for receiving or discharging passengers in a no passing zone which does not afford reasonable visibility to approaching motor vehicles from both directions. No driver shall stop a school bus for the purpose of receiving passengers from or discharging passengers to the opposite side of the road on a highway of four (4) or more lanes; provided that this provision does not prohibit the discharging or passengers at a marked pedestrian crossing. **<u>KRS 189.540 – Regulation For School Buses; Operator Required To Have Commercial Driver's License</u>** "(1) The Kentucky Board of Education shall adopt administrative regulations to govern the design and operation of all Kentucky school buses. The Board shall, with the advice and aid of the Kentucky State Police and the Transportation Cabinet, enforce the administrative

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	regulations governing the operation of all school buses whether owned by a school district or privately contracted. The regulations covering the operation shall, by reference, be made a part of any contract with a school district. Every school district and private contractor referred to under this subsection shall be subject to those regulations. (2) Any employee of any school district who violates any of the administrative regulations in any contract executed on be half of a school district shall be subject to removal from office. Any person operating a school bus under contract with a school district who fails to comply with any of the administrative regulations shall be guilty of breach of contract and the contract shall be cancelled after proper notice. A hearing will take place by the responsible officers of such school districts. (3) Any person who operates a school bus shall be required to possess a commercial driver's license issued pursuant to KRS 281A.170." **<u>702 KAR 5:060 – Buses, Specifications And Purchases</u>** The purpose of this regulation is to set forth methods and procedures for cooperative, centralized purchasing of school buses by local boards of education through contracts established through the Department of Education and the Finance Cabinet.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	<u>KRS 189.550 – Vehicles Used For Transporting Children To Stop At Railroad Crossings</u> "Operators of all buses and motor vehicles used for transporting children shall stop their vehicles before crossing any railroad when tracks are at the same level as the roadway. The stop shall be made not less than fifteen feet (15') nor more than fifty feet (50') from the nearest track over which the highway crosses, except where the crossing is protected by gates or a flagman employed by the railroad. After making the stop, the operator shall open the service door and carefully look in each direction and listen for approaching trains or maintenance vehicles before proceeding." Now let's discuss the administrative regulations governing a school bus driver or other transportation personnel jobs. We will not mention all of the regulations (KAR's), but will only discuss a few of those that most directly pertain to school bus drivers. **<u>702 KAR 5:010 – Pupil Transportation Technical Assistance and Monitoring</u>** This regulation establishes guidelines and procedures whereby the Department of Education, may offer direct assistance to the school districts in these areas: service to the pupils, school bus safety and economy of operation.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	<u>702 KAR 5:020 – Program Cost Calculation</u> **<u>702 KAR 5:030 – Pupil Transportation</u>** Section 1. A school district superintendent shall be responsible for the safe operation and general supervision of the district's pupil transportation program. The superintendent may designate another employee or other employees of the board to assist in carrying out this responsibility. Section 2. The superintendent shall require that a safety inspection be made on each school bus owned and operated by the board or contracted to the board at least once each month that the district's schools are in session. This inspection shall be made by a state approved inspector. If, upon inspection, a school bus is found to be in unsafe operating condition, the superintendent shall withhold the bus from operation until the required repairs are made. The superintendent shall keep the records of the bus safety inspection on file. Section 3. The superintendent shall make reports annually to the Department of Education on all school bus incidents that occurred during the year. Incidents involving serious student injury or fatality or failure of safety equipment shall be reported to the

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	Kentucky Department of Education immediately.
	Section 4.
	The superintendent shall provide the required school bus driver training before a school bus driver shall begin the duties of transporting pupils to and from school or events related to schools. This training shall at least include the school bus driver course prescribed by the Kentucky Board of Education, in accordance with 702 KAR 5:080, Sections 7 and 8 and shall be conducted by a state approved driver training instructor. Evidence that the driver has received this training shall be submitted to the Pupil Transportation Branch and a copy shall be retained by the district.
	Section 5.
	The superintendent shall be responsible for providing the required in-service school bus driver training which each school bus driver shall complete annually for approval renewal, in accordance with 702 KAR 5:080, Section 8. The in-service training shall include at least eight (8) hours of required instruction relevant to the core curriculum conducted by an approved instructor. Evidence that each driver has received this training shall be submitted to the Pupil Transportation Branch and a copy shall be retained by the district.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	Section 6. A superintendent shall require all drivers of school buses equipped with a crossing control arm to utilize the arm when loading or unloading students. The superintendent or designee, in consultation with the certified driver training instructor, shall have full authority as to the use of crossing arms on school grounds. Section 7. District school bus inspectors shall complete an annual four (4) hour update conducted by a state approved school bus inspector/instructor. Section 8. The training required to be designated as a state approved inspector is provided in the "Pupil Transportation Management Manual", Chapter 6. Section 9. A superintendent shall implement a controlled substance and alcohol use and testing program in accordance with Federal Motor Carrier Regulations 382, Section 101 through 605. Section 10. A district shall provide the owner of any school bus or special type vehicle that is contracted to the board for the transportation of the district's pupils

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	with a written contract each school year in which the responsibilities of the contractor are clearly established.
	Section 11.
	A district shall require the owner of any school bus or special type vehicle contracted to the board to provide a performance bond each school year in the amount that the district deems necessary.
	Section 12.
	In route planning and purchasing or contracting for school buses, a district shall work toward providing a sufficient number of school buses to allow each student a seated position that affords the occupant protected compartmentalization and complies with 702 KAR 5:080.
	Section 13.
	Before a district transfers the title of a school bus to another party other than a Kentucky school district, the district shall:
	(1) Remove all district identification. A contract issued by the board to a school bus contractor shall contain a clause requiring the school bus contractor to remove all district identification lettering from the school bus when it is no longer under contract to the district; and

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	(2) Make the stop signal arm and the red flashing warning lights, strobe lights and crossing control arms inoperable by disconnection or removal.
	Section 14.
	A district shall develop a plan providing all pupils instruction in school bus pupil safety each school year. The district shall conduct two (2) evacuations each semester with the first evacuation each semester being conducted within the first week in accordance with the Driver Training Instructor Manual, Chapter Eleven (11). The district shall retain documentation of emergency evacuation performance. Educational films, safety demonstrations or related information as approved by the Kentucky Department of Education, may supplement emergency evacuation drills.
	Section 15.
	A district shall not permit a radio, tape, or communication system to be installed or operated on the school bus that is not under the direct control of the bus driver. Any installed radio, tape or communication system shall be per the original equipment manufacturer's specifications.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	Section 16. A district shall designate a physician, physician's assistant, or an advanced registered nurse practitioner to perform the physical examination required for all school bus drivers. The district shall retain a current physical examination record or physical fitness certification for each school bus driver. Section 17. A principal or designee shall be responsible for the organization and operation of a system of adequate supervision of the pupils as they enter and leave the school buses at the school. Section 18. Each local board of education shall have a policy on responsibilities of pupils who are transported in district vehicles. Section 19. A principal or designee shall be responsible for the discipline of pupils who ride school buses. The principal shall assist the school bus driver with school bus discipline problems when the school bus driver properly reports on the discipline problem either in person or in writing.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

Section 20.

A pupil who creates a serious safety or discipline problem or persists in creating serious discipline problems on the school bus shall be reported to the principal or designee who handles bus discipline problems. The principal or designee may suspend the pupil's bus riding privileges until the problem is resolved. A student whose bus riding privileges have been suspended shall not be allowed on the bus again until the driver receives permission by the principal or his designee.

Section 21.

A school bus driver shall maintain a current ridership list for all routes and trips.

Section 22.

A local board of education that owns, operates, or contracts school buses that transport the district's pupils to and from school shall purchase liability or indemnity insurance for said school buses. The coverage limits shall be at least the amounts below:

Bodily injury/property damage	$2,000,000 per occurrence combined or $250,000/$2,000,000 split
Uninsured/underinsured Motorist coverage	$500,000
"No fault" coverage	20,000 per passenger

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	<u>702 KAR 5:060 – Buses; Specifications and Purchases</u> **<u>702 KAR 5:080 – Bus Drivers' Qualifications; Responsibilities and Training</u>** Section 1. (1) A local board of education shall require an annual medical examination of each school bus driver or driver of a special vehicle used to transport school children to and from school and events related to the school. A district may require a school bus driver to pass a routine medical examination or a special type medical examination more often than annually at the district's expense. A current medical examination certificate (TC 94-35E and the Supplement to TC 94-35E) for each school bus driver shall be retained by the district. (2) The medical examination shall include tests for: (a) Hearing and vision disorders; (b) Emotional instability; and (c) Serious medical conditions including: 1. Diabetes; 2. Epilepsy; 3. Heart disease; and 4. Other chronic or communicable diseases if indicated in the opinion of the licensed medical examiner.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	(3) The examination shall include tests for tuberculosis upon initial employment and positive reactors shall be required to have further evaluations. (4) A medical examination of a school bus driver shall be reported on Form TC 94-35E and the Supplement(s) to TC 94-35E to the local superintendent or his designee. Section 2. (1)(a) A criminal records and driving history check shall be performed by a local district on school bus drivers prior to initial employment and after a break in service (excluding summers). (b) Employment shall be contingent upon meeting the requirements of paragraph (a) of this subsection. A local board of education **shall adopt** policies outlining employment qualifications as related to these criminal records and driving history checks. (c) A school bus driver shall immediately report to the local superintendent or his designee a: 1. Revocation of his driver's license; 2. Conviction for DUI/DWI; 3. Conviction for reckless driving; or 4. Citation for any moving motor vehicle violation including DUI/DWI and reckless driving.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	(2)(a) Controlled substance and alcohol use testing shall be a condition of employment for anyone in a safety sensitive position, including: 1. School bus drivers; 2. School bus mechanics; and 3. Other safety-sensitive jobs requiring a CDL license. (b) The controlled substance and alcohol use testing program shall include the following tests: 1. Pre-employment testing (controlled substance only); 2. Post-accident testing; 3. Random testing; and 4. Reasonable suspicion testing. (c) Prospective employees who have tested positive for a controlled substance within the last five (5) years shall not be considered for employment to drive a school bus or the performance of safety-sensitive services related to pupil transportation. (d) A school bus driver, school bus mechanic or anyone performing safety-sensitive pupil transportation duties having a confirmed positive test for a controlled substance shall be relieved of those duties immediately and not be eligible for reemployment for five (5) years.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	(e) A school bus driver, school bus mechanic or anyone performing safety-sensitive pupil transportation duties who tests at 0.02 percent or higher on the confirmation alcohol test immediately before, during, or immediately following the performance of these duties shall be relieved of these duties immediately and not be eligible for reemployment in a safety-sensitive position for five (5) years. (f) A person shall not be employed as a school bus driver if convicted within the past five (5) years of driving a motor vehicle under the influence of alcohol or any illegal drug. (g) A person shall not drive a school bus unless the person is physically or mentally able to operate a school bus safely and satisfactorily. If there is limitation of motion in joints, neck, back, arms, legs, or other body parts, due to injury or disease that would limit the driver's ability to safely perform the task of driving a school bus or performing other driver responsibilities, the person shall not be employed as a school bus driver. (h) A driver taking medication either by prescription or without prescription shall report this to their immediate supervisor and shall not

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	drive if that medication would affect the driver's ability to safely drive a school bus or perform other driver responsibilities. Section 3. (1) A person shall not drive a school bus unless the person has: a) Visual acuity of at least 20/40 (Snellan) in each eye either without corrective lenses or by correction with corrective lenses; b) Form field vision of not less than a total of 140 degrees; and c) The ability to recognize the colors of traffic signals and devices showing standard red, green, and amber. (2) A driver requiring correction by corrective lenses shall wear properly prescribed corrective lenses at all times while driving. Section 4. A person shall not drive a school bus whose hearing is less than 7/15 in the better ear, or hearing loss is greater than forty (40) decibels if audiogram is used, for conversational tones, with or without a hearing aid. A driver requiring a hearing aid shall wear properly operating aids at all times while driving.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	Section 5. A school bus driver shall be at least twenty-one (21) years of age. Section 6. (1) A school bus driver shall have a current driver's license that is valid in Kentucky. A school bus driver shall possess a commercial driver's license, with the passenger endorsement for a school bus, which is valid in Kentucky. (2)(a) Prior to acceptance into the school bus driver training program, a driver applicant shall be required to demonstrate driving skills judged by a certified driver training instructor to meet acceptable performance standards as outlined in "Pre-employment Road Test", January, 2002. b) The Pre-employment Road Test Score Sheet supplied by the Department of Education shall become a part of the driver's training record. c) A driver shall demonstrate the following skill levels: 1. Vehicle knowledge; and 2. Driver's ability to perform steering, maneuvering, braking, use mirrors, and demonstrate each of the following: a. Ninety (90°) degree left hand turns steering technique;

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	b. Ninety (90°) degree right hand turns steering technique; c. Operating posture; d. Visual awareness; e. Backing ability using mirrors only; and f. Demonstration of spatial awareness. Section 7. (1) Minimum training requirements to become a school bus driver shall consist of the training course developed by the Kentucky Department of Education and three (3) driver review, evaluation and instruction components. (2)(a) A person shall not be certified to teach the school bus driver training curriculum until that person has: 1. Satisfactorily completed a minimum of thirty-three (33) hours classroom and driving instruction, conducted or approved by the Department of Education and relevant to the driver training curriculum; and 2. Been issued an instructor's certificate by the commissioner of education. (3) Instructors shall be required to renew their certificates annually by completing six (6) hours of update training conducted or approved by the Department.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	(4) The school bus driver training course core curriculum shall consist of the following instructional units and minimum instructional times: a) Laws and regulations - two (2) hours; b) Driving fundamentals - two (2) hours; c) Care and maintenance - two (2) hours; d) Critical situations - one (1) hour; e) Incidents and emergency procedures - two (2) hours; f) Pupil management - two (2) hours; g) First aid - one (1) hour; h) Special education transportation - one (1) hour; i) Extracurricular trips – one (1) hour; j) Vehicle operations – three (3) hours; k) Vehicle control at speed – one (1) hour; and l) Bus route identification, driver review and instruction – two (2) hours (5) Upon successful completion of the core curriculum the school bus driver applicant shall complete the following: a) Driver review I, evaluation and instruction – two (2) hours within the first five (5) days of driving.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	b) Driver review II, evaluation and instruction - two (2) hours after not less than twenty (20) days nor more than thirty (30) days of driving; and c) Driver review III evaluation and instruction - one (1) hour within three (3) to six (6) months of completion of driver review II. **Driver review III shall be done with students on the bus.** Section 8. (1) Prior to the beginning of each school year, a certified driver shall complete an eight (8) hour training update relevant to the curriculum prior to the beginning of the school year. **Each district shall be responsible for planning and conducting the update based on the needs of its drivers.** (2) Discontinuance of driver employment and subsequent reemployment shall require the driver to become requalified by a training update within a twelve (12) month period following his or her certification termination date. (3) A driver who does not complete the training update and recertification as required by subsection (2) of this section shall be required to complete the beginning training program.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	Section 9. If an emergency makes it necessary for the driver to leave the bus while pupils are on board, the driver shall: 1) Move the bus to a safe location if possible; 2) Set the parking brake; 3) Stop the engine; 4) Shift the bus to low gear, or place in neutral if automatic equipped; 5) Remove the ignition key; and 6) Place one (1) of the older responsible pupils in charge during the driver's absence if appropriate. Section 10. A driver shall operate the school bus at all times in a manner that provides the maximum amount of safety and comfort for the pupils under the circumstances. Section 11. (1) A driver shall supervise the seating of the pupils on the bus. A driver may assign a pupil to a specific seat on the bus. (2) The driver shall make certain the seating capability of the bus has been fully utilized before any pupil is permitted to stand in the bus aisle. A driver shall not permit pupils to stand:

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	a. In the step well or landing area; b. If the pupil would likely fall out of the bus if the emergency door were opened; or c. If the driver's view directly in front of the bus or to either side of the front of the bus would be obscured. (3) A driver shall report to the superintendent or a designee any overcrowded conditions on the bus. Section 12. (1) A driver shall transport only those pupils officially assigned to a particular bus route unless an unassigned pupil presents the driver with a written permit to ride the bus that has been signed by the school principal or a designee. (2) A driver shall not permit an assigned pupil to leave the bus at a stop other than where the pupil regularly leaves the bus unless presented with a written permission signed by the principal or a designee. Section 13. A driver shall not transport adult employees of the board or any person not employed by the board of education unless provided with written permission from the district superintendent or a designee.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	Section 14. A board of education shall develop a policy on what may or may not be transported on a school bus. The policy shall include the following: (1) A driver shall not knowingly permit any firearms or weapons, either operative or ceremonial, to be transported on the bus. The driver shall not knowingly permit any fireworks or any other explosive materials of any type to be transported on the bus; and (2) A driver shall not permit to be transported on the bus: a. Any live animals, fowls, or reptiles. b. Preserved specimen that would likely frighten any pupil or cause a commotion on the bus; or c. Glass objects or helium balloons. (3) A driver shall not permit the transportation of any object that would block the bus aisle or exits. Section 15. A driver shall not permit a pupil to operate the entrance door handle or any other bus control except in case of an emergency. Section 16. (1) A driver shall activate the flashing amber warning lights at least 150 feet, if available, or a

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	sufficient distance from a bus stop to warn motorists of the intended stop. (2) Once the bus comes to a complete stop, the driver shall follow the loading and unloading procedure outlined in Chapter 7 of the Driver Training Instructors Manual. Section 17. For safety reasons, a driver shall not permit fueling of the bus while pupils are on board the bus. Section 18. (1) If a pupil's conduct on the bus makes it unsafe for the bus to continue on its route, the driver shall: a. Make a determination as to the potential danger to other students on the bus; and b. Take action against the student by: 1. Requesting that the student stop engaging in the prohibited conduct; 2. If feasible, sending for assistance if the student fails to comply with the driver's order or request; 3. Ordering the student to leave the bus; or 4. Ejecting the pupil from the bus.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	(2) Ejecting a pupil from the bus shall be done only in the most extreme circumstances. (3) If a student has been ejected from a bus as the result of conduct specified in subsection (1) of this section, the driver shall notify the immediate supervisor, who shall notify the appropriate district authorities, who shall subsequently notify the student's parent or legal guardian according to local board policy. Section 19. A school bus driver shall stop the bus at all places where the roadway crosses a railroad track or tracks at grade level. The stop shall be made not less than fifteen (15) feet nor more than fifty (50) feet from the nearest track. (1) After making the stop, the driver shall: a. Set the parking brake; b. Shift to neutral; c. Turn off all noise makers or activate the noise abatement switch if equipped; d. Open the service door and driver side window; and e. Carefully look in each direction and listen for approaching trains before proceeding. (2) If visibility is impaired at a crossing, after stopping the driver may allow the vehicle to roll

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	forward to gain required visibility before proceeding. (3) When a driver has ascertained that it is safe for the bus to cross the railroad tracks, the driver shall: a. Close the bus entrance door; b. Shift the bus into the lowest gear; c. Release the parking brake; d. Proceed immediately to cross the railroad tracks; and e. Turn the noise abatement switch off when safe to do so. Section 20. A driver shall make a pre-trip inspection of the bus safety and operating equipment each time that the bus is taken out for the transportation of pupils. Section 21. (1) A school bus driver shall not operate the school bus at a speed in excess of the posted speed limit on any section of highways over which the bus travels. (2) A driver shall not drive the school bus on any roadway at any time at a speed where the conditions of the roadway, weather conditions, or other extenuating circumstances would likely make it unsafe.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	Section 22. A driver shall wear the driver's seat belt at all times that the bus is operated. Section 23. A stop signal arm and flashing warning lights shall be used only at stops where pupils are boarding or leaving the bus. Section 24. A driver shall not use tobacco products on the school bus and shall not permit pupils to use tobacco products on the school bus. Section 25. A driver shall signal pupils to board or leave the bus when the driver has determined that any visible approaching traffic creating a substantive risk of harm has come to a complete stop and is not attempting to start up or pass the bus. Section 26. A driver shall not operate a school bus while under the influence of alcoholic beverages or any illegal drug or other drug as provided in Section 2 of this administrative regulation. A driver found under the influence of alcohol or any illegal drug while on duty or with remaining driving responsibilities that same day shall be dismissed from employment.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	Section 27. A driver of a school bus shall be on the bus at all times students are loading or unloading. Section 28. A driver shall inspect the school bus at the completion of each bus run to ensure that no students remain on the bus. **EMPLOYEE DRUG AND ALCOHOL AWARENESS TRAINING SESSIONS** **OUTLINE FOR INSTRUCTIONS** **Each board employee who possesses a commercial driver's license must receive a minimum of one (1) hour of training in drug and alcohol awareness. Following is the outline for this training, along with a drug handout.** **EMPLOYEE ORIENTATION** The purpose of employee training is to provide your employees with the skills and knowledge to accomplish the following objectives: 1. Understand your transit policy for a drug-free workplace and how it applies to them, including: (a) understanding the performance impacts of drug and alcohol abuse;

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	(b) understand expected standards of employee conduct and the penalties for violation of the policy; and (c) knowing what Employee Assistance Program (EAP) services are available. 2. Appreciate how substance abuse can affect the workplace in terms of economic loss, vehicle safety and incidents, workplace attitudes and morals, productivity, and equipment reliability. 3. Understand the general procedures for specimen collection for drug testing. 4. Know that impaired job performance may lead to a request for a urine specimen for reasonable suspicion testing. 5. Know where to go for assessment and referral for drug or alcohol abuse for themselves, co-workers, or family members. 6. Understand how the physiological and psychological effects of drugs endanger health and the work environment, with particular emphasis on alcohol, marijuana, and cocaine. 7. Understand the principal of confidentiality and how it applies to the drug and alcohol policy. 8. Have an appreciation of their role in creating a workforce value system which actively supports the concept of a drug-free workplace.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	SAMPLE OUTLINE FOR EMPLOYEE AWARENESS TRAINING SESSIONS
	A. Impact Of Drug Abuse On Society And Industry
	1. National and regional statistics on drug and alcohol abuse.
	2. Signs and symptoms of drug and alcohol abuse
	B. School District's Anti-Drug Policy
	1. Purpose and scope
	2. Opportunities for help (employee assistance)
	3. Prohibited substance
	4. Prohibited behaviors/standards or conduct
	5. Consequences of policy violation
	6. Circumstances requiring drug testing (pre-employment, reasonable cause, etc.)
	7. Overview of the specimen collection process
	8. Overview of laboratory testing techniques and validity.
	C. The Drugs Of Abuse (Brief Overview Of Signs And Symptoms of Use and Effects on the Individual And The Workplace)
	1. Depressants (alcohol, barbiturates, sedatives, tranquilizers, antihistamines)
	2. Stimulants (cocaine, amphetamines, and pseudoamphetamines)
	3. Narcotics (heroin, codeine, morphine, Demerol, Percodan, Dilaudid)

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

4. Hallucinogens (LSD, mescaline)
5. PCP (phencyclidine, angel dust)
6. Marijuana

D. Return To Duty And Re-Entry Contracts

1. After voluntary admission of use
2. After a positive drug test result
3. After a performance-based intervention

E. Sources And Resources For Help (EAP, Assessment, Referral, Treatment, Follow-Up)

<u>Drug Detection Periods</u>

Approximate Guidelines

Amphetamines	2-4 days
Barbiturates	3 days – Phenobarbital-2 weeks or longer
Benzodiazepines	Up to 2 weeks
Cannabinoids	Infrequent user: up to 10 days Chronic user: 30 days or longer
Cocaine Metabolite	2-3 days
Methaqualone	Up to 14 days
Opiates	2-3 days
Phencyclidine	3-8 days
Alcohol	Several hours

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	Please note: Guidelines Should Not Be Applied To Any Individual. DRUG EDUCATION GUIDE Seven (7) possible symptoms of drug involvement: 1. change in school or work attendance or performance; 2. alteration of personal appearance; 3. mood swings or attitude changes; 4. withdrawal from responsibilities/family contacts; 5. association with drug-using peers; 6. unusual patterns of behavior; and/or 7. defensive attitude concerning drugs. **ALCOHOL (BEER, WINE, LIQUOR)** PHYSICAL SYMPTOMS: intoxication, slurred speech, unsteady walk, relaxation, relaxed inhibition, impaired coordination, slowed reflexes LOOK FOR: smell of alcohol on clothes or breath, intoxicated behavior, hangover, glazed eyes DANGERS: addiction, incidents as result of impaired ability and judgement, overdose when mixed with other depressants, heart and liver damage **COCAINE (COKE, ROCK, CRACK, BASE)** PHYSICAL SYMPTOMS: brief intense euphoria, elevated blood pressure and heart rate, restlessness, excitement feeling of well-being followed by depression

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	LOOK-FOR: glass vials, glass pipe, white crystalline powder, razor blades, syringes, needle marks DANGERS: addiction, heart attack, seizures, lung damage, severe depression, paranoia (see stimulants) **MARIJUANA (POT, DOPE, GRASS, WEED, HERB, HASH, JOINT)** PHYSICAL SYMPTOMS: altered perceptions, red eyes, dry mouth, reduced concentration and coordination, euphoria, laughing, hunger LOOK FOR: rolling papers, pipes, dried plant material, odor of burnt hemp rope, roach clips DANGERS: panic reaction, impaired short term memory, addiction **HALLUCINOGENS, (ACID, LSD, PCP, MDMA, ECSTASY, PSILOCYBIN MUSHROOMS, PEYOTE** PHYSICAL SYMPTOMS: altered mood and perceptions, focus on detail, anxiety, panic, nausea, synaesthesia (ex: smell colors, see sounds) LOOK FOR: capsules, tablets, “microdots”, blotter squares DANGERS: unpredictable behavior, emotional instability, violent behavior (with PCP) **INHALANTS-GAS, AEROSOLS, GLUE, NITRATES, RUSH, WHITE-OUT** PHYSICAL SYMPTOMS: nausea, dizziness, headaches, lack of coordination and control)

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	LOOK FOR: odor of substance on clothing and breath, intoxication, drowsiness, poor muscular control DANGERS: unconsciousness, suffocation, nausea and vomiting, damage to brain and central nervous system, sudden death **NARCOTICS-HEROIN (JUNK, DOPE, BLACK TAR, CHINA WHITE) – DEMEROL, DILAUDID (D'S), MORPHINE, CODEINE** PHYSICAL SYMPTOMS: euphoria, drowsiness, insensitivity to pain, nausea, vomiting, watery eyes, runny nose (see depressants) LOOK FOR: needle marks on arms, needles, syringe, spoons, pinpoint pupils, cold moist skin DANGERS: addiction, lethargy, weight loss, contamination from unsterile needles (hepatitis, AIDS), accidental overdoes **STIMULANTS (SPEED, UPPERS, CRANK, BAM, BLACK BEAUTIES, CRYSTAL, DEXIES, CAFFEINE, NICOTINE, COCAINE, AMPHETAMINES** PHYSICAL SYMPTOMS: alertness, talkativeness, wakefulness, increased blood pressure, loss of appetite, mood elevation LOOK FOR: pills and capsules, loss of sleep and appetite, irritability or anxiety, weight loss, hyperactivity DANGERS: fatigue leading to exhaustion, addiction, paranoia, depression, confusion, possible hallucinations

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	DEPRESSANTS – BARBITURATES, SEDATIVES, TRANQUILIZERS, (DOWNERS, TRANKS, LUDES, REDS, VALIUM, YELLOW JACKETS, ALCOHOL PHYSICAL SYMPTOMS: depressed breathing and heartbeat, intoxication, drowsiness, uncoordinated movements. LOOK FOR: capsules and pills, confused behavior, longer periods of sleep, slurred speech DANGERS: possible overdose, especially in combination with drugs; muscle rigidity, addition, withdrawal and overdose require medical treatment. **702 KAR 5:100 – Handicapped, Reimbursement For** This regulation establishes the terms under which school districts will receive a weighted amount in their state allotment to help defray the added cost of providing special transportation for special needs students. **702 KAR 5:110 – Vocational Pupils, Reimbursement For** This regulation outlines the terms under which the state reimburses the local districts for the transportation of vocational students. **702 KAR 5:120 – Blind and Deaf Pupils, Reimbursement For** The purpose of this regulation is to provide for the administration of a grant program for the purpose of providing home-to-school transportation for pupils enrolled at the Kentucky School for the Blind in

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	Louisville and the Kentucky School for the Deaf in Danville. **NOTE:** In the previous sections (702 KAR 5:010 to 5:120, plus 5:150), we have tried to reference those State laws and regulations that most directly relate to a school bus driver. There are many other laws, especially traffic laws, that you should know and obey, along with those rules and policies adopted by each board of education. **702 KAR 5:130 – Vehicles Designed for Nine (9) Passengers or Less, Standards For** Section 1. For the purpose of this regulation, the word "vehicle" shall mean any vehicle owned by a school district board or contracted to the board which is significantly used to transport pupils to and from school and which is designed by the manufacturer to carry fewer than ten (10) passengers. Section 2. (1) A vehicle may be used for the transportation of pupils: a) From areas not accessible by a regular school bus to the nearest road available for the safe transfer of pupils to a regular school bus or vice versa:

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

b) For emergency transportation of students;

c) For approved school activities; or

d) For qualified special needs pupils.

(2) A vehicle driver shall be a school district employee or a person contracted by the district.

Section 3.

A vehicle shall not be used to carry more pupils than the manufacture's designed passenger capacity for that particular vehicle.

Section 4.

A vehicle shall have occupant restraint systems equal in number to the manufacturer's designed passenger capacity and installed in accordance with the original equipment manufacturer's specifications.

Section 5.

Liability or indemnity insurance shall be purchased for each vehicle. The coverage limits shall be at least these amounts:

Bodily injury/property damage	$1,000,000 per occurrence combined or $250,000/$1,000,000 split
Uninsured/underinsured Motorist coverage	$500,000
"No fault" coverage	20,000 per passenger

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	Section 6. Before a vehicle is initially used to transport pupils, a safety inspection shall be made on the vehicle by an approved school bus inspector to certify the vehicle is in safe operating condition. If the vehicle is found to be in unsafe operating condition, it shall not be used to transport pupils until necessary repairs are made. Section 7. Each vehicle shall be inspected at least once each month that the vehicle is used to transport pupils, utilizing the same criteria for inspection as for school buses on the "Preventative Management Inspection" Form as found in the "Pupil Transportation Management Manual. Section 8. If being used to transport pupils, a vehicle shall display a sign in clear view in the rear of the vehicle stating: "THIS VEHICLE IS BEING USED TO TRANSPORT SCHOOL CHILDREN. Section 9. Incorporated by Reference. (1) "Pupil Transportation Management Manual", is incorporated by reference.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	(2) This material may be inspected, copied, or obtained, subject to applicable copyright law, at the Office of District Support Services, Department of Education, 15th Floor, Capital Plaza Tower, 500 Mero Street, Frankfort, Kentucky, Monday through Friday 8 a.m. to 4:30 p.m.
	702 KAR 5:150 – Transportation of Pre-School Children
	Section 1.
	Local boards of education shall require each school bus transporting three (3) and four (4) year old children to be staffed with a minimum of one (1) driver assistant who is qualified and trained to assist in the transportation of three (3) and four (4) year old children by a certified local board of education school bus driver training instructor. The driver training instructor shall qualify the driver assistants with training in student entrance of bus, student egress from bus, safety rules of transportation, first aid as it pertains to emergency and immediate care, emergency evacuation and student management as it relates to seated positions and seat occupancy. The Pupil Transportation Branch shall provide the curriculum for driver assistant training. The number of assistants required for any one (1) school bus shall be recommended to the

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	superintendent by the driver training instructor. Liability insurance shall be provided for the driver assistant as a named insured. A driver assistant shall be selected who has personal attributes and indicators, which show the individual's ability to handle preschool-aged children. Section 2. It shall be the responsibility of the parent, guardian, or person authorized by the parent of a preschool child to provide safe supervision to and from the bus stop and delivery to and receipt from the driver assistant. Section 3 The driver assistant shall be responsible to deliver and receive the child safely to and from the parent, guardian or person authorized by the parent. Three (3) and four (4) year old children who must cross a roadway shall be escorted by the driver assistant. 1. No three (3) or four (4) year old child shall be left unattended at the time of delivery. 2. If the parent, guardian or a person authorized by the parent to accept the child is not present upon delivery, the child shall be taken to a prearranged location.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	3. If anyone other than the authorized person is to receive the child, such arrangements shall be made by the parent or guardian by prior written permission.

7/02

NAME: _____DATE:_____

KENTUCKY LAWS AND REGULATIONS GOVERNING SCHOOL BUS DRIVERS TEST

**** PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

1. _____ School bus drivers must obey all Kentucky Laws unless superceded by a state regulation.

2. _____ A law is a rule of conduct that has been enacted by the Kentucky State Police.

3. _____ A regulation is an aid in carrying out the law.

4. _____ The Division of Pupil Transportation adopts rules and regulations governing pupil transportation.

5. _____ Local school districts do not receive money for pupil transportation from the state, it is all district-supported the local tax base.

6. _____ All local boards of education in Kentucky are required to provide pupil transportation.

7. _____ Local boards of education are required to provide liability and indemnity insurance for school buses.

8. _____ All school sponsored trips must be chaperoned by a school faculty or staff member.

9. _____ All school buses must have folding stop signs.

10. _____ All traffic must stop for school buses loading and unloading students on a two-lane highway.

11. _____ The Kentucky Board of Education governs the design and operation of school buses.

12. _____ The Division of Pupil Transportation establishes guidelines and procedures for school bus specifications and purchasing.

13. _____ School buses are not required to stop at all railroad crossings at grade level.

14. _____ The Division of Pupil Transportation helps local districts provide economy in operation.

15. _____ Each local superintendent is responsible for school bus inspections and reporting these monthly to the State.

16. _____ Local superintendents are required to provide training for bus drivers.

17. _____ All bus drivers are required to have on-the-road training.

18. _____ Local boards of education are not required to provide written contracts for all bus drivers.

19. _____ Local boards of education are required to make provisions for the mechanical maintenance for their districts' school buses.

20. _____ Local boards are not required to provide safety instruction for pupils riding buses, however it is recommended.

21. _____ All bus drivers are required to pass an annual physical examination.

22. _____ Each school principal is required to provide supervision and discipline relating to pupils riding buses.

23. _____ Bus drivers must report serious discipline problems to the principal.

24. _____ Students may carry firearms on a school bus if they are licensed to carry such.

25. _____ Principals are required to provide bus drivers with student rider names and addresses.

26. _____ A Kentucky public school bus driver must be eighteen (18) years old.

27. _____ A school bus driver must have the ability to recognize the colors of traffic signals.

28. _____ A school bus driver must have a current Kentucky driver license.

29. _____ Substitute bus drivers are not required to meet the same standards as regular drivers.

30. _____ A school bus driver must supervise the seating of students on the bus.

31. _____ Students riding a school bus cannot stand in the step-well or landing area of the bus.

32. _____ School bus drivers who wear hearing aids, must have a spare battery with them when operating the bus.

33. _____ In general, a student may bring a dog to school on the bus if the animal is to be used for class on that particular day.

34. _____ The driver is required to signal pupils that do not cross the roadway to board the bus.

35. _____ The driver is required to signal pupils that must cross the roadway to board the bus.

36. _____ The bus warning lights must be activated before the bus stops.

37. _____ A school bus may be filled with fuel while students are on the bus on extracurricular trips only.

38. _____ A bus driver may order a pupil off the bus.

39 _____ A school bus stop signal may be used at times other than when pupils get on and off the bus if it is an emergency situation.

40. _____ Each school bus driver is required to make a pre-trip inspection of his/her bus.

41. _____ All school bus drivers may drive over 55 miles per hours on interstates and intrastates only.

42. _____ A school bus driver must wear his/her seat belt at all times.

43. _____ Pupils must wait for a school bus at an assigned area.

44. _____ Pupils who must cross the road must do so in front of the bus.

45. _____ Pupils must remain seated while the bus in motion.

46. _____ Pupils may extend only their hands out of the bus windows when the bus is not moving.

47. _____ Handicapped students may ride regular school buses.

48. _____ Pupils that attend vocational school may not ride local district school buses.

49. _____ Pupils that are blind and deaf can ride a school bus in Kentucky.

50. _____ A bus driver does not have to follow the local board adopted policies on transportation if the situation calls for other action.

INSTRUCTOR'S SIGNATURE _____DATE: _____

KENTUCKY LAWS AND REGULATIONS GOVERNING SCHOOL BUS DRIVERS TEST

ANSWER KEY

The answer key is only released to KDE endorsed trainers.

CHAPTER 4

CARE AND MAINTENANCE

CARE AND MAINTENANCE

LESSON TOPIC

CARE AND MAINTENANCE

OBJECTIVES:

- The bus driver will be able to describe basic bus components.
- The bus driver will be able to detect symptoms of possible trouble.
- The bus driver will be able to identify driving actions which prevent undue wear on the bus.
- The bus driver will be able to identify interior and exterior maintenance tasks.
- The bus driver will be able to perform a pre-trip inspection of a bus.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	OVERVIEW – SECTION I Preventative maintenance is the care of a vehicle to ensure safety, dependability and maximum life of the vehicle. It involves organized inspections at regular mileage or time intervals and immediate attention to all reported defects. These inspections involve checking, cleaning, tightening, lubricating and adjusting parts and units. Inspections are the simplest and most economical means of protecting the bus fleet and are the key to a good preventative maintenance program. A trained mechanic will carry out the inspection program, but the school bus driver is in a position to observe a bus's performance under all conditions. Defects should be recognized and immediately reported to the maintenance department. Trouble should not be diagnosed. Brief explanations of the following basic bus components will be provided. 1. braking system 2. engine 3. transmission and drive-shaft 4. clutch 5. steering 6. electrical system 7. suspension 8. tires

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
DISCUSS EACH COMPONENT BRIEFLY. AVOID LONG, TECHNICAL EXPLANATIONS. COMPLETE COMPREHENSION OF MECHANICAL OPERATION IS NOT THE PURPOSE HERE. PROVIDE LINE DRAWINGS OF EACH PART AND SHOW THE FLOW OF THE PROCESS FROM IGNITION TO BUS MOTION.	As an instructor you should discuss how each bus component works. **SCHOOL BUS COMPONENTS** A driver should have a basic knowledge of school bus components to understand their effect on the operation of the school bus. There will be times when this knowledge will be useful in adjusting their driving performance and in detecting trouble while on the route. Proper driving habits will increase bus efficiency and economy of operation as well as prolong the life of the bus. **BRAKING SYSTEM** • Hydraulic • Vacuum-Hydraulic • Air Pressing on the brake pedal forces fluid or air into the brake cylinder or air chamber, the s-cam OR the cylinder moves the brake drum shoes outward against the brake drum (inner surface of metal wheel). This creates friction causing the wheel to slow and stop. **DIESEL ENGINE** • Fuel injector • Combustion Chambers • Pistons • Crankshaft Takes fuel in fuel tank, injects it into the cylinder where it mixes with air into combustion chamber where it is ignited by compression. The exploding mixture causes

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	pistons to move, which turns the crankshaft. The rotating crankshaft connects the final power from the engine to the transmission, carrying the power to the drive-shaft; the differential, the rear-end and the rear wheels. **TRANSMISSION AND DRIVESHAFT** Gears allow you to change the ratio of number of engine revolutions to number of wheel revolutions. For example, in low gear, the engine might turn 100 times for one wheel turn. In a higher gear, the engine might turn 10 times for one wheel turn. The drive-shaft connects the transmission to the rear wheels, making them turn. **CLUTCH** When depressed, disconnects engine from transmission, allowing changing of transmission gears. **STEERING** Steering wheel and column connect to gears and linkage mechanism which change direction of front wheels. **ELECTRICAL SYSTEM** Supplies power for primary engine functions and auxiliary functions. • Primary Engine Function Power generation and storage (battery, generator/alternator and voltage regulator). Power distributions (engine wiring).

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

- Auxiliary Functions

Inside/outside lighting (headlights, amber/red flashing warning lights, turn signals, instrument panel lights, etc.). Air/heat circulation (heater, defroster, blowers). Horn.

SUSPENSION

Leaf springs and mounted shock absorbers which enable the driver to handle the bus properly on rough terrain and sharp curves, etc.

TIRE CONSERVATION AND SAFETY

Check tires for cuts, bruises, uneven wear and air pressure. The following will improve tire life and vehicle safety:

1. Reduce mileage. Use the bus only on scheduled trips and avoid unnecessary driving.
2. Drive at low speeds.
    a. Tires will wear twice as long at 30 mph compared to 50 mph.
    b. High speed harms tires more in hot weather than in cold. Tires wear six times faster at 100 degrees than at 40 degrees.
    c. Drive slowly, especially on roads with sharp, projecting stones.
    d. Drive slowly on curves and turn slowly. Speeding around curves multiplies tire wear.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	3. Maintain tire pressure at the level recommended by the tire manufacturer. a. Slight under-inflation increases tire wear. Six pounds under inflation for a tire which should carry 30 pounds of pressure will cut the life of the tire at least 20 percent. b. Learn what the pressure should be and check all tires, including spare, once a week. Keep valve cap screwed on tightly. 4. Avoid rocks, holes, curbs, glass and other objects. a. Anything which produces a sudden sharp bend in the casing is likely to break cords within the tire; other cords break around the weak spot and the tire will fail as a result. b. Cuts or bruises in the side wall will shorten tire life. 5. Make a DAILY inspection. a. Inspect tires daily for cuts, snags, bruises, nails, glass and gravel. b. Water and grit get in at flaws and destroy interior cord structure. 6. Avoid jumping starts and screeching stops. They scuff off tire tread. One ten-foot skid takes many miles off tire life. 7. Keep brakes adjusted so tires evenly brake.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	8. Keep oil and grease off of the tires since they cause rubber to deteriorate.
HAVE TRAINEES VOLUNTEER ANSWERS. PROVIDE FEEDBACK.	Answer these questions:
1. TRANSMISSION	1. Which bus components is made up of a system of gears.
2. SUSPENSION	2. Which component is responsible for the way the bus handles and rides on rough terrain and in sharp curves?
3. BRAKES	3. Which bus component works on fluid or air pressure?
4. CLUTCH	4. Which component disconnects the engine from the transmission so you can change gears?
ANSWER ANY QUESTIONS THE TRAINEES ASK. LEAD DISCUSSION.	**DETECTING SYMPTOMS OF POSSIBLE TROUBLE**
EMPHASIZE: LISTENING FEELING LOOKING SMELLING	Be alert for symptoms of problems. Use your senses to detect signs of possible trouble. **LISTENING FOR TROUBLE** a. Sharp knock when picking up speed or light knock when engine is idling. b. Dull regular knock, clicking or tapping noises. c. Continuous or intermittent squeal or squeak. d. Loud exhaust noise. e. Engine backfiring, missing, popping, spitting or overheating. f. Steaming or hissing.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	FEELING FOR TROUBLE a. Excessive vibration in: o engine compartment, o steering wheel, and/or o drive line. b. Low speed or high speed shimmy. c. Hard steering and/or steering wander. **LOOKING FOR TROUBLE** a. Sudden drop in oil pressure. b. Low oil pressure. c. No oil pressure. **NOTE:** IF ANY OF THE ABOVE EXIST, THE VEHICLE SHALL NOT BE DRIVEN UNTIL THE PROBLEM IS CORRECTED. d. Excessive oil consumption. e. Smoke coming from under the dash. f. Smoke coming from under the hood. g. Scuffed tires or spotty wear. h. High temperature reading. i. Drop in air pressure **SMELLING FOR TROUBLE** a. Odor of diesel fuel. b. Odor of burning rubber. d. Odor of burning oil. e. Hot/burning electrical smell. f. Exhaust fumes.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
OPTION: YOU MAY WANT TO HAVE ONE OF YOUR BUS MECHANICS ON HAND TO ANSWER QUESTIONS. THE INTENT HERE IS A BASIC KNOWLEDGE OF THE BUS OPERATIONS SO TRAINEES CAN SPOT TROUBLE EARLY. DO NOT LEAD THEM TO BELIEVE THEY ARE BEING TRAINED TO BE MECHANICS. DESCRIBE IN DETAIL YOUR LOCAL PROCEDURE FOR REPORTING ANY OF THESE SYMPTOMS. PROVIDE YOUR OWN FORMS THAT DRIVERS ARE TO USE. EXPLAIN HOW TO FILL THEM OUT. STRESS THAT ANYTHING THEY NOTICE THAT IS OUT OF THE ORDINARY SHOULD BE REPORTED. THERE IS DANGER IN THINKING THAT AN UNUSUAL NOISE, ETC., IS NOTHING TO WORRY ABOUT, ESPECIALLY IF A DRIVER HAS MECHANICAL EXPERIENCE. STRESS THAT THEY DON'T NEED TO KNOW WHAT IS WRONG BEFORE THEY REPORT SOMETHING "SUSPICIOUS." IT IS BETTER TO REPORT ANY UNUSUAL CONDITION, EVEN IF IT TURNS OUT TO BE MINOR, THAN TO NOT REPORT SOMETHING THAT COULD BE DANGEROUS AND/OR COSTLY.	✓ **NOTE;** ANY OTHER UNUSUAL CONDITIONS SHOULD BE REPORTED IMMEDIATELY TO THE PROPER AUTHORITY. Now that you are familiar with the basic components of a school bus and we have discussed being alert for signs of possible problems, let's look at each component and discuss specific signs of trouble. **PREVENTING PROBLEMS BY DETECTING TROUBLE EARLY** **1. BRAKING SYSTEM – EARLY SIGNS OF TROUBLE** a. Drop in air pressure (air brakes only). b. More than one inch play in slack adjusters. c. Low brake pedal (hydraulic or vacuum-hydraulic brakes). d. Spongy or soft brake (hydraulic or vacuum-hydraulic brakes). e. Smell or see brake fluid (hydraulic or vacuum-hydraulic brakes). f. Brake drum very hot (all types). **2. ENGINE – EARLY SIGNS OF TROUBLE** a. Engine miss at low speed. b. Engine miss at high speed. c. Ping when accelerated. d. Dull "clunk" at idle.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	e. Sharp, loud knocking; **<u>SHUT OFF ENGINE IMMEDIATELY.</u>** f. Heat gauge indicates temperature rising higher than normal. g. Oil pressure dropping below normal; h. Engine stalls or runs sluggishly. **3. TRANSMISSION AND DRIVESHAFT – EARLY SIGNS OF TROUBLE** a. Hard shifting. b. Slipping out of gear. c. Clunk or jerk when power is applied or released. d. Unusual sounds when power is applied.
	4. CLUTCH – EARLY SIGNS OF TROUBLE a. Motor revving with clutch engaged and vehicle in gear and moving. b. Odor of burning clutch lining. c. Gear clash. d. Squealing sound when clutch pedal depressed, with engine running. e. Clutch “chattering.”
	5. AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION AND DRIVESHAFT – EARLY SIGNS OF TROUBLE a. Leaks. b. Slipping or loss of power.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	c. Jerk or clunk when shifting up or down. d. Fails to shift. **6. STEERING – EARLY SIGNS OF TROUBLE** a. Steering very difficult. b. Wheels shimmy. c. Bus veers one way or the other. d. Bus wanders on roadway. e. More than two inches (2”) free play in steering wheel with engine running.
	7. ELECTRICAL SYSTEM – EARLY SIGNS OF TROUBLE a. Voltmeter indicates an under or over charge: **<u>WATCH OUT FOR FIRE.</u>** b. Smoke appearing around wires, switches, etc. c. Voltmeter indicates heavy charging. d. Lights dim. **8. SUSPENSION – EARLY SIGNS OF TROUBLE** a. Bus bounces or rolls from side to side easily. b. Bus out of alignment. c. Bus “bottoms” on bumps.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
EXPLAIN THE REASON FOR GOOD DRIVING HABITS. AVOID LONG, TECHNICAL EXPLANATIONS. FOR EXAMPLE, YOU MIGHT DESCRIBE THE WEARING ACTION ON THE DISC WHEN A DRIVER "SLIPS THE CLUTCH." OPTION: IF YOU HAVE ACCESS TO ACTUAL WORN BRAKE SHOES, CLUTCH PLACE, ETC., PASS THEM AROUND FOR EXAMINATION BY THE CLASS.	**DRIVING ACTION PREVENTING WEAR ON THE BUS.** You can develop good driving habits that will avoid undue wear on each specific bus component. **BRAKES** o Do not jam brakes on hard. Apply them smoothly and steadily. o Do not depress clutch until engine stall speed is reached so engine can assist in stopping the bus. o Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. o On buses equipped with air brakes, drain water out of air reservoir (if board policy permits). o Pump the brakes (once or twice) on long hard stops. Before starting down hill, shift to lower gear to aid heat dissipation and reduce brake fade. If air brake equipped, check gauges; should be capped off at 120-125 PSI. Before starting downhill, place bus in proper gear. If low air pressure alarm comes on, pull over to side of road, secure vehicle and do not move until air pressure is up to safe level. o **REMEMBER:** The use of brakes on a long and/or steep downgrade is only a supplement to the braking effect of the engine. Once the vehicle is in the proper gear, the following is a proper braking technique:

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	1. Apply the brakes just hard enough to feel a definite slowdown. 2. When your speed has been reduced to approximately five (5) mph below your "safe" speed, release the brakes. This brake application should last for about three (3) seconds. 3. When your speed has increased to your "safe" speed, repeat steps 1 and 2. **FOR EXAMPLE:** If your "safe" speed is 40 mph, you would not apply the brakes until your speed reaches 40 mph. You now apply the brakes hard enough to gradually reduce your speed to 35 mph and then release the brakes. Repeat this as often as necessary until you have reached the end of the downgrade. Escape ramps have been built on many steep mountain downgrades. Escape ramps are made to stop runaway vehicles safely without injuring drivers and passengers. Escape ramps use a long bed of loose soft material to slow a runaway vehicle, sometimes in combination with an upgrade. Know escape ramp locations on your route. Signs show drivers where ramps are located. Escape ramps save lives, equipment and cargo. Use them if you lose your brakes.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
EXPLAIN WHAT IS MEANT BY "LUGGING" – FOR EXAMPLE, TRYING TO GO UP A HILL IN TOO HIGH A GEAR WHICH CAUSES A STRAIN ON THE ENGINE.	**ENGINE** o Do not race engine during warm-up. o Do not speed at any time. o Do not lug engine; this causes engine and driveline damage. o Do not allow engine to operate beyond established oil changes and maintenance intervals. o Do not accelerate too quickly; this causes extreme stress during periods when oil pressure is low and results in excessive wear. o Do not attempt to operate engine when oil pressure is low, temperature is high, or voltmeter indicates a continuous discharge. o Do not add water to overheated engine. o Never remove a radiator cap on a hot engine. o Allow diesel engine to idle according to manufacturer's recommendations before shutting off engine. **TRANSMISSION AND DRIVESHAFT** o Avoid fast acceleration on rough surfaces. o Do not release the clutch quickly. o Transmit power and shift smoothly (coordination). o Avoid jerky movements of any kind.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
EXPLAIN WHAT "RIDING THE CLUTCH" MEANS, FOR EXAMPLE, KEEPING FOOT ON CLUTCH PEDAL AND LEAVING PEDAL PART WAY DEPRESSED WHEN NOT SHIFTING GEARS. EXPLAIN WHAT IS MEANT BY "SLIPPING THE CLUTCH," FOR EXAMPLE, KEEPING THE CLUTCH PARTIALLY ENGAGED WITH THE ACCELERATOR ALSO PARTIALLY DEPRESSED TO THE POINT WHERE THE BUS CAN HOLD ON THE HILL WITHOUT THE USE OF THE BRAKE PEDAL.	**CLUTCH** o Don't "ride" the clutch. It partially disengages the clutch causing excess heat or wear. o Don't upshift at low engine speed. o Permit engine to speed up enough in one gear so that when the shift is made to the next gear, the engine won't lug. o Do not skip gears when upshifting or downshifting. This causes undue engine lugging and shock-loading of clutch and driveline. o Do not coast with the clutch disengaged. The clutch disc will spin at a very high speed and may disintegrate. o Do not hold the bus on a hill by slipping the clutch. This wears out a clutch. Use the park brake to hold the bus on a hill. Adjust shifting speeds to accommodate load and terrain. **STEERING** o Avoid potholes; drive around if possible. Slow down if you must drive through. o Have mechanic inspect steering if you hit a bad bump or pothole.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

- Do not drive when voltmeter indicates discharge.
- Do not start engine with lights or heaters on.
- Check belt tension and battery water level.
- Do not operate heaters and lights for an extended period when bus or engine is stopped.
- Do not run lights and/or heaters for a prolonged period of time with engine at idle.

SUSPENSION

- Do not travel fast on rough roads.
- Do not cross rough areas at high speeds.
- Check wheel alignment if the bus is on a rough road frequently.

Bus cleanliness is part of proper maintenance. A clean bus will:

1. safeguard student health;
2. prevent incidents caused by students falling, tripping or slipping on the floor;
3. serve as a role model for students (enlist student cooperation in keeping the bus neat and clean; do not allow eating or drinking on the bus);
4. give the public a favorable impression; and
5. help prolong the life of the bus.

Regardless of the engineering involved, a school bus cannot continue to deliver maximum safety, economy and dependability unless it is properly maintained. Although skilled mechanics repair the school buses, a driver can do

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	much to aid the mechanic and prolong the life of the vehicle by following the guidelines in this manual.
ANSWER THE QUESTIONS TRAINEES MAY HAVE ABOUT MAINTENANCE TASKS. DEMONSTRATE ANY OF THE UNFAMILIAR MAINTENANCE TASKS.	**OVERVIEW – SECTION II** Daily and weekly inspections will help the driver identify problems for repair and maintain a clean and safe bus. Regular inspections will help decrease maintenance costs. The pre-trip inspection shall be part of a driver's daily routine. The few minutes invested in the pre-trip inspection could result in the saving of lives or avoid an on-the-road breakdown or collision. **DAILY GENERAL INSPECTION** 1. Check the bus for forgotten books, clothing **and students**. Return items to owners on the next trip or turn them into the office. 2. Sweep the floor and, in the winter, sweep water out of the bus to prevent freezing. Sweep bus steps also. 3. Check bus seats for pencil/pen marks or other damage. 4. Check adjustment of mirrors, driver's seat and vents. 5. Check fuel tank gauge. 6. Follow procedure for frequency of filling fuel tank. 7. Clean the windshield and side windows.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

8. Wash exterior of bus at regular intervals. Keep all exterior lights, mirrors and the license plate clean.
9. Check outside of the bus for dents and scratches.

DAILY PRE-TRIP AND WALK AROUND INSPECTION

All bus drivers are to perform a complete pre-trip inspection that meets federal and state regulations before the first trip on each and every bus they drive that day. After the initial pre-trip inspection, all subsequent bus runs that day (on the same bus) are to be preceded by a walk-around inspection that will consist of checking:

1. steering
2. tires
3. console
4. dash panel
5. mirrors
6. service brake
7. park brake
8. emergency equipment

SECTION 1

1. As you approach the vehicle, check the posture of the bus. Make sure it is not leaning to either side and there are no obstacles, such as wires or tree limbs in the path of the bus. Look under the front of the bus to check for oil, transmission fluid, water or anti-freeze leaks, check crossing gate, if equipped.
2. Check front lights, lens covers and reflectors. Make sure they are mounted and secure. Check west coast, fender and crossover mirrors.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	3. Check the windshield for anything that may obstruct your view. Check wipers to make sure the rubber is mounted and secure. Check spring tension on wipers. 4. Open hood latches; each latch must be mounted and secure. Visually inspect the hood for damage. 5. Check engine oil, automatic transmission fluid, if so equipped and windshield washer fluid. 6. Inspect the engine, one side at a time. Check power steering fluid, hoses and belts. Make sure everything is mounted and secure, no leaks and no more than ¾" play in the belts. Check steering shaft, steering box and steering linkage for securement. 7. Check radiator reservoirs for leaks and sufficient fluid level. Check radiator and heater hoses. Check water pump (which is located on the front of the engine, behind the fan) for leaks. Check that belts have no more than ¾" of play. 8. Check air compressor for leaks and securement. Check belts (if equipped) to compressor for frays or cracks and that there is no more than ¾" play. 9. Check alternator and wires. Make sure it is securely mounted with no more than ¾" play in belts.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	SECTION 2 10. Check leaf springs for broken or missing parts. Check hanger brackets and mounts for securement. Check shocks for leaks. **SECTION 3** 11. Check front air line and front air chambers for damage, leaks and securement. Pull on the slack adjuster; no more than 1” play. Check that cotter pin is mounted and secure. Check front drums for oil soaking, cracks, welds or rust. You may not be able to check brake linings if drums have dust covers. **SECTION 4** 12. Inspect front tires for cuts and bruises. Make sure tread depth in major grooves is at least 4/32”. Check for mismatched, recapped or regrooved tires on front. Look down the front of the tire, checking for cuts and bruises. Check rims for cracks, rust or welds. Check air pressure. Make sure lug nuts are tight and there is no heavy rust, missing lug nuts or leaks in hub oil seals. Check air valves and valve stems for leaks.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	SECTION 5 13. Move to the front door. As you enter the bus, open and close the door. Check the glass and rubber seal on the door. Check for broken steps or torn coverings. Make sure hand rails are securely mounted and that pinch points have been eliminated. **SECTION 6** 14. Check fire extinguisher. Make sure it is charged. Check the first-aid kit. Check for spare fuses. Check for three (3) reflective triangles and body fluid clean-up kit. **SECTION 7** 15. Make sure parking brake is on and gearshift is in neutral. Start engine. Allow air pressure to build to 120 PSI. Check all gauges; oil pressure, air, voltage, water temperature, fuel gauge. Test window washer and wipers (high and low). Check mirrors for proper adjustment. Test all heaters (high and low), defrosters and fans. Check dome lights, stop arm and override switch. Check front big yellow lights, and amber indicator light, headlights, flashing red stop lights and red indicator light, stop arm, crossing gate, turn signals and four-way hazards. Check for no more than 2” play in 20” steering wheel. Check park brake. With park brake on, place vehicle in low

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	gear. Raise engine RPM to 1500 (if bus moves, brakes are out of adjustment). Check service brake for air usage per application. On a straight shift air brake equipped bus, place in low gear, release clutch and lightly accelerate with park brake applied. If bus moves, brakes are out of adjustment. Allow hydraulic brake equipped park brake vehicle to slowly roll forward, apply park brake, vehicle should stop. Check horn, driver seat and seat belt. **SECTION 8** 16. Chock rear wheels. Turn **OFF** engine. Turn key on. Push in parking brake. Start your brake LAB check. o LEAKS - No brakes applied, should not leak more than 2 PSI per minute. Press on brake pedal for one minute. It should not leak more than 3 PSI per minute. o ALARM – Pump brakes. Alarm should come on at 65 to 60 PSI. o BUTTON – Continue pumping brake. Button should pop out between 40 and 10 PSI.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	SECTION 9 17. Start engine and build air to 120 PSI; shut engine off but leave key on. Walk through bus checking floors and seat backs. Open and check ALL alarms on emergency windows, roof hatches, left side emergency door, if equipped, and rear door. Big yellow lights should be checked from the back door. Go outside and check all of your lights. Turn signals, hazards, head lights, parking lights, clearance lights, brake lights, marker lights, warning lights and big reds should all be tested. You cannot check back-up lights unless it is dark, because gear needs to be in reverse and the engine on. **SECTION 10** 18. Check down right side. No leaks in fuel lines or tank. Check fuel cap, fuel tank and cage for securement. Visually inspect exhaust system, drive shaft and shaft guards, frame, slack adjusters, air chambers, air lines, drums, shocks, leaf springs, mounts and air ride, if equipped. Check windows, reflectors and clearance lights. Visually check rims for cracks, rust or welds; axle seals, inside and outside and spacers. Inspect lug nuts and valve stems. You may not be able to check the drums or brake linings because of dust

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	cover. Visually look for leaks, metal shavings or damage. Check rear shocks and air ride, if equipped. Check rear tires (tread depth in rear 2/32”) and check tires for proper inflation.
	SECTION 11
	19. Go to the rear of bus. Check lights, reflectors and rear glass. Open and check rubber seal around door. Check that license plate is securely mounted. Check all lens covers. Make sure everything is mounted and secure.
	SECTION 12
	20. On lift bus check wheelchair lift, door, tie downs and floor tracks. Check for “Knife for Life” and fire blanket.
	SECTION 13
	21. Check service brakes.

DAILY PRE-TRIP INSPECTION AND FOLLOW-UP WALK AROUND INSPECTION

FOR USE AS A SEQUENTIAL GUIDE WHEN TEACHING NEW DRIVERS

All bus drivers shall perform a complete pre-trip inspection that meets Federal and state regulations before the first trip each day and every bus they drive that day. After the initial pre-trip inspection, all subsequent bus runs on that day shall be preceded by a walk-around inspection that will consist of: (1) tires; (2) brakes; (3) console panel; (4) dashboard gauges and controls.

1. As you approach the vehicle, check the posture of the bus. It is not leaning to either side and there are no wires or tree limbs in the path of the bus. Look under the front of the bus; check for oil, transmission fluid, water and/or anti-freeze leaks.

   Check front lights, lens covers and reflectors. Make sure they are mounted and secure. Check crossing gate, if equipped. Check west coast (Double Nickel), fender and crossover mirrors.

   Check the windshield for anything that may obstruct your view. Check wipers and make sure the rubber is mounted and secure. Also check spring tension on wipers.

   Check hood latch; each latch must be mounted and secure. Visually inspect the hood for damage.

   Check engine oil, (auto) transmission fluid (if so equipped) and windshield washer fluid.

   Inspect the engine one side at a time. Check power steering fluid, hoses and belts. Make sure everything is mounted and secure. No leaks. No more than ¾" play in the belts. Check steering shaft, steering box and steering linkage for securement.

   Check radiator reservoir for leaks and sufficient fluid level. Also check radiator and heater hoses. Check water pump which is located on the front of the engine behind the fan for leaks. Belts have no more than ¾" of play.

   Check air compressor for leaks and securement. Check belts to compressor for frays or cracks and that there is no more than ¾" play.

   Check alternator and wires. Make sure it is mounted and secure and no more than ¾" play in belts.

2. Check leaf springs for broken or missing parts. Check hanger, brackets and mounts for securement. Check shocks for oil leaks and that they are fully extended.

3. Check front brake air hoses and front brake air chambers for damage, leak and securement. Pull on slack adjuster; no more than 1" play. Check cotter pin is mounted and secure. Check front brake drums for leaks, cracks, welds, or rust. You may not be able to check brake linings if brake drums have dust covers.

4. Inspect back of front tire for cuts and bruises. Make sure tread depth in major grooves is a least 4/32". Also check for mismatched, recapped or regrooved tires on front. Come down front of tire checking for cuts or bruises. Check rims for cracks, rust or welds. Check air pressure. Make sure lug nuts are tight and there is no heavy rust, missing lug nuts or leaks in hub oil seals. Check air valves and stems for leaks.

5. Move to the front door. As you enter the bus, open and close the door. Check the glass and rubber seal on the door. Check for broken steps or torn covering. Make sure hand rails are mounted and secure.

6. Check the fire extinguisher. Make sure it is charged. Check the first-aid kit. Also check for fuses. Check for three reflective triangles. Check for clean-up kit.

7. Make sure parking brake is on and gear shift is in neutral. Start engine. Allow air pressure to build to 120 PSI. Check all gauges; oil pressure, air, voltage, water temperature, fuel gauge. Test window washer and wipers (high and low). Check mirrors for proper adjustment. Test all heaters (high and low), defrosters and fans. Check indicator lights, dash lights. Check dome lights, stop arm and override switch. Check park brake; park brake on – place vehicle in low gear. Raise engine RPM to 1500 (on automatic transmission only). Straight-shift transmission with air brakes, with park brake on – start engine, place bus in first gear, depress clutch, lightly accelerate. If bus moves, brakes are out of adjustment. Hydraulic brakes – start engine, release park brake, let bus roll forward about three (3) MPH, apply park brake – bus should stop. If the vehicle moves, brakes are out of adjustment. Check no more than 2" play in 20" steering wheel. Check horn. Check seat for securement and seat belt for operational condition.

8. Chock rear wheels. Turn off engine. Turn key on. Push in parking brake. Start your LAB check.
    - LEAKS – NO BRAKES APPLIED SHOULD NOT LEAK MORE THAN 2 PSI PER MINUTE. PRESS BRAKE PEDAL

FOR ONE MINUTE. IT SHOULD NOT LEAK MORE THAN 3 PSI.

- ALARM – PUMP BRAKES. ALARM SHOULD COME ON AT 65 TO 60 PSI.

- BUTTON – CONTINUE PUMPING BRAKE. BUTTON SHOULD POP OUT BETWEEN 40 AND 10 PSI.

9. Start engine and build air to 120 PSI; shut engine off but leave key on. Walk through bus, checking floor and seat backs. Open and check ALL alarms on emergency windows, roof hatches, left side emergency door (if equipped). Check big yellow as you check emergency rear door. Go outside and check all of your lights. Turn signals, markers, hazards, headlights, parking lights, clearance lights, brake lights and big reds should all be tested. You cannot check back-up lights because gear needs to be in reverse and the engine on. Have someone check back-up lights for you as you must be in the driver's seat for this test. Look for any damage to the bus.

10. Start checking down right side. No leaks in fuel lines or tank. Check fuel cap and fuel tank and cage for securement. Visually inspect exhaust system, drive shaft an shaft guards; frame, slack adjusters, air chambers, air lines, drums, shocks, leaf springs, mounts and air ride, if equipped. Check windows, reflectors, clearance lights. Visually check rims for cracks, rust or welds; axle seals, inside and outside and spacers. Inspect lug nuts and valve stems. You may not be able to check the drums of brake linings because of dust cover. Visually look for leaks, metal shavings or damage. Check rear shocks and air ride, if equipped. Check rear tires (tread depth in rear 2/32") and check tires for proper inflation.

11. Go around to rear. Check lights, reflectors and rear glass. Open rear emergency door. Check rubber seal around door. Check to make sure you have a license play. Check all lens covers. Make sure everything is mounted and secure.

12. Check left side the same as the right. Also check the left emergency door, stop arm and battery box.

13. Check service brakes. Move bus slowly forward. Apply brakes. Check for proper brake operation.

BEFORE PERFORMING PRE-TRIP INSPECTION CHOCK WHEELS AND SET PARKING BRAKE

TURN IN DAILY IF DEFICIENCY IS NOTED, WEEKLY IF NO DEFICIENCIES ARE FOUND

DRIVERS SIGNATURE				Bus Safe to Drive Today
	Sun _____	Date ___	Miles____	Yes No
	M _____	Date ___	Miles____	Yes No
	T _____	Date ___	Miles____	Yes No
	W _____	Date ___	Miles____	Yes No
	Th _____	Date ___	Miles____	Yes No
	F _____	Date ___	Miles____	Yes No
	Sat _____	Date ___	Miles____	Yes No

	Su	M	T	W	Th	F	Sa
AM							
Midday							
PM							
Others							

County:							
Location:							
Bus #:							
Mechanic Signature:							
Date:							
Su	M	T	W	Th	F	Sa	
Check Here for No Deficiencies							

CHECK ONLY IF DEFICIENT

COLUMN 1

ENGINE COMPARTMENT 1

- Leaks Under Bus
- Front Lights, Lenses, Mirrors
- Windshield Condition
- Washer Fluid & Wiper Condition
- Hood Latch or Hold Downs
- Oil Level
- Transmission Fluid
- Power Steering Fluid
- Belts, Hoses, Wiring
- Steering Box & Linkage
- Radiator Reservoir
- Water Pump
- Air Compressor
- Alternator
- Battery & Hold Downs

FRONT SUSPENSION 2

- Leaf Springs
- Spring Mounts
- Shocks

FRONT BRAKES 3

- Brake Hoses
- Brake Chambers
- Slack Adjusters
- Drums

FRONT WHEELS 4

- Rims
- Lug Nuts, Drum Bolts
- Hub Oil Seals
- Tires
-
-
-

COLUMN 2

PASSENGER ENTRY 5

- Service Door and Handrails
- Steps
- Step Light

EMERGENCY EQUIPMENT 6

- Fire Extinguisher
- Reflective Triangles (3)
- First Aid Kit
- Clean Up Kit
- Spare Fuses

START ENGINE 7

- Gear Shift & Clutch
- Oil Pressure
- Air Gauges
- Voltage & Amps
- Coolant Temperature
- Fuel Gauge
- Washers & Wipers
- Mirrors
- Heater Blowers
- Defrosters & Defroster Fans
- Dash Lights, Light Indicators
- Dome Lights & Rear View Mirrors
- Big Red Lights & Stop Arm (Override)
- Big Yellow Loading Lights (Front)
- Head Lights – Hi-Low Beam
- Clearance Lights
- Big Red Lights & Stop Arm
- Strobe Light
- Crossing Gate if Equipped (override)
- 4-Way Hazard Lights (Front)
- Steering Play (Max 2” on 20” Wheel)
- Driver’s Seat & Seat Belt
- Park Brake
- Horn
- Service Brake, Air Use Per Application
- Hydraulic Service Brakes (If Applicable)

COLUMN 3

AIR BRAKE TEST 8

- Chock Wheels, Engine Off,Key,On,Button In
- Leaks (Max. 2 P.S.I. Per Minute, No Brake Applied)
- Leaks (Max. 3 P.S.I. Per Minute, With Service Brake Applied)
- Alarm Activates (Approx. 60 P.S.I.)
- Button (Self Activates 40 – 10 P.S.I.

PASSENGER COMPARTMENT 9

INTERIOR

- Seats & Bus Floor Damage
- Emergency Windows
- Roof Hatches
- Emergency Doors
- Big Yellow Loading Lights (Rear)

EXTERIOR

Left Side	Right Side
Stop Arm	Windows
Battery Box (Don’t Open)	Clearance Lights
Windows	Running Lights
Clearance Lights	Reflectors
Running Lights	Right Mirrors
Reflectors	Damage
Left Mirrors	
Damage	

FUEL AREA 10

- Fuel Tank – Secure Leaks, Cap, Cage

(VISUAL) UNDER VEHICLE	(VISUAL) REAR BRAKES
Drive Shaft & Guards	Brakes Hoses
Exhaust System	BrakeChambers
Frame	Slack Adjusters
	Drums

COLUMN 4

REAR SUSPENSION (VISUAL) 10

- Leaf Springs
- Spring Mounts
- Torsion Shocks
- Air Ride (If Equipped)

REAR WHEELS

- Tires
- Rims
- Lug Nuts, Drum Bolts
- Axle Seals – Inside & Outside
- Spacers

REAR OF BUS 11

- Emergency Door -Outside Seals
- Clearance Lights
- 4-Way Hazard Lights
- Big Red Lights
- Brake Lights
- Turn Signals
- Reflectors
- License Plate & Lights

SPECIAL EQUIPMENT 12

- Wheel Chair Lift & door
- Wheel Chair Tie – Downs
- Wheel Chair Floor Tracks
- Knife for Life
- Fire Blanket

OTHER 13

- Check Service Brake

WALK AROUND INSPECTION

	Steering		Mirrors
	Tires		Service Brakes
	Console		Park Brake
	Dash Panel		Emergency Panel

	Su	M	T	W	Th	F	Sa
AM							
Midday							
PM							
Others							

Notes/Comments _____

A pre-trip inspection of a forward control bus should be performed in the same manner as above. However, the driver should be advised that many components have to inspected visually since it is impossible to manually check various engine parts. WHITE-MAINTENANCE COPY YELLOW-DRIVER COPY PINK-TRANSPORTATION COPY

7/02

NAME: _____DATE:_____

CARE AND MAINTENANCE
TEST
**** PLEASE ANSWER TRUE (T) OR FALSE (F) OR FILL IN THE BLANK****

KEY

1. _____ Crossing gates shall be inspected during a pre-trip inspection and, if inoperable, the bus shall be deadlined immediately.

2. _____ Cuts or bruises in a tire side wall should not affect the tires overall life.

3. _____ When depressed, the clutch's function is to disengage the transmission from the drive-shaft.

4. _____ High speed is more detrimental to tires in cold weather than hot.

5. _____ The voltmeter indicates the amount of charge in the battery.

6. _____ The parking brake should be used only when parking. It is not permissible to engage the parking brake to hold the bus on a hill.

7. _____ Which bus component works on fluid or air pressure?

8. _____ All front tires require a minimum of two thirty-seconds of an inch (2/32") of tread in all major grooves.

9. _____ Four (4) emergency items to check on a Kentucky school bus are 1) fire extinguisher, 2) first-aid kit, 3) reflective triangles and 4) a body fluid clean-up kit.

10. _____ The alternator belt should have no more than three quarters of an inch (3/4") play.

INSTRUCTOR'S SIGNATURE: _____

CHAPTER 4
CARE AND MAINTENANCE
ANSWER SHEET

The answer key is only released to KDE endorsed trainers.

CHAPTER 5

PUPIL BEHAVIOR MANAGEMENT

PUPIL BEHAVIOR MANAGEMENT

LESSON TOPIC:

PUPIL BEHAVIOR MANAGEMENT

OBJECTIVES:

The driver will be able to:

- establish a personable and acceptable student-driver relationship;
- establish and maintain a safe atmosphere on a school bus;
- provide leadership through driver performance;
- successfully apply behavior control techniques; and
- analyze proper procedures and methods for dealing with individual and group behavior problems.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	INTRODUCTION Two-way communication between driver and passenger is essential for reducing incidents and improving the atmosphere on school buses. This means leadership from the driver and pupil participation in the development of rules governing acceptable behavior. Existing state laws and regulations should be used as a foundation for the development of these rules. Behavior problems on school buses vary from district to district and bus to bus. Some districts have very few behavior problems while other districts have tremendous behavior problems. Rules concerning behavior are essential on all bus routes. **Students must know what is expected of them and the consequences for noncompliance.** What can be done to reduce or eliminate disruptive behavior on school buses? The best general answer to this question is to develop and maintain an atmosphere conducive to transportation safety. How do you, as an instructor, train the driver in developing this kind of atmosphere? **DEVELOPING RULES** Input from the driver and the pupils should be the rule instead of the exception. This policy is suggested because people tend to obey and respect rules which they have had input in the development. **Make the students participants instead of spectators.** Each driver should

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	be allowed to have a five (5) minute rule meeting within the first two or three (2 or 3) days they drive. A good starting point for development of the rules might be your local district transportation discipline rules, some examples are: 1. Students shall wait until signaled by the driver before boarding or leaving the school bus. 2. Students shall remain seated at all times when the bus is in motion. 3. School bus driver may assign seats. 4. Students shall not eat or drink while on the school bus. As important as it is that the driver be knowledgeable about the history and origin of state laws and local safety policies, it is just as important that each student know what is expected of them each day they ride a school bus. This should be discussed during the "rules meeting" with the passengers. Let the passengers participate in developing the rules and the consequences for not following them. Many of their recommendations will be similar to those of the drivers and at times will be tougher. When they suggest a rule that is close to a state or local safety guideline, let them know that they have come up with a very important rule. At some point, when you feel your passengers have exhausted their reserve of

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	suggested rules, provide them with the remaining rules which will govern the bus on a daily basis. After the driver has finalized the riding rules for his/her school bus, he/she should introduce any additional district procedures for handling behavior problems and send them to the pupils parents. They will be as effective as the driver is consistent. The driver must set and maintain the tone of the relationship with his/her passengers. This is not an easy task. A drivers' attitude about this responsibility will determine how successful they are at this daily task. Some of the ways to establish and maintain the tone are: 1. Remember names. 2. Provide a warm greeting. 3. Use a receptive voice tone. 4. Understand positive and negative reinforcers. 5. Provide good examples. **<u>REMEMBERING NAMES</u>** If a driver expects his/her name to be pronounced correctly and used politely, then he/she must first learn and use passengers' names properly. Learn their names quickly and show an interest in them. This is one of the best ways to break down barriers that may exist between driver and passengers.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	GREETINGS How a driver greets his/her passengers every morning will often be a factor in determining the degree of cooperation received from his/her passengers. 1. A cheerful "HELLO" 2. "Good Morning" 3. "Good-Bye" 4. "Walk Carefully" or "Watch Your Step" These examples also reflect the drivers concern for his/her passengers' health and safety. **VOICE TONE** The drivers voice tone and what they say is very important. Think back to primary and secondary school years. A driver should avoid a threatening, angry tone, but should let pupils know that he/she is concerned by changing from his/her usual conversation style to an appropriate, serious tone when the situation warrants it. **POSITIVE REINFORCEMENT** A bus driver can avoid causing a separation between him/her and their passengers if requests for certain behavior from them is in a positive manner. A driver should also promote positive reinforcers. A positive reinforcer is a reward that follows a behavior and increases the possibility of that behavior occurring again.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	Examples of some positive reinforcers are: 1. verbal approval; 2. praise; 3. smiles; and 4. attention. We all like attention. Children are known to need and demand attention. Sometimes they don't get as much as they need. If a bus driver, can give them some attention, he/she can provide a positive model for social changes. **NEGATIVE REINFORCEMENT** Pupils who cannot get positive attention may misbehave for the reward of negative attention from their peers and from adults. A bus driver must control his/her temper and not put the disruptive individual in a position where he/she must back down in front of the group or win their respect by "mouthing off." **LEADERSHIP** By example: 1. ACTIONS – good leaders should not ask other people to do anything they would not do themselves. a. Adhere to rules. b. Be punctual. c. Be courteous.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	2. APPEARANCE – A drivers' good personal hygiene and proper dress show that they respect themselves and the position they hold. School bus drivers who are well groomed and dressed provide good personal appearance examples for their passengers. **EVALUATING THE SITUATION** Is the problem ourselves? When you are in a good mood, you may be able to overlook minor infractions. Certain personal circumstances can have an effect on how a school bus driver handles behavior problems on their bus. School bus drivers should strive not to let any personal problems or circumstances interfere with the safe operation of their bus. A driver should honestly access their mood and how it will be reflected in their attitude toward passengers. **DEALING WITH PASSENGERS AND THEIR PROBLEMS** **IS IT THE ACTION?** A school bus driver must make sure that it is passengers' actions which they are dealing with instead of using their actions as an opportunity to vent his/her own frustrations. Personal frustrations should not be taken out on passengers. **IS IT THE PERSON?** Children will risk punishment if there is an occasional chance of getting away with something.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	In dealing with passengers that should respect a bus driver – being **<u>fair</u>, <u>firm</u> and <u>consistent</u>** is very important. Fairness and consistency will promote respect and cooperation, and a safe bus driver must have these. Inconsistent enforcement of rules will encourage passengers to challenge the driver. Always use good judgement in dealing with behavior problems. **Confidential information:** Generally speaking, confidential information is personal and most often pertains to passengers' home situations. This information should not be shared with others unless it is of a nature that warrants it. Knowing the extent of some of these problems should motivate you, a driver, to try harder to develop good relationships with the students who cause the most problems. **<u>CONTROL TECHNIQUES</u>** There will be some problems which even the best school bus driver cannot handle alone. A bus driver should be able to: 1. establish a personable and acceptable student-driver relationship; 2. establish and maintain a safe atmosphere on a school bus; 3. provide leadership through driver performance;

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

4. successfully apply behavior control techniques; and
5. analyze proper procedures and methods for dealing with individual and group behavior problems.

INDIVIDUAL BEHAVIOR PROBLEM

The first or second offense might be a warning. The third or fourth offense may mean changing seats or asking the child to stay on the bus after arrival. **Every district must have their own discipline policy.**

Individual disruptive behavior on a school bus can be handled much better when the parents are informed about the behavior before it becomes necessary to ask the child to come in with his/her parents for a conference.

GROUP BEHAVIOR PROBLEM

Disruptive behavior from a group is normally much more hazardous than an individual behavior problem.

When a group ignores your request for order and the disturbance is distracting or hazardous, it is best to pull off the road, stop the bus and talk to the disruptive passengers. A driver should summons help if the situation calls for it.

STUDENT CONFERENCE

Sometimes, behavior problems on a school bus reach a point where it is necessary to have a conference with a student and his/her parent(s). The primary objective of the conference is to involve the parent(s) in the specifics

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	of the child's disruptive behavior, petition support from the parent(s) and inform the parent(s) about the critical behavior actions the district will have to take if the disruptive behavior continues. During the conference, the parent(s) should be presented with all the facts about the child's behavior. The conference should be conducted by an administrative official, most often the principal, of the school district. Both the student and his/her parent(s) should understand the critical nature of the conference. Suspension of riding privileges is normally the next step after a conference, although a positive parent and student attitude might merit giving the student another chance in some situations. The length of the first suspension is usually from one (1) to five (5) days. This should be spelled out in the district policy. When a student is suspended, his/her parents are responsible for getting him/her to and from school for the duration of the suspension. **<u>NOTE:</u> REMEMBER, IT IS VITAL THAT EACH DRIVER BE FAIR, FIRM AND CONSISTENT IN ALL DEALINGS WITH THE PUPILS WHO RIDE THEIR BUS. BY FOLLOWING THIS CONCEPT, YOU WILL BECOME THE DEDICATED PROFESSIONAL BUS DRIVER WITH THE ADMIRATION AND RESPECT OF HIS/HER PASSENGERS.**

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	STEP-BY-STEP APPROACH A critical aspect of pupil transportation is pupil management. Most school bus drivers have no difficulty driving the school bus. Their downfall comes when they have to deal with the students who ride their bus. Every board of education, superintendent and local pupil transportation director must ensure that a viable and effective program of pupil management is in place to assist the school bus driver with the task of safely transporting pupils to and from school and on school-related trips. A good program of pupil management must involve the following: 1. Local Board of Education 2. Local School Superintendent 3. Local Transportation Director 4. Principals 5. Teachers 6. School Bus Drivers 7. Students 8. Parents Each of these groups has a vital role in developing and maintaining a viable and effective program of pupil management in their school system.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	LOCAL BOARD OF EDUCATION'S ROLE The role of the local board of education is a very important one. The board is charged with the responsibility for the welfare of all students. The policies that the board adopts have the effect of law and are the basis upon which the pupil management program will rest. East driver should have a complete knowledge of the boards pupil management program and the steps involved in the discipline process. The board is not required to provide transportation to and from school. The Kentucky Revised Statute (KRS 158.110) that covers pupil transportation methods is a "permissive" statute. It permits the transportation of students. IT DOES NOT REQUIRE THE BOARD TO PROVIDE TRANSPORTATION SERVICE EXCEPT FOR SPECIAL NEEDS STUDENTS, IEP, ETC. Therefore, the keystone of the pupil management program is "IT IS A PRIVILEGE TO RIDE THE SCHOOL BUS – NOT A RIGHT." Once the expected standards of conduct for pupils have been developed, it is the board's responsibility to adopt them as policy. These policies and rules must be an integral part of the required Student Code of Conduct that each board must adopt. The board also plays a role in training school bus drivers by insisting that all drivers receive training in managing the pupils who ride their bus. The board should treat misconduct on the bus on the same level as in the classroom.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	LOCAL SUPERINTENDENT'S ROLE The role of the local superintendent is critical to implementing a viable pupil management program. The superintendent must support the program by providing the needed funds for a well-trained driver on each of the school systems' school buses. The superintendent must make it clear that each person in the school system is to support the school bus driver and the pupil management program. Budgets developed by the superintendent must provide the resources needed to implement the pupil management program. At a minimum, funds to conduct driver in-service training and pupil ridership training programs must be included in the annual budget. In addition, **the superintendent must ensure that all principals and teachers understand their role in the pupil management program and that they fully support the program by seeing that all the provisions of the pupil management program are effectively enforced**. **LOCAL TRANSPORTATION DIRECTOR'S ROLE** The local transportation director has a pivotal role in the development and implementation of the pupil management program. He/she must be the catalyst to ensure that a well-designed and functioning program of pupil management is in place.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	Utilizing the resources available, the local transportation director must analyze the situation that exists and involve all the groups in determining the components of the pupil management program. Each group has a role to play in an effective pupil management program. The local transportation director must determine the roles of each group and then ensure that each group understands their role and takes the necessary actions to effectively implement it. **PRINCIPAL'S ROLE** The role of the principal is also a vital key to any pupil management program. **The principal is the person who is responsible for discipline on the school bus.** The principal is the one who must ensure that the consequences listed in the pupil management program are carried out. The principal must ensure that the children at their school fully understand their responsibilities when riding a school bus as well as the actions that will result in losing their privilege of riding the school bus. The principal must support the school bus drivers just like he/she would support the teachers in his/her school. **TEACHER'S ROLE** The role the teacher plays will have a vital impact upon the effectiveness of the pupil management program. The teacher is responsible for providing the required instruction in the proper way to ride a school bus. A full

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	explanation of the rules, regulations and requirements must be taught to the pupils by the teacher (or a driver training instructor). This instructional aspect of the pupil management program is critical to ensuring that each pupil fully understands what is expected each time they ride a school bus. It is also vital that each pupil understand the consequences if they fail to abide by the rules and regulations. **SCHOOL BUS DRIVER'S ROLE** The role of the school bus driver is the most pivotal role within any pupil management program. The school bus driver has the responsibility for ensuring that the program is effective. The school bus driver must be aware of all facets of the pupil management program and operate within the framework of the program in a FAIR, FIRM AND CONSISTENT MANNER. The school bus driver must work with the pupils on their bus to ensure that they fully understand what is acceptable conduct on the bus and what is unacceptable. The school bus driver must establish ground rules for their bus. These ground rules must be within the framework of the pupil management program. School bus drivers must develop the skills necessary to deal with all situations and children that ride their school bus. An understanding of how pupils act at various ages is critical when dealing with children.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

STUDENT'S ROLE

The role of the student is another critical role. How the students act will dictate the effectiveness of the pupil management program. Students must have a clear understanding of the expected conduct while on the school bus. Compliance with all the rules and regulations is a must if the student is to properly fulfill his/her role in the pupil management program.

PARENT'S ROLE

The role of the parent is vital. The parent must know what is expected from their child in order to continue the privilege of riding the school bus. The parent must ensure that their child understands the rules and abides by them. The parent must support the bus driver in seeing that their child abides by the rules. By supporting the total pupil management program, the parent can ensure that their child retains the privilege of riding the school bus and is a safe rider.

PUTTING THE PROGRAM IN PLACE

The steps that the local transportation director must take to put a pupil management program in place are:

1. Make a thorough analysis of the current rules in the pupil management program.
2. Identify and retain the good aspects of the current program and build on them.
3. Develop written policies for the board to adopt.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	4. Develop training programs for drivers with an emphasis on pupil management skills based on the needs of the districts school bus drivers. 5. Develop a system of informing parents of the requirements for riding a school bus. 6. Develop procedures for orientating all principals, teachers and school bus drivers on their specific responsibilities and duties as outlined in the pupil management program. 7. Members of the committee should add any additional steps, which they feel should be included. **REGULATIONS FOR PUPILS RIDING THE SCHOOL BUSES (EXAMPLE)** School bus transportation is authorized only for pupils regularly enrolled in a public school in preschool through grade twelve. The transportation department provides you with the best equipment and drivers, and with the safest program possible. The following regulations are furnished for your information and compliance. We ask your cooperation. Following are standard rules for passengers to follow. **AT BUS STOPS** 1. Be on time. The bus cannot wait beyond its regular schedule for those who are tardy. Be at

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	the bus stop five (5) minutes before your bus is scheduled to arrive. 2. Always cross in front of the bus at a safe distance (minimum 10-15 feet) in order to be seen by the bus driver. **Cross only on the driver's signal.** 3. Do not run toward or run across the street in front or behind a school bus while it is in motion. 4. Never stand in the road while waiting for the bus. Wait in an orderly line off the highway or street. Wait until the bus stops and the driver signals, and then walk to the door and board the bus in an orderly manner. DO NO PUSH AND SHOVE. 5. Pupils shall board the bus and immediately take a seat without disturbing other passengers. Do not exchange seats unless given permission by the driver. 6. Pupils shall not get on or off the bus or move about within the bus while it is in motion. 7. Pupils shall not wear clothing or backpacks with long strings that could become entangled in the bus handrail. 8. Avoid making excessive noise. 9. Remember that fighting at but stops and on the way to and from school bus stops is subject to disciplinary action (to be reported to the school principal).

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	RIDING THE BUS 1. The driver is in charge of the bus and its passengers. Follow directions the first time they are given. 2. Pupils shall ride their assigned bus and no other bus unless approved in writing by the principal or designee. 3. No persons other than those assigned to the bus shall be allowed to ride a school bus. 4. Report promptly to the driver any damage done to the bus. Persons causing damage may be expected to pay the full cost of repairs before riding privileges are restored. 5. Pupils shall not engage in any activity which might divert the driver's attention away from driving the bus and cause an accident, such as: a. improper behavior (including disobedience, foul language, fighting, pushing, shoving and similar offensive acts); b. smoking on the bus; c. eating or drinking on the bus; d. possessing guns, knives or other sharp objects; e. bringing animals on the bus (either live or preserved specimens);

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	f. throwing articles or objects in or from the bus; g. tampering with mechanical equipment, accessories or controls of the bus; h. placing noncompliant musical instruments or other articles on the bus or at the door by the driver; i. obstructing the aisle in any manner; j. occupying more space in a seat than required (all items students bring on a bus must be held by the student and will not be placed on seats or in aisle); k. tracking mud or dirt onto the bus; l. littering the bus; or m. opening or closing windows without the driver's permission. 6. Violations of the rules and regulations for riding a school bus shall result in the following actions: a. First offense – bus driver will have a talk with the pupil. b. Second offense – bus driver will move pupil to a front seat for two (2) weeks and written notification will be sent to principal and parent/guardian. Pupil will not be allowed back on the bus until notification form is returned to the driver.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	c. Third offense – a misconduct report will be filed with the principal of the school where the pupil attends. Pupil will not be allowed back on the bus until parent has signed and pupil returns a copy of the report to the driver. d. Fourth offense – a second misconduct report is filed and the principal suspends bus riding privileges for a minimum of five (5) days. e. Fifth offense – a third misconduct report is filed and the principal suspends bus riding privileges for the remainder of the school year. 7. Some offenses are of such a serious nature that they can be deemed to warrant suspension of bus riding privileges without following the procedure outlined above. Included in these offenses are: a. disruptive behavior; b. use of tobacco in any form while on the bus; c. use or possession of alcohol, drugs or narcotics; d. failure to remain in seat when bus is in route and being a disruptive force;

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	e. use of profane, abusive or excessively loud language; f. littering or throwing objects (no food, candy or beverages allowed on bus); g. vandalism (at a minimum, may be made to pay for damages before privileges are restored); h. violation of any school or bus rule while waiting at any school to board the bus; i. failure to follow the proper procedure when crossing the road; j. using, operating or tampering with the operation or controls of the school bus; k. failure to properly identify yourself the first time you are asked by the driver or any school authority; l. failure to ride only the assigned bus; m. failure to comply with the authority of the bus driver on the regulations for pupils riding the school bus; n. fighting or scuffling; and/or o. bringing guns, knives or any weapons on the bus. **ON THE TRIP HOME** 1. Passengers are permitted to leave the bus only at the regular, designated stop. Any change

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	must be made with the parent's request in writing and approved by the signature of the school principal or designee. 2. If a pupil lives on the opposite side of a road from the bus stop, the pupil should go to the front of the bus and wait until the bus driver gives the signal to cross the road. NEVER cross the road in the rear of a stopped school bus unless the bus has left and it is a marked pedestrian crossing. **PARENT/GUARDIAN RESPONSIBILITIES** Any complaints of drivers, pupils or parent/guardians shall be reported promptly to the principal or transportation director. Parents/Guardians should: 1. report any misconduct on school buses to the principal; 2. report all traffic hazards and the bus numbers of all buses observed being operated carelessly to the transportation director; 3. encourage students to observe all safety and conduct regulations established for the safe and efficient operation of the school buses; 4. help by exerting extreme caution when approaching bus stops, moving buses or stopped buses;

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	5. help supervise large numbers of children at bus stops; and 6. see that their children are at the bus stop five (5) minutes before the bus is scheduled to arrive. **WAYS TO MAINTAIN STUDENT DISCIPLINE FOR DRIVERS** 1. Never give an order you do not intend to or cannot enforce. 2. The response of the child is in action. Give your command to stimulate action, not to check it. Say, "DO THIS" rather than "DON'T DO THAT." Suggest an action which can be successfully obeyed. 3. Give a child time for reaction. 4. Have a reason for what you ask a child to do, and when possible, take time to give the reason so that he/she can see the point. 5. Be honest in what you say and do. A child's faith in you is a great help. 6. Be fair – it isn't punishment, but injustice that makes a child rebel against you. 7. Be friendly. Always show an interest in what they are doing. 8. Commend good qualities and action. 9. Try to be constructive, not repressive, in all dealings with children.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	10. Remember that a sense of humor is extremely valuable. 11. Never strike a child. It may seem to be the easiest way, but it only aggravates the problem. 12. Do not judge misconduct by how it annoys you. 13. Do not take your personal feelings and prejudices out on the children. 14. Maintain poise at all times. Do not lose your temper. 15. Remember – "The tongue is the only keen-edged tool which grows sharper with constant use." Do not nag, bluff or be offensive. 16. Look for good qualities – all children have them. 17. Do not "pick" on every little thing a child does. Sometimes it is wiser to overlook some things. 18. Bear in mind that misbehavior is seldom willful. There is usually a cause and it may be you or some other influence which causes the child to misbehave. 19. Listen for suggestions and complaints from the children. 20. Follow-up cases which have been disciplined. Be certain that you still have the respect and confidence of the child. 21. Be sincere in your work.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	22. Intelligence in handling youth consists of thinking faster than they do. If they can outthink you, you are not using your maturity and the advantage of your education or experience. You should see the possibilities before they become results. This is the secret of leadership. 23. Never hold a student up to public ridicule. It is the surest way of creating a discipline problem. **SUMMARY** Pupil management involves the combined effort of four (4) distinct groups of individuals. An effective program must have the support of 1) school district administration, 2) school bus drivers, 3) pupils and 4) parents/guardians. Each school district should institute a comprehensive plan for the pupil's safety and well being, as well as protecting the interests of all others involved in the program. **SCHOOL DISTRICT RESPONSIBILITIES** 1. Establish the policies and procedures by which the program functions. 2. Establish pupil regulations governing the behavior and safety of pupils while on the bus and at the bus stop. 3. Institute and administer an instructional program that teaches pupils proper conduct and safety procedures.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	4. Conduct a training program for school bus drivers to ensure that all policies, procedures and regulations, and why they must be enforced, are understood. 5. Ensure that parents/guardians receive written copies of the bus rules and regulations. Clearly establish their roles and obligations with respect to pupil promptness, attitude and behavior. 6. Initiate procedures to ensure open lines of communication and cooperation between school administrators, bus company officials, state agencies and bus drivers. 7. Provide training in pupil management skills that extends beyond the scope of enforcing rules and regulations. 8. ENSURE THAT ADMINISTRATORS PROVIDE BACK-UP FOR DISCIPLINE AND STAND BEHIND DRIVERS' REASONABLE ENFORCEMENT ACTIONS. **DRIVER RESPONSIBILITIES** Drivers shall: 1. be familiar and ABIDE BY all rules, policies and procedures effecting pupil transportation; 2. establish rapport with each building administrator and work to ensure proper conduct and communications; 3. establish rapport with pupils;

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	4. instruct pupils in proper behavior, general procedures and EVACUATION DRILLS; 5. maintain order as a safety practice and stress the following points and procedures; a. minimize interior noise b. control passenger movement c. require an orderly entrance and exit d. eliminate movement or potential movement of objects e. require silence at railroads crossings f. prohibit transportation of unauthorized materials 6. handle minor infractions through seat assignments or discussions with pupil passengers; 7. follow school district policy pertaining to misconduct and submit written reports on the appropriate forms to administrators or other persons designated to deal with discipline problems in instances of serious or recurring misconduct; 8. be aware that they represent the school system and should present a positive image in dress, language and manner while on duty; and 9. be familiar with the assigned routes and designated school bus stops.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	PUPIL RESPONSIBILITIES Proper pupil behavior is important. The distraction of the driver can contribute to incidents. Pupils and parents/guardians should be made aware of, and abide by, responsible regulations to enhance safety. The consequences of unacceptable behavior **should be clearly understood**. The following procedures will protect the pupil's rights and maintain order on the bus. Pupils must: 1. be aware that they are responsible for their actions and behavior; 2. know what the rules and procedures are and abide by them; 3. display proper respect for the rights and comforts or others; 4. realize that school bus transportation can be denied if they do not conduct themselves properly; 5. be aware that any driver distraction is potentially hazardous to their safety; and 6. not wear clothing or back packs with long hanging drawstrings or straps that can get caught in the handrail or door of the bus. **PARENT/GUARDIAN RESPONSIBILITIES** 1. Become familiar with the district rules and policies, regulations and principles of school bus safety.

INSTRUCTOR GUILDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	2. Assist children in understanding the safety rules and encourage them to abide by them. 3. Recognize responsibilities for the actions of their children. 4. Support safe riding practices and reasonable discipline efforts. 5. Teach children the procedures for safely crossing the highway before boarding and after leaving the bus. 6. Support procedures for emergency evacuation and procedures in an emergency as adopted by the school district. 7. Support respect for rights and privileges of others. 8. Communicate safety concerns to school administrators. 9. Support all efforts to improve school bus safety. 10. Parents/guardians should not allow students to wear clothing or back packs with long hanging drawstrings or straps on them to avoid the hazard of them getting caught on the handrails or door of the bus.

7/02

NAME: _____DATE: _____

PUPIL BEHAVIOR MANAGEMENT
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE OR FILL IN THE BLANK****

1. _____ Students who must cross the roadway when disembarking from the bus must cross at a distance between fifteen and fifty feet (15' and 50').

2. _____ The driver shall cancel the red signal loading/unloading lights after the students have reached the opposite side of the highway.

3. _____ Principals are responsible for reasonable behavior of pupils while in transit only.

4. _____ A positive reinforcer is a reward that follows a behavior and increases the possibility of that behavior occurring again.

5. _____ A negative reinforcer is a reward that precedes a behavior and increases the possibility of that behavior occurring again.

6. _____ _____ _____ In dealing with school bus riders, it is vital to be three (3) things. What are they?

7. _____ Elementary age girls are greatly influenced by boys.

8. _____ Are elementary or secondary age students more active physically?

9. _____ Basically, no child likes to get into trouble.

10. _____ As a school bus driver, there are times when ignoring improper behavior may be the best avenue.

11. _____ Behavior problems tend to be the same, or very similar, in every district.

12. _____ Becoming friends with the student riders is an excellent way to keep down trouble.

13. _____ The best time to address behavior problems is before they occur.

14. _____ Favoritism or showing extra attention to the problem child tends to usually make the driver's job easier.

15. _____ A school bus driver should drive using their right foot only when driving a bus equipped with an automatic transmission.

16. _____ The person who has the greatest input on student discipline on a school bus is whom?

17. _____ The student should be at the bus stop how long before the bus is scheduled to arrive?

18. _____ Eating or drinking on the bus is permissible with the driver's permission.

19. _____ In order for a student to exit the bus at a location other than his/her assigned stop, he/she must have written permission from the superintendent's office.

20. _____ Pupil management involves the combined efforts of four (4) distinct groups. Names these groups.
_____
_____

INSTRUCTOR'S SIGNATURE: _____ DATE: _____

PUPIL BEHAVIOR MANAGEMENT TEST

ANSWER KEY

The answer key is only released to KDE endorsed trainers.

CHAPTER 6
VEHICLE OPERATION

VEHICLE OPERATION

LESSON TOPIC:

VEHICLE OPERATION

OBJECTIVES:

To enable the driver to:

- enter the traffic stream without interfering with other vehicles;
- select the appropriate lane for driving;
- adjust to existing traffic conditions, traffic flow and legal speed limits;
- maintain an adequate separation between his/her school bus and the vehicle ahead;
- negotiate curves safely and comfortably;
- negotiate hills safely and effectively;
- leave a line of traffic with minimal interference to vehicles behind and to the side;
- accommodate a passing vehicle by adjusting speed and/or position as necessary for the other vehicles to complete the pass;
- maintain an adequate separation between his/her school bus and the vehicle behind;
- put a school bus in motion on either an upgrade or downgrade from a standing position;
- identify various signs, signals and pavement markings, and to comprehend their meaning;
- drive safely by parked vehicles;
- adjust course as necessary when meeting oncoming vehicles on a two-lane roadway;
- make correct decisions when encountering yielding (right-of-way) situations;
- respond with safe and cautious actions when encountering pedestrians, cyclists and animals;
- approaching intersections and to react appropriately to other traffic and traffic controls;
- proceed through intersections and react to changing traffic conditions;
- approach and enter off-street areas in a safe and efficient manner;
- safely make right turns at intersections;
- safely make left turns at intersections;
- enter, drive through or cross and leave a tunnel or bridge safely and expeditiously;

- safely enter a main roadway from an entrance ramp;
- merge with traffic on another roadway;
- safely exit a main roadway or an exit ramp;
- negotiate traffic circles safely;
- change lanes safely and without obstructing the flow of traffic;
- make sound passing decisions and to complete passes without interference to other vehicles;
- handle the school bus during practice driving; and
- evaluate the knowledge gained by the driver as a result of the completion of the instructional phase of driving fundamentals.

INTRODUCTION TO THE INSTRUCTOR

RURAL DRIVING SKILLS

This is the first on-street driving lesson for the student, covering specific rural situations as well as concepts from the previous lessons.

REVIEW: pre-trip inspections, visual checks, backing and shifting.

RESIDENTIAL DRIVING SKILLS

This lesson involves the operation of the school bus on streets with limited space, increased vehicular and pedestrian traffic and frequent conflict.

REVIEW: following distance, lateral clearances, turns and entering traffic flow.

USE THE SAFE METHOD: Avoid traffic congestions when possible.

URBAN DRIVING SKILLS

The final lesson in the on-street driving sequence acquaints the students with concepts and situations unique to urban areas. Topics covered include: increased interaction, distractions, space restrictions and driving strategies.

REVIEW: interaction, intersections, scanning

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	<u>RURAL DRIVING SKILLS</u> **STUDENT INTRODUCTION** The first actual on-street driving is in a rural area and the emphasis is placed upon interacting with other vehicles. In addition to know how to operate and maneuver the bus, a bus driver will be expected to demonstrate and explain the "thinking processes" that are involved in rural driving.
THE DRIVER WILL LIST, IN CORRECT SEQUENCE, THE STEPS FOR ENTERING TRAFFIC FROM A STOPPED OR PARKED POSITION.	**<u>MERGING STEPS:</u>** 1. Observe traffic to front and rear. 2. Look for gap in rear approaching traffic. 3. Yield the right-of-way to all vehicles and pedestrians. 4. Activate turn signal. 5. Accelerate smoothly into gap in traffic lane. 6. Straighten steering wheel. 7. Check to see that directional signal has been cancelled. 8. Accelerate quickly to speed of traffic.
THE DRIVER SHOULD BE ABLE TO STATE THE REGULATION REGARDING APPROPRIATE LANE USAGE.	**<u>REGULATIONS:</u>** 1. Drive in right lane of roadway except: a. When overtaking and passing another vehicle moving in the same direction; or b. When right lane or roadway is closed to traffic due to construction or repair. c. Follow posted traffic signs for appropriate lane usage.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	d. When it is safer to travel in the left lane (for short distances). e. Drive in any lane of a roadway having three (3) or more lanes in one direction. However, school buses should travel in the right lane whenever feasible.
THE DRIVER WILL STATE THE REGULATIONS REGARDING SPEED.	2. Basic speed law: a. The driver should drive at a careful and prudent speed that takes into account all driving conditions. Drive at no greater speed than will permit stopping the vehicle within the assured clear distance ahead. b. Absolute speed laws: (fixed) o 65 MPH – maximum for Kentucky Interstate travel o 45 MPH – minimum on freeways o 45 MPH – highway construction, road work or surveying o 25 MPH – business, residential and park areas, unless posted otherwise o 25 MPH – school zones
THE DRIVER WILL STATE THOSE TECHNIQUES WHICH WILL ENABLE HIM/HER TO ADJUST SPEED TO EXISTING CONDITIONS.	c. Techniques: o Periodically observe speedometer to check speed (should check every five seconds. Keep your eyes moving.).

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	o Adjust speed to that of the other traffic by accelerating, decelerating, braking and/or downshifting.
THE DRIVER WILL EXPLAIN THE RULES WHICH WILL HELP IN DETERMINING AN ADEQUATE FOLLOWING DISTANCE.	d. Rules: o Under ideal conditions, maintain at least a four-second following distance in a Kentucky school bus. o Look ahead twelve (12) to fifteen (15) seconds. By scanning the road that far ahead, trouble can be seen well in advance and can often be avoided.
THE DRIVER WILL IDENTIFY CIRCUMSTANCES WHICH CALL FOR GREATER FOLLOWING DISTANCE.	e. Definite times to adjust following distance; o When increasing speed, o When driving on wet or icy road, o When driving at night or during weather conditions that adversely affect the driver's ability to see the roadway and traffic conditions ahead, o When fatigued, o When following emergency vehicles, o When following dual-wheeled vehicles, which may cause damage to the bus by the thrust of debris thrown from between the wheels, and/or o When following two-wheeled vehicles that can stop within shorter distances.
	If at least four seconds have passed before the front

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	of the bus has reached the same object that the vehicle in front of you just passed, a proper following distance is being maintained if driving 40 mph or slower. A five (5) second following distance should be used if driving over 40 mph. The distance between your bus and the vehicle in front of you is called the space gap.
THE DRIVER WILL DESCRIBE THOSE TECHNIQUES WHICH WILL ENABLE HIM/HER TO SAFELY NEGOTIATE CURVES.	**CURVES:** 1. Approach curves at speeds that will enable the curve to be negotiated safely. 2. Observe roadway ahead for signs indicating maximum safe entering speed. 3. Reduce speed, if necessary, to attain posted limit. **WHEN ENTERING AND DRIVING THROUGH A CURVE:** 1. Look well ahead to anticipate the need for steering conditions. 2. Maintain a position within your lane (not change or "cut across" lanes). 3. Maintain speed throughout curve by keeping slight pressure on accelerator. Don't increase speed in a curve. 4. Reduce speed by releasing accelerator and applying the brakes lightly. 5. Always brake before a curve: o Whenever initial speed proves too great for rate of curvature, or

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	o Whenever visibility is restricted by darkness, fog, vegetation or other obstructions. **<u>WHEN LEAVING A CURVE:</u>** 1. Resume original or other safe speeds. o One may accelerate coming out of a curve, This is called "blowing out" of a curve, however, this should be done on a conservative basis. Just gradually accelerate out of the curve.
THE DRIVER WILL IDENTIFY THOSE TECHNIQUES WHICH WILL ENABLE HIM/HER TO SAFELY NEGOTIATE UPGRADES.	**<u>PROCEDURES:</u>** UPHILL 1. Select the far right lane or auxiliary climbing lane, if available. 2. Maintain constant speed on upgrades by: o Applying accelerator pressure, and o Shifting to lower gear if necessary. 3. When approaching crest on a narrow roadway, keep as far to the right as safely possible. o Slow down slightly when approaching crest to compensate for limited sight distance and for an anticipated increase in speed upon reaching crest.
THE DRIVER WILL IDENTIFY THOSE TECHNIQUES WHICH WILL ENABLE HIM/HER TO SAFELY NEGOTIATE UPGRADES.	DOWNHILL 1. Look for signs indicating length and/or gradient of downgrade.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	2. Shift into lower gear before beginning a long and/or steep downgrade. 3. Maintain constant speed on downgrades by reducing accelerator pressure. 4. Apply brakes, using the target speed/on again off again method. 5. When vehicle reaches the bottom of downgrade, resume normal driving speed.
THE DRIVER WILL LIST, IN CORRECT SEQUENCE, THE STEPS FOR LEAVING A LINE OF TRAFFIC.	**<u>EXITING TRAFFIC:</u>** 1. Scan roadside for suitable place to stop. 2. Observe shoulder for obstructions (trees, poles, sign posts). 3. Look for spot with no obstructions where vehicles can be seen by traffic in all directions. 4. Check mirrors. 5. Signal intention to leave traffic stream. 6. Reduce speed. 7. Guide school bus gradually off the roadway. 8. Try not to make quick, abrupt movements. 9. Brake gently to a complete stop, if called for.
THE DRIVER WILL EXPLAIN THE PROCEDURE TO ENABLE OTHER VEHICLES TO PASS SAFELY.	**<u>BEING PASSED</u>** 1. Maintain position in center of lane, or move slightly to right, if possible. 2. Maintain or reduce speed – do not accelerate. 3. Watch for signals that the passing vehicle plans to cut back in front of the bus.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	a. Turn signal flashing b. Driver looks back over shoulder. c. Front wheels begin to angle back to right. 4. Prepare to slow down to provide larger space for passing vehicle to re-enter lane or to obtain additional following distance if vehicle cuts in after passing.
THE DRIVER WILL IDENTIFY THOSE TECHNIQUES WHICH WILL HELP HIM/HER MAINTAIN AN ADEQUATE SEPARATION WITH THE VEHICLE BEHIND.	**BEING FOLLOWED:** 1. Signal intended maneuvers. 2. Check mirrors frequently. 3. Watch for indications that following vehicles intend to pass. 4. Observe roadway ahead to anticipate the need to stop. 5. Use the minimum four/five-second following distance method for Kentucky school buses.
THE DRIVER WILL LIST, IN CORRECT SEQUENCE, THE STEPS FOR PUTTING A SCHOOL BUS IN MOTION ON AN UPGRADE.	**STARTING ON AN UPGRADE:** A. Manual shift: 1. Press brake. 2. Set parking brake. 3. Press clutch. 4. Place gearshift lever in first gear for four speed transmission or second gear (or first gear if on a step upgrade) for five (5) speed. 5. Release brake.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	6. Press accelerator. 7. Release clutch to friction point, simultaneously releasing parking brake so that bus does not roll backward. 8. Release clutch completely and press accelerator until bus gains adequate speed to shift into next higher gear. B. Automatic Shift 1. Press brake. 2. Set parking brake. 3. Place gearshift level in drive (or low if on a steep upgrade). 4. Gradually press accelerator. 5. Release emergency brake.
THE DRIVER WILL LIST, IN CORRECT SEQUENCE, THE STEPS FOR PUTTING A SCHOOL BUS IN MOTION ON A DOWNGRADE.	**<u>STARTING ON A DOWNGRADE:</u>** A. Manual Shift 1. Press Brake. 2. Set parking brake. 3. Press clutch. 4. Place gearshift lever in first gear for four-speed-transmission or second gear for five speed. 5. Release parking brake. 6. Gradually release brake. 7. Release clutch to friction point. 8. Accelerate, if necessary, and gradually release clutch all the way.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	B. Automatic Shifts on Downgrade 1. Press brake. 2. Place gearshift lever in drive (or low if on a steep downgrade). 3. Release brake and accelerate if necessary. **<u>RESIDENTIAL DRIVING SKILLS</u>** **STUDENT INTRODUCTION** This lesson is devoted to the skills necessary to drive in a residential area. You will encounter problems with space, vehicle and pedestrian traffic, visual obstruction and traffic conflicts.
THE DRIVER WILL DESCRIBE THE MEANING AND PROPER DRIVER REACTION TO THE VARIOUS SHAPES AND COLORS OF TRAFFIC SIGNS.	**<u>SIGNS/SHAPES:</u>** A. OCTAGON - STOP 1. Come to a complete stop. 2. Yield right-of-way to pedestrians. 3. Stop behind marked or unmarked crosswalk or stop line. Without stop line or crosswalk, stop even with the stop sign. If sign is placed such that a driver should not stop at the stop sign, stop at the point nearest the intersecting roadway where the driver has a view of approaching traffic on the intersection roadway. A driver's choices for stopping are (in order) 1) stop line, 2) stop sign, 3) common sense. NOTE: At a cross street, the driver may have to make two or more complete stops. The driver

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	must stop at the designated stop and, if unable to see, he must move forward until he is able to see clearly in all directions and stop again before proceeding. B. INVERTED TRIANGLE – YIELD 1. Slow down and be ready to stop if needed. Give the right-of-way to traffic and pedestrians. C. CROSSBUCK – RAILROAD 1. In Kentucky, all school bus drivers must stop at all railroad crossings (15 to 50 feet). D. RECTANGLE – REGULATORY 1. Inform drivers about traffic laws and regulations and also serve as directional guides. E. ROUND – RAILROAD - Warns of a railroad crossing. 1. Slow down and be prepared to stop. Kentucky school buses must stop (15 to 50 feet). F. PENNANT – NO PASSING – Usually found on left side of road. G. PENTAGON - School 1. Slow down and watch for children.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	H. TRIANGLE – SLOW MOVING VEHICLE – Vehicle carrying this sign cannot travel faster than 25 MPH. I. SHIELDS – GUIDE – Identifies highway by number and symbol as part of national, state or local system. **<u>COLORS:</u>** A. RED – Stop, yield or a prohibition B. YELLOW - Warning B. ORANGE – Construction and maintenance warning. C. GREEN – Indicates movements permitted and direction guidance E. WHITE – Regulation F. BLACK - Regulation G. BLUE – Motorist services guidance H. BROWN – Public recreation and scenic guidance **<u>TRAFFIC CONTROL SIGNALS:</u>** A. TRAFFIC LIGHTS 1. RED – Stop at stoplight or behind crosswalk. **In a Kentucky school bus a right turn on red is not allowed.** 2. YELLOW – Warning. Light is about to change from green to red. Do not enter intersection. A vehicle should clear the intersection by the time the light changes or, if unable to, the vehicle should stop.
THE DRIVER WILL DESCRIBE THE MEANING AND PROPER DRIVER REACTION TO THE VARIOUS TRAFFIC CONTROL SIGNALS.	

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	3. GREEN – Go, but first check to see that intersection is clear. Yield to vehicles and pedestrians in intersection. B. ARROW 1. STEADY GREEN – Turn in the direction shown by arrow. Yield to pedestrians and other traffic in intersection. C. FLASHING SIGNALS 1. RED – Come to full stop. Proceed when road is clear. 2. YELLOW- caution. Slow down, look carefully and proceed with caution. D. LANE SIGNALS 1. GREEN – A steady green arrow pointed downward indicates drivers are permitted to drive in that lane. 2. YELLOW – A steady yellow "X" indicates that drivers should clear that lane as signal is preparing to change to red. 3. RED – A steady red "X" indicates that drivers should not drive in that lane. D. PAVEMENT MARKINGS 1. YELLOW LINES – Separate lanes moving in opposite directions. 2. BROKEN YELLOW LINES – Indicates that passing is permitted when line is on your side of the road.
THE DRIVER WILL DESCRIBE THE MEANING AND PROPER DRIVER REACTION TO THE VARIOUS PAVEMENT MARKINGS.	

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	3. SOLID YELLOW LINES – Indicates that passing is prohibited if the line is on your side of the road. 4. DOUBLE SOLID YELLOW LINES – Indicates that passing is prohibited in either direction on two-lane roads. Double solid yellow lines also indicate the center of the road on roads of four or more lanes. 5. CENTER LANE, LEFT TURN ONLY – (marked on both sides by solid yellow and broken yellow lines). Use only when turning left. Do not use for passing. 6. BROKEN WHITE LINES – Separate traffic lanes moving in the same direction. 7. SOLID WHITE LINES – Used to channel traffic and prevent lane changes near intersections. 8. CROSSWALK LINES – Indicate where pedestrians are to cross. Do not block crosswalks. Yield to pedestrians. 9. STOP LINES – Indicates where a vehicle must stop at intersections. **SYMBOLS:** 1. WHITE ARROWS – Lanes marked with white arrows indicate the direction in which the driver must proceed.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
THE DRIVER WILL LIST THE GREATEST HAZARDS IN PASSING PARKED VEHICLES.	**HAZARDS** A. Spaces between parked vehicles through which pedestrians and animals may dart into street. B. Parked vehicle may suddenly move into path of the bus. C. Occupants of parked vehicles who may suddenly open doors. D. Any other situation that may cause a collision.
THE DRIVER WILL LIST CUES WHICH CAN INDICATE THAT A PREVIOUSLY PARKED VEHICLE IS ABOUT TO ENTER THE DRIVING LANE.	**CUES** A. Exhaust fumes coming from vehicle. B. Back up lights on. C. Brake lights on. D. Front wheels turned toward traffic lane. E. Driver looking back over shoulder. F. Turn signal flashing. G. Any movement.
THE DRIVER WILL IDENTIFY THOSE TECHNIQUES WHICH WILL ENABLE HIM/HER TO PASS PARKED VEHICLES SAFELY. **THE DRIVER WILL IDENTIFY THOSE TECHNIQUES WHICH WILL ENABLE HIM/HER TO SAFELY MEET ONCOMING VEHICLES ON TWO-LANE ROADWAYS.**	**TECHNIQUES** A. Maintain reasonable speed. B. Maintain lane position, leaving reasonable clearance between bus and parked vehicles. C. Be ready to stop. D. Change lanes if necessary. E. Look for a place to steer away from the obstacle.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	ONCOMING TRAFFIC A. Maintain position to right of centerline. B. Observe roadway for slow moving traffic, which might force oncoming vehicles across the centerline. C. Take in the whole picture. D. Be prepared to stop. E. Look for a place to steer away from the obstacle.
THE DRIVER WILL EXPLAIN THE CORRECT DRIVER ACTION WHEN ENCOUNTERING YIELDING SITUATIONS.	**<u>YIELDING</u>** A. Yield to any vehicle that is already in the intersection. B. When reaching an intersection at the same time as another vehicle, yield to the vehicle on the right. C. When approaching a yield sign, slow down to a reasonable speed and yield the right-of-way to any vehicle in the intersection and to approaching traffic. D. When merging at a stop intersection, stop and yield the right-of-way to any vehicle in intersection and to approaching traffic. E. When merging onto a main highway, with or without signs, yield to any vehicle close enough to be an immediate danger. F. When making a left turn, yield right-of-way to oncoming traffic.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	G. Stop and then yield the right-of-way. H. When entering a highway from an alley, private road or driveway. **EMERGENCY VEHICLES** Yield to emergency vehicles that are sounding a siren and/or flashing warning lights by turning as far as possible to the right and stopping. Generally, a driver should never turn left. **PEDESTRIANS** A. AT STOP SIGNS – After coming to a complete stop, give the right-of-way to pedestrians crossing the street. B. AT TRAFFIC STOPS – After a light turns green yield to pedestrians still crossing the street. Also, yield to pedestrians walking with a green light or a "walk" signal. C. AT STEADY GREEN ARROW – Yield to conflicting cars and pedestrians. D. AT CROSSWALKS – When pedestrians are crossing the street at crosswalks, slow down or stop before reaching the crosswalk. E. WHEN TURNING – Yield to pedestrians when turning at intersections or when entering alley or driveway. F. WHEN ENTERING A STREET – Yield to pedestrians in your path when driving onto street or highway from driveway or alley.
THE DRIVER WILL STATE THE REGULATIONS REGARDING YIELDING TO PEDESTRIANS.	

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	G. YIELD at all times when collisions with pedestrians are possible. H. WHEN MEETING BLIND PERSONS – Bring vehicle to a complete stop at least fifteen feet from blind pedestrian that is crossing in front of you. I. YIELD TO FUNERAL PROCESSIONS. J. YIELD when directed to do so by a police officer. **REGULATIONS** YIELD RIGHT-OF-WAY TO PEDESTRIANS: A. at stop signs; B. at traffic signals; C. at crosswalks; D. when turning; E. when entering a street from a driveway or alley; and/or F. when meeting blind pedestrians **TECHNIQUES** A. LEAVE PLENTY OF ROOM FOR CYCLISTS 1. When approaching cyclists, give short beep on horn at least 200 feet or five bus lengths prior to passing to warn them that you are there. 2. Watch for cyclists at night, as they may not have proper lighting.
THE DRIVER WILL DESCRIBE THOSE TECHNIQUES WHICH WILL ENABLE HIM/HER TO INTERACT SAFELY WITH CYCLIST	

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	3. Provide an adequate clearance space when passing. B. WATCH FOR ANIMALS ON OR ALONG ROADWAY.
THE DRIVER WILL IDENTIFY THOSE TECHNIQUES WHICH WILL ENABLE HIM/HER TO DEAL SAFELY WITH ANIMALS.	Slow down when entering animal crossing zones or when noting animals on or along roadway. If an animal enters a roadway, prepare to stop or maneuver if traffic permits. 1. Hit the animal if stopping or maneuvering would jeopardize your own safety or that of passengers, other motorists or pedestrians. This is a last desperate option.
	<u>INTERSECTIONS</u> **PROCEDURE APPROACH**
THE DRIVER WILL DESCRIBE IN THE CORRECT SEQUENCE, THE PROCEDURE WHICH WILL ENABLE HIM/HER TO SAFELY APPROACH INTERSECTIONS.	When approaching an intersection: A. slow down in sufficient time to avoid stopping in the intersection or on crosswalk; and B. observe signs providing lane information and enter the correct lane as early as possible, but no later than 100 feet before reaching intersection.
THE DRIVER WILL DESCRIBE THE REGULATION THAT WILL ENABLE HIM/HER TO SAFELY OBSERVE AND FOLLOW TRAFFIC CONTROLS AT INTERSECTIONS.	When intending to turn: A. enter far right lane for a right turn or far left authorized lane for a left turn, unless otherwise directed; B. check mirrors; and

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	C. signal intention to turn as soon as possible without causing confusion, but no later than 100 feet before reaching intersection unless it would confuse the motoring public. If unable to enter correct lane for a turn: A. proceed to the next intersection. **REGULATIONS** A. If an officer and the control devices are in conflict, follow officer's directions. B. Prepare to stop if the light is red, flashing red or yellow. C. Proceed with caution although ready to stop if light is flashing yellow. D. Slow down and prepare to stop if traffic light is changing from green to yellow. E. Proceed through intersection when light changes from green to yellow, if stopping would cause conflict with following vehicles. However, your bus should clear the intersection before the light turns red. If in doubt, do not proceed. F. Slow down in preparation for stopping at an intersection controlled by a stop arm. G. Slow down sufficiently to stop, if necessary, at an intersection controlled by a yield sign and proceed cautiously only when intersection is clear.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
THE DRIVER WILL IDENTIFY THOSE SAFETY PRECAUTIONS WHICH WILL ENABLE HIM/HER TO PROPERLY OBSERVE AND REACT TO OTHER TRAFFIC WHEN APPROACHING INTERSECTIONS.	**PRECAUTIONS** A. Observe oncoming traffic for an indication of a left turn and prepare to stop quickly if oncoming vehicle suddenly makes a left turn. B. Reduce speed to enable left-turning vehicle in intersection to complete turn, and be ready to stop if the vehicle does not complete the turn. C. Observe path ahead of a left or right turning vehicle to anticipate a forced stop by turning vehicle. D. Slow down or stop to permit a vehicle approaching from right to clear intersection if vehicle is close and rapidly approaching intersection. E. Observe path of vehicle approaching from right to anticipate vehicle entering intersection
THE DRIVE WILL DESCRIBE THE PROCEDURE FOR PROCEEDING THROUGH INTERSECTIONS.	F. When vehicle approaches from left and the bus is on a major road, observe other vehicles for an indication of slowing down and prepare to stop if the vehicle on the left does not yield right-of-way.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
THE DRIVER WILL DESCRIBE THE PROPER RESPONSES TO VARIOUS TRAFFIC CONTROL DEVICES USED AT INTERSECTIONS.	**PROCEEDING THROUGH INTERSECTIONS** **PROCEDURE** A. Be ready to stop. B. Observe path of traffic ahead to anticipate any stops and prepare to stop should the lead vehicle stop suddenly. C. Stop if oncoming traffic suddenly makes left turn across path of bus. D. Observe traffic from left. If a vehicle signals for a right turn, do not pull out until the vehicle begins to turn. E. Observe traffic from right before entering an intersection and enter only when safe passage is assured. F. Slow down and proceed cautiously if pedestrians are near the corner, yielding right-of-way or stopping if pedestrian enters street. G. Observe oncoming traffic preparing to turn left and prepare to stop should a left turn be initiated. H. It is recommended that a school bus driver **NEVER** signal another to proceed. **RESPONSE** A. When light changes from red to yellow, do not anticipate green light by moving on yellow light. Wait until light has changed to green before starting.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	B. Enter intersection, after checking for cross traffic, if light is green or flashing yellow. C. Come to a complete stop before proceeding through intersection if there is a flashing red light. D. If green arrow governs the lane, proceed only in direction indicated by arrow. E. When intersection is controlled by a stop sign, come to a complete stop, proceeding only when it will not interfere with cross traffic. F. When encountering a "yield" sign, proceed only when it will not interfere with cross traffic.
THE DRIVER WILL LIST, IN THE CORRECT SEQUENCE, THE STEPS FOR APPROACHING AND ENTERING AN ENTRANCE TO AN OFF-STREET ARE ON THE LEFT.	**OFF-STREET AREA ON LEFT** **PROCEDURE – APPROACH** A. Check mirrors for traffic flow. B. Signal for left turn. C. Position bus in lane just to right of center line or in left turn only lane. D. Keep your wheels straight ahead. E. Yield to oncoming traffic. F. Watch for other traffic entering or exiting off-street areas. G. Check mirrors for rear traffic and passing vehicles. H. Check right mirrors to ensure that pivot point of bus will clear object on right.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
THE DRIVER WILL LIST, IN CORRECT SEQUENCE, THE STEPS FOR APPROACHING AND ENTERING AN ENTRANCE TO AN OFF-STREET AREA ON THE RIGHT.	**PROCEDURE – TURN** A. Complete turn. B. Maintain safe entrance speed when turning into off-street area entrance. C. Stop only after bus is completely through entrance way and well off main roadway. **OFF-STREET AREA ON RIGHT** **PROCEDURE – APPROACH** A. Check mirrors for traffic flow. B. Signal for turn. C. If intending to turn into off-street area, immediately beyond an intersection, activate turn signal when halfway through intersection so that vehicles do not interpret signal as an indication to turn at intersection. Signal for the benefit of other drivers. You know where you are going. They do not. D. Position vehicle in appropriate lane. E. Look for signs or entryway marking indicating direction of travel. F. Adjust position of bus to provide proper clearance for entering off-street area. G. Check right mirror for passing vehicles and obstructions. H. Check left mirrors to ensure that pivot point of bus will clear object on left.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
THE DRIVER WILL DESCRIBE IN CORRECT SEQUENCE, THE PROCEDURE FOR MAKING A RIGHT TURN AT AN INTERSECTION.	**PROCEDURE – TURN** A. Complete turn. B. Maintain safe entrance speed when turning into off-street area entrance. C. Stop only after bus is completely through entrance way and well off main roadway. **<u>INTERSECTION – TURN RIGHT</u>** **PROCEDURE – APPROACH** A. Check mirrors. B. Signal intention to turn well in advance of turn. C. Both the approach for a right turn and the right turn itself shall be made as close as practical to the left edge of the right turn lane. D. Observe traffic controls before attempting to make right turn. E. Check cross traffic on your bus's left and if there is a line of traffic, wait for a gap of sufficient size before proceeding. F. Check cross traffic to right to make sure vehicles are blocking passage in intended lane. G. Check right arrow. **PROCEDURE – TURN** A. Enter travel lane nearest curb, turning sharply enough to avoiding blocking the left lane.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	B. When making turn, use the hand-over-hand technique and turn the steering wheel all the way to the right, if needed. C. Avoid shifting gears or using hands for any other activities other than steering while turning. D. Check mirrors for clearance of right rear duals as you turn. E. Check mirrors on left to ascertain that pivot point is clear. F. Accelerate slightly out of turn. G. Steering recovery should be done using hand-over-hand technique (explain tracking). H. After turn has been completed, check to see that directional signal has been cancelled. I. Adjust vehicle speed to conditions.
THE DRIVER WILL STATE THE REGULATIONS REGARDING RIGHT TURNS.	**REGULATIONS – RIGHT TURNS** Both the approach for a right turn and a right turn itself shall be made as close as practical to the right curb or edge of roadway. (For school buses, this is the far left side of the right turn lane – watch pivot point). Vehicular traffic facing a steady red signal, after stopping before entering the crosswalk or stop line, shall not make a right turn on a red light from a one-way or two-way street into a two-way street or into a one-way street carrying traffic in direction of the right turn. The vehicular traffic shall yield right-of-way to pedestrians

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	lawfully within an adjacent crosswalk and to other traffic lawfully using intersection. A right turn on red in a school bus is not a wise move because of the time element. It is felt that the benefits of such a turn are far outweighed by the additional chances that a driver must take. **As a result, a right turn on red is not recommended in a Kentucky school bus.**
THE DRIVER WILL DESCRIBE, IN CORRECT SEQUENCE, THE PROCEDURE FOR MAKING A LEFT TURN AT AN INTERSECTION.	**<u>INTERSECTIONS – LEFT TURN</u>** **PROCEDURE – APPROACH** A. Observe traffic controls before making turn. B. Check mirrors. C. Signal intention to turn well in advance of intersection. D. Reduce speed of bus. E. Check cross traffic and wait until there is a sufficient gap in traffic from left and right before proceeding to turn. F. Observe traffic and pedestrians for clear way to make turn. G. Yield to oncoming traffic. H. Check right mirrors to ascertain that pivot point is clear.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	PROCEDURE – TURN A. When making a turn, use hand-over-hand technique and turn the steering wheel all the way to the left, if needed. B. Avoid shifting gears or using hands for any activities other than steering while making the turn. C. Steering recovery should be done using hand-over-hand technique (explain tracking). D. Enter lane to right of center line or the closest lane from the direction of the turn. E. When turning onto a one-way street, turn into left lane unless otherwise marked. F. Check to be sure that directional signal has been cancelled after completing the turn. G. Adjust speed to conditions.
THE DRIVER WILL STATE THE REGULATIONS REGARDING LEFT TURNS.	**REGULATIONS – LEFT TURN** A. To make a left turn, move into lane next to the center line or into "left-turn only" lane. On one-way street, enter the left (curb) lane. B. When turning into one-way street or highway, drive into lane to right of centerline. When turning into one-way street, turn into left lane. C. Vehicular traffic facing steady red signal, after stopping before entering crosswalk or stop line, may legally make a left turn from a one-way on a one-way road carrying traffic in the

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	direction of the left turn unless prohibited by sign, signal, marking, light or other traffic control device. **This is not recommended in a Kentucky school bus.** Vehicular traffic shall yield the right-of-way to pedestrians lawfully within adjacent crosswalk and to other traffic lawfully using intersection.
	URBAN (CITY) DRIVING SKILLS
	STUDENT INTRODUCTION
	Urban traffic demands a high level of concentration on the part of the bus driver, due to the high number of events occurring in the driving environment. You can expect more traffic conflicts, pedestrian and cycle interaction, and more complex maneuvers, than in any other area.
THE DRIVER WILL IDENTIFY THOSE TECHNIQUES WHICH WILL ENABLE HIM/HER TO APPROACH A TUNNEL OR BRIDGE SAFELY.	**TUNNEL OR BRIDGE** **PROCEDURES – APPROACH** A. Slow down for better control. B. Remain to the right to provide clearance with traffic in adjacent lane. C. Look for signs regarding: o lane availability and usage; o clearance; o load limit; o speed limit and passing restrictions; and/or o use of lights in a tunnel.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
THE DRIVER WILL STATE THOSE TECHNIQUES WHICH WILL ENABLE HIM/HER TO DRIVE THROUGH A TUNNEL OR ACROSS A BRIDGE SAFELY.	**PROCEDURES – TRAVEL** **THROUGH OR ACROSS** A. Observe other traffic and lane side structures. B. Remove sunglasses in tunnel, if worn. C. Adjust speed to grade changes and observe speedometer frequently. D. Stop only if traffic flow required it or if emergency exists. E. Turn lights on in tunnel, if necessary.
THE DRIVER WILL STATE THOSE TECHNIQUES WHICH WILL ENABLE HIM/HER TO LEAVE A TUNNEL OR BRIDGE SAFELY.	**PROCEDURES – EXITING TUNNEL OR BRIDGE** A. Observe posted signs regarding exit information and speed limit. B. Turn off lights upon leaving tunnel during daylight hours. C. Be prepared for wind bursts when existing the tunnel.
THE DRIVER WILL DESCRIBE, IN CORRECT SEQUENCE, THE PROCEDURE FOR ENTERING A MAIN ROADWAY FROM AN ENTRANCE RAMP.	**<u>MERGING</u>** **PROCEDURE – APPROACH** A. When approaching an entrance ramp, observe information signs indicating correct lane or ramp usage, speed, lights and warning. B. When entering an entrance ramp, check for: o an acceleration lane at the end of the entrance ramp; o exit ramp which shares portion of entrance ramp;

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	o observe entrance ramp/main roadway configuration to aid in judging merging distance and pattern; o check mirrors carefully; o glance back briefly and quickly over left shoulder to check location and speed of traffic on main roadway; o check location and speed of load vehicles on entrance ramp acceleration lane; o make initial speed adjustment based on entrance ramp/roadway configuration and traffic conditions; and o prepare to enter the acceleration lane.
THE DRIVER WILL LIST, IN CORRECT SEQUENCE, THE STEPS FOR MERGING.	**PROCEDURE – ENTRANCE** A. Check mirrors. B. Signal intention to merge. C. **Glance** back to check for gap in merging lane. (If merging from right, glance over left shoulder.) D. Adjust speed as necessary to merge safely. E. Try to maintain same speed as the traffic with which you are merging. F. Recheck traffic in merging lane with mirrors and head check. G. Merge with traffic. H. Adjust speed to traffic.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
THE DRIVER WILL LIST, IN CORRECT SEQUENCE, THE STEPS FOR EXITING A MAIN ROADWAY ON AN EXIT RAMP.	**<u>ROADWAY EXITING</u>** **PROCEDURE – APPROACH** A. Look for correct exit. B. Check mirrors. C. Move into proper lane. D. Watch for deceleration lane. E. Check mirror. F. Signal intention to turn. **PROCEDURE – EXIT** A. Reduce speed on deceleration lane, not before, if possible to do so. B. Watch for exit ramp speed limit sign. C. When deceleration lane is part of acceleration lane, watch for entering vehicles. D. Observe speed limit signs. E. Drive in center of appropriate lane and stay clear of barriers. F. Watch for other vehicles changing lanes. G. Observe signs on cross roadways, giving information on alternate destinations. H. Check speed. I. When nearing end of exit ramp, slow down and prepare to stop. Watch for traffic that may be stopped or waiting in line at the end of ramp.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
THE DRIVER WILL DESCRIBE THOSE TECHNIQUES WHICH WILL ENABLE HIM/HER TO SAFELY NEGOTIATE TRAFFIC CIRCLES.	**<u>TRAFFIC CIRCLES</u>** **TECHNIQUES – NEGOTIATION** A. Enter traffic circle in counter-clockwise direction, if appropriate. B. Yield to vehicles already in the circle. C. Remain in outer lane at a consistent speed. D. Maintain a slow speed.
THE DRIVER WILL LIST, IN CORRECT SEQUENCE, THE STEPS FOR CHANGING LANES. **ONE OF THE MOST DIFFICULT MANEUVERS.** **THE DRIVER WILL STATE THE REGULATION REGARDING LANE CHANGING.**	**<u>LANE CHANGING</u>** **PROCEDURE – PREPARATION** A. Signal intention to change lanes. B. Check mirrors to see if other vehicles are about to enter your new lane. C. Check for vehicles in blind spots with convex (fender) mirrors. D. Head check for blind spots (to left only). E. Maintain constant, steady speed throughout lane change. **PROCEDURE – ACTUAL CHANGE** A. Turn steering wheel sufficiently to slowly enter new lane. B. Position bus in center of new lane. C. Check to see that directional signal is cancelled. D. Check mirror upon completion. E. Adjust speed to that of traffic in new lane.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
THE DRIVER WILL IDENTIFY CONDITIONS WHICH MIGHT WARRANT A LANE CHANGE.	**REGULATIONS REGARDING LANE CHANGES** The driver of any vehicle upon a highway, before stopping or turning from a direct line shall signal intended movement. Do not change lanes when prohibited by regulatory signs, or when solid yellow line is on your side of highway markings.
THE DRIVER WILL IDENTIFY CONDITIONS WHICH MIGHT WARRANT A LANE CHANGE.	**SOME CONDITIONS DETERMINING LANE CHANGES** A. When a lane is blocked by another vehicle. B. Collision. C. Detour. D. Road construction. E. Slow moving vehicle. F. Cyclists and pedestrians. G. Road defects. H. Debris in lane. Lane changing is one of the most dangerous and difficult maneuvers that a driver can make. Change lanes only when absolutely necessary.
THE DRIVER WILL LIST, IN CORRECT SEQUENCE, THE STEPS FOR SAFELY PASSING ANOTHER VEHICLE.	**<u>PASSING</u>** **PROCEDURE – PREPARATION** Using rear-view mirrors, check to be sure that traffic following a bus is clear for passing. On a two-lane road, check for oncoming traffic and traffic signals.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	Bus drivers should have a minimum of fifteen seconds visual lead time to activate turn signals well in advance of passing. **PROCEDURE – ACTUAL PASS** A. Move into passing lane, endeavor to maintain a constant speed. B. Check for clearance and signal before returning to original lane. **PROCEDURE – RETURN TO ORIGINAL LANE** A. Move into original lane. B. Cancel turn signal. C. Check mirrors upon completion. D. Maintain safe and authorized speed. **TIMES WHEN PASSING ON LEFT IS PERMITTED** A. When overtaking other traffic moving in same direction where passing is allowed and safe. B. When right half of road is blocked. Yield to oncoming traffic. C. When using a street with two or more lanes for one-way traffic, and when there is slower traffic in right lane.
THE DRIVER WILL STATE THE SITUATIONS WHEN PASSING ON THE LEFT IS PROHIBITED.	**TIMES WHEN PASSING ON LEFT IS PROHIBITED** A. When approaching crest of a hill on a two-way roadway or a curve in highway where the driver's view is obstructed.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	B. When view is obstructed upon approaching within 100 feet of any bridge, viaduct or tunnel. C. When there is oncoming traffic close enough to be a danger. D. When there is a solid line in your lane. E. When there is a no passing sign.
THE DRIVER WILL STATE THE SITUATIONS WHEN PASSING ON THE RIGHT IS PERMITTED	**TIMES WHEN PASSING ON RIGHT IS PERMITTED** A. When vehicle being overtaken is making a left turn if you do not leave the existing roadway. B. When two or more lanes of traffic are moving in the same direction.
THE DRIVER WILL STATE THE SITUATION WHEN PASSING ON THE RIGHT IS PROHIBITED. **NOTE: A BRIEF DISCUSSION OF EACH TASK AND EXERCISE SHALL BE GIVEN TO THE CLASS.**	**PASSING ON RIGHT PROHIBITED** A. When passing movement causes vehicle to drive off of pavement or main traveled portion of the existing roadway. B. You should not leave the existing roadway to pass on the right.
IN CONDUCTING THE IN-BUS MANEUVERS AND ROAD WORK EVALUATION, THE EVALUATOR SHOULD RIDE IN THE RIGHT FRONT SEAT IN ORDER TO HAVE A GOOD VIEW OF DRIVER ACTIONS. MATERIALS NEEDED ARE A CLIPBOARD, PEN AND THE EVALUATION CHECKLIST. NO OTHER INDIVIDUALS EXCEPT DRIVER AND EVALUATOR SHOULD BE ON THE BUS DURING THE DRIVER REVIEW I AND II PHASE OF BEHIND THE WHEEL TRAINING.	In setting up the in-bus driving, extreme care should be given to selecting the various roads which will be traveled and the places along the route where the evaluations will be made. The driver training instructor must be fully aware of the various events which will take place along the route so that an accurate evaluation of driver performance can be made. Drivers being evaluated should at all times follow the law and good driving

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	procedures. The evaluator must give instructions to the driver in sufficient time for the driver to lawfully execute the commands and comply with instructions.
IN SETTING UP THE IN-BUS MANEUVERS AND ROADWORK, THE FOLLOWING MUST BE CONSIDERED AND INCLUDED: **1. COURSE LENGTH SHOULD BE 20-25 MILES OR LONGER.** **2. DRIVER COURSE SEVERAL TIMES TO GET AN IDEA OF THE TRAFFIC CONDITIONS WHICH WILL EXIST AT THE TIME THE TEST WILL BE GIVEN.**	The "Behind-the-Wheel" (BTW) driving is composed of: 1. Vehicle Operation (minimum 3 hours) 2. Vehicle-At-Speed (minimum 1 hour) 3. Bus Route Identification, Route Review and Instruction (minimum 2 hours) 4. Driver Review I (minimum 2 hours) 5. Driver Review II (minimum 2 hours) 6. Driver Review III (minimum 1 hour) **NOTE: SEE CHAPTER 2 FOR FURTHER EXPLANATION.**

7/02

NAME: _____ DATE: _____

VEHICLE OPERATION
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

KEY

1. _____ In rural driving, there is usually more dense traffic than in urban driving.

2. _____ Maximum speed limit for Kentucky school buses is determined by the Kentucky State Police.

3. _____ A school bus driver should periodically check the speedometer, at least every twelve (12) seconds.

4. _____ Fatigue is not one of the determining factors in increasing your following distance.

5. _____ "Blowing out of a curve" is another way of saying "maintaining a space cushion."

6. _____ A Kentucky school bus driver should never make more than one (1) stop at an intersection as it could confuse other drivers.

7. _____ The brown color on a highway sign indicates public recreation area.

8. _____ A flashing yellow light means come to a complete stop, then continue on with caution.

9. _____ Yellow lines separate traffic going in the opposite direction.

10. _____ White lines separate traffic going in the same direction.

INSTRUCTOR'S SIGNATURE:_____DATE: _____

VEHICLE OPERATION
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

KEY

The answer key is only released to KDE endorsed trainers.

CHAPTER 7
LOADING AND UNLOADING

LOADING AND UNLOADING

LESSON TOPIC

LOADING AND UNLOADING

OBJECTIVE:

The driver will be able to:

- explain the proper behavior for students while waiting for the school bus; and
- perform necessary and safe actions for loading/unloading passengers.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

INTRODUCTION

Each year, several fatalities occur at, or near, school bus stops across the country. In a recent school year (2001-2002), thirteen (13) such fatalities occurred in the following order:

1. seven (7) along the side of the bus;
2. three (3) in front of the bus; and
3. three (3) in the back of the bus.

The tragic loss of life in a loading or unloading incident receives less media attention than an incident that takes many lives at one time, however, it is just as painful to family, friends and loved ones.

The sequence described in this chapter for loading and unloading students should be used by all Kentucky State Certified Driver Training Instructors when training drivers in order to keep consistency throughout the state.

The transported student is in the greatest danger while waiting, boarding and exiting a school bus. The driver of the school bus must follow proper procedures in order to give the most reasonable and safe protection to those school students for which he/she is responsible.

In this unit, we will be dealing with student behavior at school bus stops and proper loading and unloading procedures in various situations.

LOADING PROCEDURE

The following step-by-step sequence should be used when loading students:

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	LOADING
	APPROACH
	STEP 1. VISUAL SCAN
	STEP 2. TAP BRAKES
	STEP 3. VISUAL SCAN
	STEP 4. WARNING LIGHTS
	STOP
	STEP 5. SET PARK BRAKE
	STEP 6. GEAR
	STEP 7. VISUAL SCAN
	STEP 8. STOP ARM, RED LOADING LIGHTS AND CROSSING GATE, IF EQUIPPED.
	LOADING
	STEP 9. VISUAL SCAN
	STEP 10. OPEN SERVICE DOOR
	STEP 11. HANDRAIL
	STEP 12. “COUNT” AND GREET STUDENTS
	STEP 13. SEATING
	DOOR
	STEP 14. VISUAL SCAN
	STEP 15. CLOSE SERVICE DOOR
	STEP 16. PLACE INTO PROPER GEAR
	STEP 17. RELEASE PARK BRAKE
	STEP 18. VISUAL SCAN

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	UNLOADING
	APPROACH
	VISUAL SCAN – STEP 1
	Perform a visual scan – look for pedestrians and vehicular traffic – as you reduce your speed. Check mirrors.
	TAP BRAKES – STEP 2
	Lightly apply service brake in order to activate the brake lights to warn motorists of your intended stop. Should tap brake three to five times.
	VISUAL SCAN – STEP 3
	Perform a visual scan – looking for pedestrians or vehicular traffic that may converge on the loading area. Check mirrors.
	WARNING LIGHTS – STEP 4
	Activate the warning lights one hundred and fifty to two hundred feet (150’ – 200’), which is four to six bus lengths, from the loading area. Check the yellow indicator light to ensure warning lights are operating.
	STOP
	SET PARK BRAKE – STEP 5
	Bring the bus to a complete stop ten feet (10’) from the nearest student. Set the park brake.
	GEAR – STEP 6
	Place gear selector in park or neutral.
	VISUAL SCAN – STEP 7
	Perform a visual scan for pedestrians and vehicular traffic. Check mirrors.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
REVIEW KRS 189.375 (SCHOOL BUS STOP SIGNALING DEVICE; USE; STOPPING REGULATED). USE OVERHEAD.	**STOP ARM, RED LOADING LIGHTS AND CROSSING GATE, IF EQUIPPED** When safe to do so, activate the red loading lights by activating the stop arm (150' – 200' before stop). Check the red indicator light to ensure the red loading lights are operating. Visually check to see that the stop arm and crossing gate, if equipped, has opened out. **<u>LOADING</u>** **VISUAL SCAN – STEP 9** Perform a visual scan to ensure all vehicular traffic has stopped. Check mirrors. **OPEN SERVICE DOOR – STEP 10** Students shall board the bus in an orderly manner. All students must wait until the bus arrives at the stop and driver signals the student(s) to board. Those students who must cross the road shall do so at least ten to fifteen feet (10' – 15') in front of the bus. **Every effort shall be made to eliminate students crossing the road.** **HANDRAIL – STEP 11** Students shall use the handrail as they board the bus if needed. **COUNT STUDENTS – STEP 12** The bus driver shall "<u>count" and greet</u> the students as they board the bus. **SEATING – STEP 13** Students shall go directly to their seats after boarding the bus.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	DOOR
	VISUAL SCAN – STEP 14
	The driver shall perform a visual scan to ensure that all students have boarded the bus – checking the danger zone around the bus for pedestrian and vehicular traffic. Check mirrors.
	SERVICE DOOR – STEP 15
	After the driver ascertains that it is safe to do so, he/she may close the service door. The driver shall double check the step-well to ensure that no students are stuck in the door, handrail, etc.
	GEAR – STEP 16
	The driver shall then place the gear selector in proper gear.
	PARK BRAKE – STEP 17
	With his/her foot on the service brake, the driver may release the park brake.
	VISUAL SCAN – STEP 18
	The driver shall perform another visual scan of pedestrian and vehicular traffic. Check mirrors. When safe to do so, proceed.
	UNLOADING
	The following sequence shall be used when unloading students:
	APPROACH
	STEP 1. VISUAL SCAN
	STEP 2. TAP BRAKES

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
INSTRUCTOR SHOULD POINT OUT THAT ONE THIRD OF ALL STEPS ARE PERFORMING VISUAL SCANS.	STEP 3. VISUAL SCAN STEP 4. WARNING LIGHTS **STOP** STEP 5. PARK BRAKE STEP 6. GEAR STEP 7. VISUAL SCAN STEP 8. STOP ARM RED LOADING LIGHTS AND CROSSING GATES, IF EQUIPPED **EXIT** STEP 9. VISUAL SCAN STEP 10. OPEN DOOR STEP 11. COUNT STUDENTS STEP 12. HANDRAIL STEP 13. ALL CLEAR **DOOR** STEP 14. CLOSE DOOR STEP 15. VISUAL SCAN STEP 16. GEAR STEP 17. PARK BRAKE STEP 18. VISUAL SCAN **APPROACH – EXPLANATIONS** **VISUAL SCAN – STEP 1** Perform a visual scan – look for pedestrian and vehicular traffic – reducing speed. Check mirrors.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	TAP BRAKES – STEP 2 Lightly apply the service brake (three to five times) in order to activate the brake lights to warn motorists of your intention to stop. **VISUAL SCAN – STEP 3** Perform a visual scan for pedestrian or vehicular traffic that may converge into the loading area. Check mirrors. **WARNING LIGHTS – STEP 4** Activate the warning lights one hundred and fifty to two hundred feet (150' to 200') which is four to six (4-6) bus lengths, from the loading area. Check yellow/amber indicator light to ensure that the warning lights are operating. **STOP** **PARK BRAKE – STEP 5** Bring bus to complete stop – set park brake. **GEAR – STEP 6** Place the gear selector in park or neutral. **VISUAL SCAN – STEP 7** Perform a visual scan of pedestrian and vehicular traffic. Check mirrors. **STOP ARM, RED LOADING LIGHTS AND CROSSING GATE, IF EQUIPPED – STEP 8** When safe to do so, activate the red loading lights by activating the stop arm. Check the red indicator light to ensure the red loading lights are operating. Visually check to see that the stop arm and crossing gate, if

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	equipped, has opened out. **<u>EXIT</u>** **VISUAL SCAN – STEP 9** Perform a visual scan, making sure that all traffic has come to a complete stop. Check mirrors. **OPEN SERVICE DOOR –STEP 10** When safe to do so, open the service door all the way. **COUNT – STEP 11** Count the students as they exit the bus. All students must wait until the driver signals him/her to exit the bus. If a student must cross the road, he/she must cross ten to fifteen feet (10' to 15') in front of the bus **after being signaled to cross by the school bus driver.** **HANDRAIL – STEP 12** Students shall use the handrail as they exit the bus. The driver shall be sure that no student has snagged any object or piece of clothing in the handrail. **ALL CLEAR – STEP 13** The driver shall ascertain, by <u>count</u> and visual scan of the danger zone around the bus, that all students have safely cleared the roadway. **<u>DOOR</u>** **CLOSE DOOR – STEP 14** When safe to do so, the driver will close the service door. The driver shall double check the step-well to insure that no students are stuck in the door, handrail, etc.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	VISUAL SCAN – STEP 15 The driver shall perform a visual scan of pedestrian and vehicular traffic. Check mirrors. **GEAR – STEP 16** When safe to do so, the driver will place the gear selector in the proper gear position. **PARK BRAKE – STEP 17** With foot on service brake, the driver will release the park brake. **VISUAL SCAN – STEP 18** Driver shall perform a visual scan of traffic and check mirrors. When safe to do, proceed with route. **<u>LOADING</u>** Following is the summarization of the step-by-step procedures. Loading students at the bus stop should be done in the following manner: 1. Slow down well in advance of the designated stop. Perform a visual scan. Tap the service brake three to five times to activate the brake lights and alert motorists of your intention to stop. Perform a visual scan to include mirrors. 2. Activate the yellow-amber warning lights at least one hundred fifty to two hundred feet (four to six bus lengths) from the loading zone. Check the yellow/amber indicator light to ensure that the lights are functioning properly.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	3. When the bus has completely stopped, set the park brake, place the transmission selector in park or neutral, perform a visual scan to include mirrors and activate the stop arm, red flashing loading and crossing gate if equipped. The driver shall check the red indicator light to ensure the red loading are operating and the stop arm has opened out. Continue performing a visual scan. **<u>NOTE:</u> THE STOP ARM SHALL BE USED AT ALL TIMES WHEN LOADING OR UNLOADING STUDENTS. THIS INCLUDES WHILE ON SCHOOL PROPERTY.** 4. Stop back from loading zone ten feet (10'), and have the students walk to the bus. 5. A bus driver should not stop a school bus within an intersection or within thirty feet (30') of any flashing beacon, stop sign or traffic control signal located at the side of a roadway. 6. Make sure all traffic has stopped before loading. You should continue to be aware of the traffic environment while loading the students (visual scan). 7. Students who live on the opposite side of the roadway from the bus stop are not to cross the roadway until the bus arrives on the scene, stops

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	traffic with lights and the stop arm and the driver signals to cross at a distance of ten to fifteen feet (10' – 15') in front of the bus. The driver and students shall have eye contact until the road crossing is complete. 8. When loading students set the parking brake and place the transmission in park or neutral. 9. When buses are being loaded or unloaded, the driver shall be on the bus. 10. While a school bus is parked to load or unload students, another school bus should not pass. School bus drivers should set the example for all other drivers. <u>This includes when the bus is on school grounds.</u> 11. Students should enter the bus in an orderly manner. They should use the handrail when loading. Do not allow students to push, shove or carry unauthorized objects aboard. **NOTE: BEWARE OF CLOTHING AND/OR ACCESSORIES THAT MAY GET CAUGHT IN THE HANDRAIL AREA PRIOR TO PROCEEDING.** 12. Make sure students are properly seated, then close the door, canceling the stop arm and lights. With foot on service brake, perform a visual scan of traffic and of the danger zone around the bus.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	Place the bus in proper gear and, when safe to do so, release the park brake and proceed while continuing to perform a visual scan. **NOTE: STUDENTS ARE TO REMAIN SEATED AT ALL TIMES.** **<u>UNLOADING</u>** 1. Reduce speed well in advance of the designated stop as you perform a visual scan. Tap the service brake three to five times to activate brake lights and alert motorists of your intention to stop while continuing to perform a visual scan of pedestrian and vehicular traffic including checking the mirrors. 2. Activate the warning lights at least one hundred fifty to two hundred feet (150' to 200'), which is four to six bus lengths, from the unloading zone. Check the indicator light to ensure the warning lights are operating. 3. When the bus has completely stopped, the driver shall set the park brake; place the transmission in park or neutral; perform a visual scan of traffic; and, when safe to do so, activate the stop arm, red flashing loading lights and crossing gate if equipped. The driver shall check the red indicator light to ensure that the red loading lights are

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	functioning and also visually check that the stop arm has opened out. **<u>NOTE:</u> THE STOP ARM SHALL BE USED AT ALL TIMES WHEN LOADING OR UNLOADING STUDENTS. THIS INCLUDES WHILE ON SCHOOL PROPERTY.** 4. Students should remain seated until the bus comes to a complete stop. You should not stop a bus within an intersection or within thirty feet (30') of any flashing beacon, stop sign or traffic control signal located at the side of a roadway. 5. The driver shall perform a visual traffic scan, including mirrors, and when safe to do so, open the service door. 6. The driver shall not permit the student(s) to exit the bus until traffic has come to a complete stop. The driver should then continue to be aware of the traffic environment while unloading the students. 7. Students should exit the bus in an orderly manner. They should use the handrail when unloading. Do not allow the students to push or shove. Check the stepwell and service area outside the bus to ensure that no student is caught in the handrail or in the service door area by clothing, backpack strings or straps, etc. 8. When buses are being loaded or unloaded, the driver shall be on the bus.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	9. While a school bus is parked to load or unload students, other school buses should not pass. School bus drivers should set the example for all other drivers. **This includes during the time the bus is parked on school grounds.** 10. Do not permit the pupils to get off any place except their regular stop unless they have written permission, authorized with the signature of the school administrator and proper date and time. 11. Count students as they leave (and enter) the bus and visually check again before you pull away. Check all mirrors to see if students have cleared the roadway and that the danger zone area around the bus is free of pedestrians. You must be sure you are clear to leave the bus stop without endangering any students. 12. Students who live on the opposite side of the roadway shall wait for the driver to signal when it is safe to cross the roadway. The student(s) shall cross ten to fifteen feet (10' – 15') in front of the bus, in order to have eye contact with the driver until the roadway crossing is complete. 13. Every effort must be made to eliminate students crossing any roadways. KRS 189.375 states in part, "however, No driver shall stop a school bus or church bus and allow it to remain standing for the purpose of discharging passengers to the

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	opposite side of the road on a highway of four (4) or more lanes, provided that this provision does not prohibit the discharging of passengers at a marked pedestrian crossing."
	BUS STOP BEHAVIOR
	Most fatalities occur outside of the school bus. Darkness in the early morning and active youngsters waiting for the school bus combine to make this time of day especially dangerous. It is a school bus driver's duty, at the earliest possible opportunity in the beginning of the school year, to instruct his/her students on how and where to wait for a school bus. A student waiting for the school bus should:
	1. Arrive five minutes before time his/her bus is to arrive. The bus driver cannot wait. 2. Wait well away from the street or road. 3. Wait on the side of the street on which the student(s) lives. The student(s) should not cross the street until the bus comes to a complete stop, traffic in both directions is controlled and the driver signals the student(s) to cross. The student(s) shall cross in front of the bus at a distance approximately ten to fifteen feet (10' – 15') in order for the driver to see him/her, signal the student and maintain eye contact until the road crossing is complete.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	4. Respect the property of others; avoid walking on the grass, throwing trash down, picking flowers, damaging shrubs, etc. 5. Keep belongings out of the roadway. **NOTE: IF A STUDENT SHOULD DROP AN OBJECT IN THE ROADWAY, HE/SHE SHOULD <u>NEVER</u> STOP AND PICK IT UP UNTIL THE DRIVER IS MADE AWARE AND GIVES PERMISSION.** 6. Avoid loud behavior. Proper behavior is expected at all times. 7. Line up in a single line, well away from the street (at least two big steps from the curb) when the bus is sighted. 8. Approach the bus after it stops and board in an orderly manner, after the driver's signal, using the handrail. 9. Go immediately to his/her seat and sit down facing forward. The bus driver cannot start the bus until everyone is seated.
REVIEW KRS 189.370 (PASSING STOPPED SCHOOL OR CHURCH BUS PROHIBITED.) REVIEW EXCEPTIONS. USE OVERHEAD. **REVIEW 702 KAR 5:080. USE OVERHEADS.**	The bus driver has the responsibility of controlling traffic while loading and unloading the students on his/her bus. He/she has to minimize the risks involved with their loading. To do this, he/she must correctly follow the aforementioned guidelines.

7/02

NAME: _____ DATE: _____

LOADING AND UNLOADING TEST
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

1. _____ Consistency is of primary importance when teaching loading and unloading procedures.

2. _____ The transported student is in the greatest danger while riding on the school bus.

3. _____ The parking brake need not be set every time when loading or unloading since the service brake is being used.

4. _____ The yellow warning lights should be activated one hundred and fifty to two hundred feet (150’ – 200’) from the loading area.

5. _____ When loading, all students should line up, two abreast, in a straight line.

6. _____ Since the service brake is used when unloading students, the gear selector should not be moved.

7. _____ Stop arms need not be used on school grounds.

8. _____ Students who must cross the roadway should cross ten to fifteen feet (10’-15’) in front of the bus.

9. _____ Crossing gates should not be used on school grounds.

10. _____ If a student should drop an object in the roadway, he/she should never stop and pick it up until the driver is made aware and gives permission.

INSTRUCTOR’S SIGNATURE: _____DATE: _____

LOADING AND UNLOADING TEST
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

KEY

The answer key is only released to KDE endorsed trainers.

INSTRUCTOR'S SIGNATURE: _____DATE: _____

CHAPTER 8
DRIVING FUNDAMENTALS

DRIVING FUNDAMENTALS

LESSON TOPIC:

DRIVING FUNDAMENTALS

OBJECTIVES:

- To give bus driver candidates an overview of their responsibilities while driving a school bus.
- To give drivers the correct procedures for safely and efficiently driving a school bus.
- To evaluate the drivers' ability to handle a school bus.
- To evaluate the drivers' knowledge of school bus operations.
- To give drivers the needed practice to enable them to operate a school bus safely and efficiently in accordance with applicable laws and regulations.

PERFORMANCE STANDARDS:

Drivers will demonstrate their ability to apply all the knowledge and skills gained during the instructional phase of this unit by successfully completing the over-the-road test with a minimum proficiency of 80% and scoring 80% or more on the written exam.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
INTRODUCE THE UNIT AND GIVE OVERVIEW BEFORE BEGINNING THE INSTRUCTIONAL PORTION OF THE UNIT.	**<u>INTRODUCTION</u>** In the past, accidents involving school buses were caused by the school bus driver in about 50% of the cases. Proper driving fundamentals were not followed in many of these incidents. School bus drivers have been entrusted with a most precious cargo – our children. A great responsibility is assumed by an individual who becomes a school bus driver. The purpose of this unit is to give the school bus driver the knowledge and skills necessary to safely transport our precious cargo. You will teach the correct and proper procedures for all facets of school bus driving. Drivers will practice the basic driving skills until they become proficient in each skill. Drivers will be evaluated not only by a written test, but by a performance test as well. These tests are designed to ensure that they possess and can correctly apply all these skills and procedures necessary for safe and efficient school bus operation. Through practice, each procedure will become habit and will improve their performance as a school bus driver. This unit will cover:
SHOW SLIDE OR OVERHEAD PRESENTATION. PREPARE SLIDES, LISTING ITEMS #1-#13 AND BRIEFLY DISCUSS EACH ITEM.	1. getting ready to drive; 2. characteristics of a school bus; 3. starting the engine; 4. use of transmissions; 5. steering and turning the bus; 6. stopping, starting the bus;

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	7. parking the bus; 8. use of mirrors; 9. danger zone; 10. backing the bus; 11. crossing railroads; 12. maneuvering the bus; and a. enter flow of traffic b. adjusting speed of bus c. lane use and position of roadway d. being overtaken and passed e. overtaking and passing f. following a bus 13. speed and traffic laws. a. crossing an intersection b. turning on red c. traffic control devices and signs
	<u>GETTING READY TO DRIVE</u> The first objective we will discuss is getting ready to drive. There are several tasks which a driver must complete in order to get ready to drive a school bus. To many of you, these might seem very simple and should not be given any attention. After all, doesn't everybody know how to start a motor vehicle?
EMPHASIZE ATTENTION TO DETAIL. NEGLECT OF LITTLE THINGS CAUSES BIGGER PROBLEMS.	We will discuss all the little things which must be considered in order to properly drive a school bus. If you take care of the little things, the big things will take care of themselves.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	Before a driver is ready to drive a school bus, you, the Driver Training Instructor, must see that the following tasks have been accomplished: 1. A good bus driver positions himself in control. The driver must be in a position to be able to reach and operate the controls in comfort and see all the way around the bus. A driver shall use his/her right foot only when driving a bus equipped with an automatic transmission. 2. The seat must be adjusted so that the driver's feet can operate the brake pedal, clutch, accelerator and light dimmer switch easily. 3. All mirrors must be adjusted for optimum vision of traffic behind the bus, to both sides and across the front of the bus. 4. Driver must fasten and adjust seat belt. 5. If bus is unfamiliar, go through shift pattern with clutch depressed if the bus has a manual transmission.
FOR #4, EXPLAIN THAT SEAT IS A PEDESTAL-TYPE SEAT AND THAT THE DRIVER CAN BE KNOCKED OR THROWN OUT OF THIS SEAT VERY EASILY. DRIVER OUT OF SEAT – OUT OF CONTROL. **FOR #5, ALSO MENTION AUTOMATIC SHIFTING.** **POINT OUT THE GENERAL SIMILARITIES BETWEEN DRIVING A CAR AND A SCHOOL BUS. PROVIDE OR ASK FOR SPECIFIC EXAMPLES FROM CLASS. CONFIRM OR CORRECT THE EXAMPLES.** **ALSO POINT OUT DIFFERENCES BETWEEN DRIVING A CAR AND A SCHOOL BUS. PROVIDE, AS WELL AS ASK FOR, EXAMPLES.**	When driving a school bus, drivers will be handling a vehicle that is much larger than the vehicle many of them are accustomed to driving. What are some of the similarities between a car and a school bus? (ANSWER: DRIVER MUST OBEY RULES OF ROAD, HAS SAME MECHANICAL PARTS – MOTOR, BRAKES, ETC.) What are some of

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
SHOW SLIDE OR OVERHEAD WITH #1 - #7 ON IT. EMPHASIZE THAT 35-PASSENGER BUSES ARE SUBJECT TO BEING TOP HEAVY, ESPECIALLY WHEN DRIVING AT SPEEDS ABOVE 45 MPH.	the differences between a car and a school bus? (ANSWER: WIDER TURNING RADIUS, GREATER STOPPING DISTANCE, HANDLING IS CHANGED BY SIZE AND WEIGHT, ETC.) The major differences between a car and a school bus are: 1. A bus is longer and heavier. 2. A bus is higher and wider, requiring more clearance than that for a car. 3. A bus has slower acceleration. 4. A bus requires longer stopping distance. 5. Buses take more room to turn (wider turning radius). 6. Bus drivers must rely more on mirrors for adequate rear, side and, in some instances, front views. 7. Buses have a pivot point when turning which causes the rear of the bus to swing wide out of its lane into the next lane.
EMPHASIZE THAT OTHERS SEEING YOU BETTER MAKES IT MOST IMPORTANT THAT, AS A SCHOOL BUS DRIVER, YOU OPERATE YOUR BUS IN A VERY PROPER AND SAFE MANNER.	There are some advantages associated with driving an oversized vehicle such as a school bus. The height gives a better view of traffic ahead and a better chance to avoid incidents. Other drivers can see you better and the height offers protection in case of an incident. The disadvantages are that the vehicle is more susceptible to tipping and has a greater chance of hitting an overhead obstruction. We can compensate for that

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
EMPHASIZE THE NEED TO KNOW THE CHARACTERISTICS OF EACH BUS.	additional height by being alert, adjusting speed, changing lane position and using added caution. We must watch for traffic condition changes twelve (12) to fifteen (15) seconds ahead of time. The weight of a full-sized, empty bus is approximately 12,000 pounds and weighs about 20,000 pounds when loaded with sixty-four (64) passengers. This weight has an effect on our ability to stop and we should be careful to avoid panic stops. To avoid panic stops, we must plan ahead, slow down sooner and drive defensively. The width of a bus is 96" – two (2) feet wider than a standard car and occupying 1/3 more lane space than a standard-sized vehicle. To compensate for added width, we must plan ahead and adjust speed accordingly. We must be fully aware of all the characteristics of each bus we drive because, even though all buses are similar, they have individual characteristics for which we must compensate. A school bus driver's prime responsibility is to deliver our precious cargo safely to their destinations. Knowing how the bus handles and knowing its characteristics will enable us to accomplish this task.
EMPHASIZE THE NEED FOR BEING THOROUGHLY FAMILIAR WITH EACH CONTROL, GAUGE AND SWITCH TO INCLUDE WHAT IT DOES AND HOW TO DETERMINE IF SWITCH, GAUGE OR CONTROL IS FUNCTIONING PROPERLY.	**CONTROLS OF THE SCHOOL BUS** From the driver's seat, you will be able to see and monitor various aspects of the school bus operation. The controls which must be monitored and understood for

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	safe, efficient and economical operation are located in the driver's area of the school bus. It is very important that the driver fully understand the function of each of the controls and how to read each of them.
POINT OUT EACH ITEM AND ITS GENERAL LOCATION.	Located on the instrument panel in front of the driver, are lights and gauges that indicate the status of various vehicle functions. To the driver's left are switches which control the lights and fans. The service door control is located to the right or left of the driver. The parking brake and transmission shift levers are located to the right of the driver. This arrangement is fairly standard for all school buses currently used in Kentucky. We are now going to discuss each of these controls and determine how each one functions to give us the basic engine status. We will also interpret the readings of the lights and gauges. Kentucky school buses will have, as a minimum, these instruments in the chassis instrument panel: 1. speedometer, showing miles per hour; 2. odometer, showing accrued miles; 3. volt meter; 4. oil pressure gauges; 5. water temperature gauges; 6. fuel gauge; 7. upper beam headlamp indicator; 8. turn signal indicator lights; 9. air gauge;

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	10. FMVSS 105 indicator lights; and 11. the red light, indicating low air pressure or loss of hydraulic brake booster power.
EMPHASIS THAT OIL PRESSURE GAUGE DOES NOT INDICATE THE AMOUNT OF OIL NEEDED FOR PROPER ENGINE OPERATION.	Drivers must be aware of the following indicators and what each reading means:
PRESENT SLIDE OR OVERHEAD SHOWING OIL PRESSURE GAUGE WITH PROPER AND IMPROPER READING.	**OIL PRESSURE LIGHT OR GAUGE** The oil pressure light/gauge indicates if there is sufficient pressure to circulate oil in the engine. If there is insufficient pressure, the warning light will flash red. The gauge will register pounds per square inch oil pressure.
EMPHASIS THAT RUNNING ENGINE HOT WILL CAUSE SEVERE DAMAGE AND TO NEVER POUR COLD WATER INTO A HOT ENGINE.	**TEMPERATURE LIGHT OR GAUGE** The temperature light/gauge indicates proper temperature of water circulating in engine. Water is too hot if the red indicator light is showing or the gauge registers 220 or above.
PRESENT SLIDE OR OVERHEAD SHOWING WATER TEMPERATURE GAUGE WITH PROPER AND IMPROPER READING.	**VOLT METER (ALTERNATOR LIGHT)** The volt meter (alternator light) indicates if there is sufficient energy to start the engine and run the electrical system. If energy is not sufficient, the red alternator light will show or the gauge will register on discharge side with less than 12 volts.
PRESENT SLIDE OR OVERHEAD SHOWING VOLT METER WITH PROPER AND IMPROPER READING.	**LOW AIR BUZZER OR GAUGE** The air pressure gauge indicates the amount of air pressure available. The low air pressure buzzer will sound if the pressure drops below 60 pounds per square inch.
EMPHASIS IF INSTRUMENTS ARE NOT REGISTERING WITHIN AN ACCEPTED RANGE OR CANNOT BE BROUGHT INTO AN ACCEPTABLE RANGE, DON'T DRIVE. CONTACT THE MECHANIC AT THE BUS GARAGE.	

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	FUEL GAUGE Fuel gauge must show adequate supply of fuel to complete trip. **<u>STARTING A SCHOOL BUS ENGINE</u>** It is necessary to properly start a school bus engine in order to safely operate the bus. Starting the engine must become a matter of routine, incorporating principles of safety and preventative practices. The following is the correct sequence for starting a school bus engine: 1. Set the parking brake to keep the bus from moving. 2. Review gauges before starting. 3. For straight shift buses, depress the clutch pedal to disengage the engine from the transmission. Shift the gear lever into the neutral position. For automatic shifts, the gear lever must also be in neutral.
EMPHASIZE THAT IF AUTOMATIC SHIFT STARTS IN ANY POSITION EXCEPT NEUTRAL, THEN YOU HAVE A MAJOR PROBLEM.	4. Turn on the ignition key to complete electric circuits and engage the starter switch.
EMPHASIZE NEED TO BE SURE THAT CHOKE IS FULLY SEATED AFTER ENGINE IS STARTED, SINCE DRIVING WITH THE CHOKE OUT WASTES FUEL. **ALSO EMPHASIZE THAT RACING A COLD ENGINE WILL DAMAGE THE ENGINE.**	a. Use the hand choke, if necessary and available. Be careful when using the choke, as over choking will cause the carburetor to flood. b. Use foot accelerator sparingly, since over-pumping will cause the carburetor to flood on a gasoline-powered bus.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	5. Warm up the engine at fast idle. DO NOT RACE THE ENGINE. 6. Check instruments to see that they are registering properly. a. Volt meter shows 12 volts plus. b. Oil pressure gauge registers at the middle of the gauge. c. Temperature gauge is at the midpoint. d. Fuel gauge registers full, or enough to complete the run. e. Air pressure gauge indicates pressure is building. On some occasions, especially during cold weather, the engine might be difficult to start and the air pressure will not build as a result of ice in the airlines. Drivers can correct these problems by taking appropriate actions.
EMPHASIZE THAT THIS WILL TAKE SOME TIME (15-20 MINUTES) AND IS EXACTLY WHAT THE BUS GARAGE MECHANIC WOULD DO.	In order to build air pressure in cold weather, the driver should: 1. Release the parking brake. 2. Start the engine. 3. Run the engine at fast idle with the transmission in neutral. 4. Depress the brake pedal and hold it. 5. When pressure reaches 120, you are to pump the brake several times. 6. Let the pressure build up again without the brake pedal being depressed.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
EMPHASIZE THAT NO BUS WITH AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION WILL START IF TRANSMISSION IS NOT IN NEUTRAL.	7. If the air pressure does not come up to its required level, repeat process. To start a diesel engine: 1. Put key in ignition 2. Depress accelerator ½ way down to the floor for three (3) to five (5) seconds. 3. Release the accelerator. 4. Turn the key to start the engine. 5. If the engine does not start, repeat the process two (2) more times. 6. If after the third try the engine does not start, the driver is to wait two (2) to three (3) minutes and attempt to start again. 7. If engine still fails to start, then call the bus garage. To shut down a diesel engine: 1. Bring the bus to a full stop. 2. Set the parking brake. 3. Place the transmission in neutral. 4. Allow the engine to idle for at least three (3) minutes, by the clock. 5. After three (3) minutes have passed, the driver is to pull the engine stop handle. 6. When the engine stops running, the engine stop handle is to be pushed in and fully seated. 7. Remove the key from the ignition.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
EMPHASIZE NEED TO SHIFT GEARS WITHOUT TAKING EYES OFF ROAD.	**<u>GEAR SHIFTING</u>** Gear shifting requires skill and practice. The driver must learn the range of speed in changing gears upward or downward, then shift without losing view of the road. School buses are equipped with a four or five speed transmission or an automatic transmission. The Synchro-Mesh transmissions have alleviated most of the gear clashing and have made shifting easier for drivers.

EMPHASIZE NEED FOR BEING VERY FAMILIAR WITH THE SHIFT POSITION.	1. It is vital that the driver knows the gear positions.
	  a. Check the chart on the lever knob or on the dash.
	  b. Ask your instructor.
	2. Depress the clutch.
	3. Shift gear lever into starting gear.
	  a. For average terrain and load, this should be second gear.
	  b. Load and terrain may dictate the use of first gear.
	  c. Never start out in a gear higher than second as this places undue load and wear on the clutch and engine.
	4. Depress the foot brake.
	5. Release the parking brake lever. If ratchet type, pull brake lever slightly back to release pressure

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	6. Release the clutch gradually to the friction point and hold. At this point you will have the clutch just at the point of friction and the foot brake on and ready to release. Release the foot brake. 7. Depress the accelerator. Hold the point of clutch friction and slightly depress the accelerator to increase the power to prevent stalling.
EMPHASIZE NEED FOR SMOOTH AND CORRECT SHIFTING OF GEARS SINCE IMPROPER SHIFTING WILL CAUSE WEAR AND TEAR ON CLUTCH AND ENGINE. THIS IS ALSO VERY COSTLY TO THE SCHOOL SYSTEMS. IF A DRIVER HAS TO HAVE SEVERAL CLUTCHES REPLACED, THAT DRIVER MAY BE CONSIDERED TOO COSTLY FOR THE DISTRICT AND BE TERMINATED.	8. Release the clutch. a. Slowly and gradually release the clutch to the remainder of pedal travel and at the same time slowly and gradually increase the accelerator. b. Remove your foot from the clutch pedal immediately and place it flat on the floor. c. Pick up engine speed before shifting to the next higher gear. 9. Shift to the next higher gear. a. Depress the clutch pedal and release the accelerator. b. Shift to the next higher gear. c. Release the clutch smoothly, but more quickly than in starting gear, and depress the accelerator smoothly and quickly. To prevent loss of vehicle speed, do not race the engine and slip the clutch. d. Remove your foot from the clutch pedal. e. Proceed in this gear until proper vehicle speed is reached before shifting to the next gear.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
EMPHASIZE THAT WHEN MAKING STOPS TO LOAD/UNLOAD, IT IS NOT NECESSARY TO REACH TOP SPEED BETWEEN EACH STOP AND GO THROUGH ALL THE GEARS. THIS IS ESPECIALLY TRUE IN SUBDIVISIONS WHERE STOPS ARE CLOSE TOGETHER. **SHOW OVERHEAD SLIDE AND DISCUSS IN DETAIL.**	10. Repeat step 9 until the bus is in cruising gear. 11. Except for during an emergency, do not skip a gear in upshifting or downshifting as this causes undue engine and clutch wear. 12. Shift up or down as necessary to prevent engine lugging or excessive engine RPM. A driver should approximate miles per hour to be needed before upshifting or downshifting. MPH may vary slightly, depending upon make of engine, transmission, gear ratio and terrain. **UPSHIFTING (ESTIMATES)** FROM 1 TO 2 GEAR – 1-4 MPH 2 TO 3 GEAR – 5-12 MPH 3 TO 4 GEAR – 12-20 MPH 4 TO 5 GEAR – 25-30 MPH **DOWNSHIFTING (ESTIMATES)** FROM 5 TO 4 GEAR – 30-35 MPH 4 TO 3 GEAR – 25-30 MPH 3 TO 2 GEAR – 5-10 MPH 2 TO 1 GEAR – STOP **DOUBLE CLUTCHING** The shifting of gears on nonsynchromesh transmissions is done smoother and faster by double clutching. Double clutching is often recommended for synchromesh transmissions. Since it aligns the gear for easy shifting, the gears should never be forced by improper timing of the shifting process. Reclutching and

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	speeding up the engine will, in most cases, prevent excessive clashing. The driver should never allow the engine to pull heavily on an upgrade or over race on a downgrade.
REMIND DRIVERS THAT THEY WILL PRACTICE DOUBLE CLUTCHING WHEN THEY BEGIN TRAINING ON THE SCHOOL BUS IF YOUR DISTRICT HAS ANY MANUAL TRANSMISSION SCHOOL BUSES.	To double clutch and up shift, the driver should: 1. Depress the clutch pedal and release the accelerator. 2. Shift the gear lever to the neutral position. 3. Release the clutch pedal momentarily to engage clutch. 4. Depress the clutch pedal and shift to the next higher gear. 5. Release the clutch and accelerate the engine at the same time. To double clutch and down shift, the driver should: 1. Depress the clutch pedal and release the accelerator. 2. Shift the gear lever to the neutral position. 3. Release the clutch pedal momentarily to engage the clutch and accelerate the engine to more than the original speed. 4. Depress the clutch and skip to the next lower gear. 5. Release the clutch pedal gradually and accelerate the engine to match the speed of vehicle.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	Some buses are equipped with automatic transmissions and the driver should know how to operate a bus with an automatic transmission. The proper methods to use in operating a bus with an automatic transmission are: 1. Depress the foot brake and move the selector lever into the forward or drive position. 2. Release the parking brake, release the foot brake and depress the accelerator. As the speed of the bus increases, the transmission will automatically shift to the next higher gear, until reaching the cruising gear. 3. Downshift for additional power by depressing the accelerator toward the floor firmly. A driver can downshift manually by moving the selector lever to the next lower position. **STEERING** To be classified as an expert driver, a school bus driver must be able to assume the correct steering position and make all turning maneuvers correctly and smoothly. It is vital that each school bus driver learn and execute the correct procedures necessary to prepare for making and executing turns. When an unusual turn or turnaround is required, the driver should use extreme caution. Added skills and judgement in making turns properly and safely are required as a result of the traffic conditions in which the school bus travels each day.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	In steering the school bus, it is very important for the driver to use both hands. The correct steering position is: 1. Grip the steering wheel with both hands. 2. Hold the left hand at approximately the 9 or 10 o'clock position. 3. The right hand should be at approximately the 2 or 3 o'clock position. 4. Each hand should be located directly across from each other. Hence, 9 and 3 o'clock or 10 and 2 o'clock. 5. Hands should be on the outside of the steering wheel and your thumbs on top or outside of the wheel. **VISUAL SCAN** The eyes should be focused on the road ahead as well as all around the bus. The correct way to accomplish this is to: 1. A driver should keep his/her eyes constantly on the move to obtain the "big picture." 2. Look straight ahead. Use the left side, right side and rear view mirrors. To steer the bus, the driver should use the hand-over-hand method on a regular tilted steering wheel. On a lap wheel (steering wheel that sits almost flat on the driver's lap), the driver will probably have to use the push-pull method of steering. These are the only two acceptable techniques to be used for turning.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
SIGNAL ONLY FOR ACTION THAT YOU, AS A BUS DRIVER, WOULD TAKE.	**TURNING** There are some general procedures for turning the school bus which all drivers must know and utilize. In preparing for turns, the driver must: 1. Check traffic at the front, sides and rear of the bus. 2. Give proper signals to move the school bus into the proper lane for turning. When making turns, the driver must: 1. Give the proper turn signal. 2. Reduce speed and before turning, downshift to the proper gear needed to safely execute the turn. 3. Check for a clear right-of-way to ensure that traffic signals give the right-of-way to you, watch for pedestrians, traffic control signs and other vehicles. Use all outside mirrors to check around the bus. To properly execute the turn, the driver must: 1. Make the turn smoothly without a strain on the engine. 2. Never shift gears during a turn. 3. Check mirrors before and while executing a turn. 4. Enter the proper lane and check the turn signals for cancellation.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
EMPHASIZE THAT THE DRIVER MUST HAVE COMPLETE CONTROL OF THE VEHICLE. WHEN YOU LET THE WHEEL SPIN IN YOUR HAND (CONTROLLED SLIPPING), IT MAY OR MAY NOT RETURN TO THE STRAIGHT AHEAD POSITION AT THE CORRECT TIME. **EMPHASIZE THAT EACH BUS HAS A TURNING POINT. THIS IS A POINT ON THE BUS THAT, WHEN THE POINT IS EVEN WITH THE CORNER, A TURN CAN BE MADE SAFELY WITH THE REAR WHEELS NOT CROSSING THE CURB. THE TURNING POINT WILL VARY FROM BUS TO BUS.** **SHOW SLIDE, DISCUSSING THE PROPER PROCEDURES FOR MAKING A RIGHT TURN, A LEFT TURN AND TURNAROUNDS.** **WHILE DISPLAYING SLIDES AND DISCUSSING PROPER PROCEDURES, CONTINUALLY REFER TO AND EMPHASIZE THE POINTS COVERED IN PREPARING, MAKING AND EXECUTING A TURN.**	5. Steer the wheels back into position by using the hand-over-hand recovery technique whenever possible or the push-pull technique in the case of a non-tilt lap wheel. When turning right, school buses must have curb clearance for the rear wheels. Two (2) procedures may be used in executing right turns. Regardless of the method used, the school bus driver must remember that the responsibility for making a safe turn rests with the bus driver. One alternative is to approach the corner in the right lane, about four feet (4') from the curb. The bus should be close enough to the curb to keep a car from passing on the right. As soon as the front wheels pass the corner, turn wide to the right, swinging over the center of the side street if necessary, in order for the right rear wheels to clear the curb. (It is not recommended to cross the side street center lane marking.) The other alternative to be used, when the street onto which the turn is to be made is narrow, may require the same approach as above, but then, steer left far enough to place the right rear wheel in position to miss the curb, but not far enough away to invite passing on the right. **MAKE A RIGHT TURN** 1. Give the proper right hand turn signal. 2. Reduce speed and, before turning, downshift to the proper gear needed to execute the turn.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	3. Position the bus to the right side of the lane. 4. Check for a clear right-of-way. a. Check traffic signals, signs, pedestrians and/or other vehicles. b. Use both outside mirrors. 5. Executing the turn. a. Make the turn smoothly without any strain on the engine. b. Never shift gears during a turn. c. Check the right and left mirrors while executing the turn. This will enable you to check your pivot point while turning. d. Enter the most available right lane and check turn signal for cancellation. e. Steer the wheels back into position by using the hand-over-hand recovery technique, unless the bus is equipped with a non-tilt lap wheel. **MAKING A LEFT TURN** 1. Give the proper left hand turn signal. 2. Reduce speed and downshift, if needed. 3. Position the bus to the left edge of the lane. 4. Check for a clear right-of-way. a. Check traffic signals, pedestrians or other vehicles. b. Use both outside mirrors.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	c. If required to stop, keep front wheels straight and brake pedal depressed. This will prevent drifting and activate the brake lights and also prevents being shoved into the line of approaching traffic if you were to be struck in the rear. 5. Execute the turn. a. Drive into the intersection and make the turn smoothly, without strain on the engine. b. Check the left and right mirrors while executing the turn. c. Never shift gears in a turn. d. Enter the roadway in the most available left lane and check the turn signal for cancellation. 6. After completing a left turn upon a multiple-lane highway/street, pick up speed, activate right turn signal and move into the right lane as soon as it is safe to do so. **MAKING A TURNAROUND – TWO POINT TURNAROUND** 1. Give the proper turn signal and tap brakes well in advance of turnaround. 2. Stop the bus in the proper position on the roadway – one (1) bus length ahead of road to be backed into.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	a. Check traffic – front and rear. b. Visibility should be excellent in all directions. c. Have traffic move around the bus, if possible. d. Back into the roadway or driveway, using outside mirrors. e. Check traffic and re-enter the roadway with caution, after proper signaling.
SHOW SLIDE OR OVERHEAD AND DISCUSS THE SELECTION OF LANES WHEN TURNING FROM VARIOUS TYPES OF ROADS.	**LANE SELECTION IN TURNING** Turning left from: 1. Two-way roadway onto a two-way road with two (2), four (4) or six (6) lanes. 2. Two-way roadway onto a one-way road. 3. One way onto a two-way road. 4. One way onto another one-way road. 5. Two-way onto a three lane two-way road. 6. Three lane, two-way onto a two-lane two-way. Turn right from: 1. Any type of roadway onto any type of roadway. **<u>STOPPING THE SCHOOL BUS</u>** A professional school bus driver will always stop the school bus in a smooth and safe manner. The driver must have the bus under control at all times and know that the distance required to make a smooth, safe stop increases as the speed and weight of the bus increases.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
EMPHASIZE THAT THE BUS STILL MOVES FORWARD DURING THE REACTION TIME IN DIRECT RELATION TO THE SPEED OF THE BUS. IT IS ¾ OF A SECOND BEFORE ANY SLOWING ACTION BEGINS.	The normal reaction time for most drivers is ¾ of a second. This might not seem like very much time, but even in ¾ of a second, the bus can cover a considerable distance depending upon the speed of the bus. How far does a bus travel in the ¾ of a second that it takes a driver to remove his/her foot from the accelerator and apply the brake? This interesting bit of traffic arithmetic can be used to determine how far you would travel in ¾ of a second. ❑ Take the first digit of the speedometer reading and add it to the total speed. This will give the reaction distance in feet. EXAMPLE: 36 mph + 3 = 39 feet in ¾ second 45 mph + 4 = 49 feet in ¾ second
GET RANDOM REMARKS FROM STUDENTS ON: **1) SPEED** **2) CONDITION OF BRAKES** **3) CONDITION OF TIRES** **4) TYPE OF ROAD SURFACE** **5) LOAD ON VEHICLE, AND** **6) WHETHER UPHILL OR DOWNHILL**	Now that the driver has the brakes on, the bus will still travel quite a distance before it can be brought to a stop. This is called "braking distance." What determines braking distance? Braking distance varies with speed. It increases at a geometric rate as speed increases.
SHOW SLIDE OR OVERHEAD AND DISCUSS INFORMATION ON SLIDE.	To stop a bus, the driver must allow for reaction time and braking distance. A driver can allow for this by maintaining a "space cushion" between the bus and the vehicle ahead. To determine the safe following distance, the driver must allow one (1) second of following distance for each ten feet (10') of vehicle length up to forty (40) mph. The driver should add one (1) second if

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	traveling over forty (40) miles per hour. In Kentucky, all bus drivers should assume that their vehicle is at least forty feet (40') long, hence, no Kentucky school bus driver should ever be closer than four (4) seconds. To apply the four (4) second rule, a driver picks a point ahead (for example: overhead bridge, post, sign, etc.). As the vehicle passes the selected point, start counting "one thousand and one, one thousand and two, etc." if you don't complete "one thousand and four" by the time the front of the bus passes the selected point, you are following too close. Drivers should always operate their bus within posted speed limits and with consideration for road and weather conditions. Be sure to drive at a speed that will permit stopping within the clear distance ahead. Correct stopping procedures keep down wear and tear on the brake system as well as maintenance costs. To stop correctly, a school bus driver must follow these procedures: 1. Stopping in cruising gear. a. Release the accelerator and depress the brake pedal. b. When proper mph is obtained for any gear, downshift to the next lower gear. This will reduce heat buildup and brake wear.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	2. Stopping when in a low gear or at 10 mph or less. a. Depress the clutch pedal and release the accelerator. b. Apply brakes gradually by increasing the pressure. c. Reduce brake pressure slightly but not completely just before coming to a stop to prevent jerking. d. Shift gear lever into the neutral position. e. Release the clutch and remove your foot from the pedal, if manual transmission. There will be occasions when it will become necessary for the bus driver to stop the bus on a hill or incline. When this happens, it becomes necessary for the driver to engage the clutch and smoothly put the bus in motion without rolling back into vehicles behind the bus or damaging the clutch or transmission. There are correct procedures to be used to accomplish this goal.
EMPHASIZE THE NEED FOR PRACTICE WITH EACH PRACTICE.	To start on a hill, the driver must do these things in sequence: 1. With your right foot on the brake, use left foot to depress the clutch and shift transmission into second gear. Release the clutch slowly until the engine begins to labor slightly. 2. Hold the clutch at that point.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
EXPLAIN THE DIFFERENCES FOR BUSES EQUIPPED WITH AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSIONS.	3. With your right foot, release the brake pedal and drop your right foot onto the accelerator, applying enough pressure to hold the weight of the bus without drifting backward. 4. Release the clutch smoothly, applying enough pressure to pull the bus smoothly up the hill. There will be times when the bus must stop on a hill. To do this correctly on the upgrade, the driver must: 1. Check for following traffic. 2. Apply the brake lightly for a smooth stop. 3. Depress the clutch with your left foot. Shift into neutral. 4. Allow an extra safety margin between the bus and the vehicle ahead. On the downgrade, the driver should follow Step #1 above, downshift to reduce speed as he/she sees the need to stop; follow Step #2 above and tap the brakes twice. **PARKING THE SCHOOL BUS** Drivers must be able to park the bus in several situations. To comply with state laws and properly park the bus so that it will not become a traffic hazard or problem, drivers must know how to legally park the bus. Care must also be utilized when parking the bus so that incidents can be prevented and the safe, efficient operation of the bus continues.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	Drivers will be required at one time or another to park the bus in the following ways: 1. at an angle; 2. perpendicular; 3. parallel; and/or 4. on a hill.
EMPHASIZE THAT A HELPER SHOULD ALWAYS BE USED WHEN BACKING. **EMPHASIZE THAT THIS IS THE LEAST DESIRABLE CHOICE FOR PARKING A BUS. IT WOULD BE BETTER TO PARK ELSEWHERE, IF POSSIBLE, RATHER THAN TO USE ANGLE PARKING.**	The procedure for angle parking is: 1. When preparing to forward park in a 45 degree angle space, position the bus as far out in the driving lane as is practical. 2. Check the left, then right mirrors. 3. Signal for the right turn. 4. Drive forward past the right edge of the angle space and turn sharply so that the front bumper clears the left edge of the angle space. 5. Move forward slowly, watching the right mirror to see that the bus clears the right edge of the angle space. 6. Position the bus in the center of the space. The next procedure is the one which drivers will use most because it is used when parking the bus at most bus garages and compounds. The procedure for left side perpendicular parking is to: 1. Drive past the parking stall. 2. Check the left mirror. 3. Shift to reverse.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	4. Turn the wheels to the left. 5. Slowly back toward the stall, observing the left mirror – then right mirror for dual wheel positions. 6. Keep the left rear wheel close to the front corner of the stall. 7. Begin to straighten the wheels. 8. Use mirrors to monitor the direction of the bus. Parallel parking is the next procedure which drivers must be able to perform correctly and legally. When preparing to parallel park: 1. Signal your intentions well ahead of time. 2. Position the bus next to and about three feet (3') from the vehicle parked in front of the space to be occupied. 3. Stop when the rear of the bus is even with the rear of the front vehicle. 4. Check the left mirror, right mirror and then left mirror again. 5. Shift into reverse. 6. Back slowly while turning the steering wheel slowly to the right until the right rear wheel is in line with the rear or the front parked vehicle. 7. Straighten the steering wheel when the entrance door is in line with the rear of the vehicle parked in the front space.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
EMPHASIZE AGAIN TO ALWAYS USE A HELPER WHEN BACKING.	8. Back straight in until the front bumper reaches the rear bumper of the front vehicle. 9. Continue backing slowly while turning the steering wheel sharply to left when the front of the bus clears the rear of the vehicle. 10. Check the left mirror to position the bus. 11. Stop the bus just short of the vehicle parked behind. 12. Shift into drive or the normal starting gear. 13. Center the bus in the space no more than one foot (1') from the curb. Sometimes drivers will be faced with parking the bus on a hill. It is very important that the wheels be positioned properly when a bus is parked on a hill. The wheels must be positioned as follows: 1. Parked on upgrade with curb, turn the wheels outward. 2. Parked on upgrade without a curb, turn the wheels inward. 3. Parked on downgrade with or without a curb, turn the wheels inward. Given the high visibility and the public relations aspects of school bus operators, it is important that the driver set a good example of obeying the law.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	PARKING IS PROHIBITED: ❖ on a sidewalk; ❖ in front of any driveway, alley, theater, emergency exit, or fire escape; ❖ within intersections; ❖ within fifteen feet (15') of fire hydrants; ❖ on crosswalks; ❖ within twenty feet (20') of crosswalks, or if none, within fifteen feet (15') of intersection of property lines at intersection of highways; ❖ between safety zones and adjacent curbs or within thirty feet (30') of points on curb immediately opposite ends of the safety zone, unless a different length is indicated by official signs; ❖ within fifty feet (50') of the nearest rail or railroad crossing; ❖ within twenty feet (20') of driveway entrance to any fire station and on the side of a street opposite entrance to any fire station within seventy-five feet (75') of said entrance when proper signs are posted; ❖ along the side or opposite a street evacuation or obstruction when stopping, standing or parking would obstruct traffic; ❖ on highway side of a vehicle stopped or parked at the edge or curb or a street;
EMPHASIZE THAT PARKING IS INAPPROPRIATE ON ANY PUBLIC STREET IN A POSITION WHERE MOTORISTS WOULD BE PRONE TO INTERPRET THE BUS POSITION AS A BUS LOADING LOCATION.	

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	❖ upon a bridge or other elevated structure upon a highway or within a highway tunnel; ❖ at a place where official signs prohibit stopping; ❖ within five hundred feet (500') of an incident at which police officers are in attendance, when the scene of the incident lies outside of a city or village; and/or ❖ more than twelve inches (12") from a curb on the main traveled part of the highway when it is possible to park off the main traveled part of the highway outside of the city. When the bus must be moved from the parking space, the following procedures must be used to leave a parallel parking space: 1. Back the bus as far as possible (requires depth perception skills, use spotter if possible). 2. Check the left mirror. 3. Put into drive or normal starting gear. 4. Turn steering wheel sharply to the left. 5. Check for traffic and signal left. 6. Enter the travel lane when clear. 7. Check mirrors for clearance of the front and right side of the bus. 8. Steer bus into the proper lane position.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	For leaving an angular or perpendicular parking space, the procedure is to use either forward or backward motion. Using forward motion, the driver moves the bus forward until the rear of the bus has cleared the other vehicle, using mirrors to check. Using backward motion to leave, the driver backs when traffic permits until the front of the bus clears the obstacles. <u>At no time is it recommended to back a school bus out into traffic flow.</u> **<u>RAILROAD CROSSING PROCEDURES</u>** Safety procedures at all railroad grade crossings dictate that extreme care be exercised by school bus drivers. Crossing railroad tracks represents one of the greatest hazards for school buses. Mass casualties could occur in the event of a train-school bus incident. STOP, LOOK AND LISTEN are the keys. The safe and legal way to cross a railroad track must be automatic. All buses, loaded or empty, MUST STOP and specific procedures must be followed before crossing any railroad at grade level. **GENERAL INFORMATION** 1. The driver of any school bus, whether carrying passengers or not and before crossing a grade level of any track or tracks of a railroad, must bring his/her bus to a full stop not less than fifteen (15’) or more than fifty feet (50’) from the rails nearest the front of the bus.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	2. When drivers are making stops for railroad crossings, they shall carefully observe traffic and reduce their speed, far enough in advance of the stop, to avoid trapping other motorists in panic stops or rear end collisions with the bus. One way to aid motorists is to lightly tap your brakes as you approach the crossing, four (4) or five (5) times at a minimum. Generally, on multiple lane roadways, no such stop should be made in the center left lane. 3. The driver shall then set the parking brake and shift the gear selector to neutral. 4. No special signs, signals or flashers shall be activated while stopped or stopping for this purpose. 5. The driver, when stopped fully, will open the service door and driver side window and turn off all noisemakers and must, after the stop and while stopped, listen and look in both directions along the track or tracks for approaching engines, trains or cars. Before resumption of motion, the service door is to be closed. 6. If the view of the track or tracks for a distance of one thousand feet (1000') in either direction is not clear, or obstructed in any way, no portion of the bus may be propelled onto the tracks, until, by personal visual inspection, the driver has

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	ascertained that no train is approaching. In no instance may a signal indicating safety be considered as conclusive or serve to override this precaution. 7. Drivers shall, in every instance, shift into the lowest gear and shall not, under any circumstances, shift gears when the bus is actually crossing tracks or a railroad crossing. 8. In the event that a train has passed over the crossing, no bus driver shall drive his/her bus onto the track or tracks until the train has sufficiently cleared the crossing so that the driver is certain that no train, hidden by the first train, is approaching on an adjacent track. 9. For improved hearing, the window shall be opened and all noise equipment (fans, radio, etc.) should be shut off until the bus has cleared the crossing. **AT CROSSINGS CONTROLLED BY SIGNALS ONLY** 1. In addition to the aforementioned safety standards, the driver of a school bus that has stopped at any railroad track or tracks, at which there is (in operation) any flashing red lights and/or bell, shall not proceed across such track or tracks UNLESS authorized by a law enforcement officer or train personnel. This does not relieve

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	the driver of personal responsibility for safe crossing. 2. In the event that switching operations, or stopped trains, delay the use of the crossing unnecessarily for frequent or extended periods of time, complaints should be made through proper channels to railroad management and traffic authorities. **AT CROSSINGS CONTROLLED BY CROSSING GATE OR BARRIER** 1. No bus driver shall drive his bus through, around or under any crossing gate or barrier at a railroad crossing while such gate or barrier is closed or being opened or closed. 2. The driver must never accept a lack of movement as indicating that the device is either in or out of order or not properly handled, but must always take a railroad grade crossing as a conclusive warning of danger and must not cross the tracks until he has ascertained that no train is approaching. 3. <u>The driver should treat multiple tracks as one (1) track only.</u>

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	WEATHER CONDITIONS 1. During wet, stormy or foggy weather, before placing part of the bus on the tracks, the driver must know conclusively that the crossing can be made in safety. Any use of flares, etc., in addition to warning signals or devices maintained at such railroad crossings, must be taken as an additional warning of danger.
	BEHAVIOR OF PASSENGERS 1. When stopping for any railroad track at grade, all passengers must be silent until crossing is completed. Such signal for silence shall be given by the driver in a manner deemed suitable and appropriate.
EMPHASIZE CORRECT PROCEDURE FOR ALL POINTS.	**CROSSING PROCEDURE/SEQUENCE** The school bus driver will take the following steps in sequence each time he crosses a railroad track in a school bus:
EMPHASIZE TO KEEP FOOT ON BRAKE PEDAL.	1. Prepare to stop. a. Request silence. b. Check traffic control devices.
	2. Stop the bus. a. Follow legal stopping procedure.
EMPHASIZE NO SHIFTING OF GEARS.	b. Turn off heaters, fans, noise abatement switch. c. Tap the brakes at least four (4) or five (5) times when slowing.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	d. Stop in a position that gives a clear view of the tracks in both directions. The front bumper must be no closer than fifteen feet (15’) or further than fifty feet (50’) from the track. e. Set the parking brake. f. Shift into neutral gear (both straight and automatic transmissions). 3. Look and listen. a. Open the service door and driver’s window. b. Look and listen through the open window and door. 4. If no indication of approaching train: a. Shift into the lowest gear possible; b. Release the parking brake; c. Look and listen a second time; and d. Close the door and proceed quickly and smoothly across the track. 5. If there is an approaching train; a. Hold bus position; b. (after train passes) wait fifteen (15) seconds; and c. follow items under Procedure #4. 6. Multi-track Crossing a. Treat multiple tracks as one (1) track.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	b. Make sure no train is approaching on any track. c. After a train passes, wait fifteen (15) seconds and until other tracks become visible before proceeding. A second train may be approaching from the opposite direction. d. Follow items under Procedure #4.
TREAT AS A SINGLE TRACK CROSSING.	7. Railroad Traffic Control Devices a. Flasher Lights and Bells o These are warnings of an approaching train. o Vehicles may proceed around the gates only at the direction of a law enforcement officer or an authorized railroad representative. Even then the driver must be certain of safety. b. Gates o All traffic must obey these devices. o Vehicles may proceed around the gates only at the direction of a law enforcement officer or an authorized railroad representative. c. Railroad crossing controlled by a flagman

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	• Make a safety stop. • Follow directions of the flagman as to when to cross. • Cross using items in Procedure #4. **SPEED OF TRAVEL FOR SCHOOL BUSES** The school bus shall not be operated at a speed in excess of the posted speed over any section of highway over which the bus travels. The driver shall not drive the school bus on any roadway, at any time, at a speed where the conditions of the roadway, weather conditions or other extenuating circumstances would likely make it unsafe for the bus to travel at that speed. Prevailing environmental conditions is one area that can dictate the speed at which a school bus should be operated. The basic rule-of-thumb is to drive at no greater speed than will permit stopping in assured clear distance ahead. **PROPER LANE USAGE** Lane usage and the position of the bus on the road are vital to the safe and efficient completion of each bus run. **Safety first, Schedule second is the key.** Drivers must stay in one lane for normal driving, not straddling lane marker lines or obstructing more than one lane. Drivers should use the parking lane for stopping and parking.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	Generally, where there is more than one lane for traffic going in one direction, travel in the furthermost right lane (not including parking lane), unless parking or turning left. Drive at a safe distance from other vehicles. Use the four (4) second minimum rule for following vehicles. Remain at least fifty feet (50' – 1 ¼ bus lengths) behind a bus leaving school grounds.
DISCUSS WHEN CHANGING LANES IS NECESSARY. ASK QUESTIONS.	When changing lanes, look for rear approaching traffic in the new lane. Glance out the window to check any blind spots. Move your head enough to see around the blind spot by using the mirrors. On multi-lane roads, look for vehicles about to enter the new lane from the adjacent lane. Check fender and west coast mirrors to observe vehicles passing in the new lane, following vehicles closing fast from the rear in the new lane and/or following vehicles about to enter the new lane. Position the bus so that you safely and smoothly accomplish the required maneuver.
	BEING PASSED When the bus is being overtaken and passed, the driver has a situation which could contribute to a very hazardous situation. The possibility for a potentially dangerous incident exists. The bus driver could be in a head-on collision, sideswiped, or run off the road. Other vehicles can pass you in a number of ways. 1. They can overtake and pass you on a straight road – a normal passing situation.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	2. They can pass you as you are pulling out of a parking space. 3. They can attempt to pass just as a driver moves out to pass another vehicle. 4. They can pass on the right, which is legal on multi-lane roads or on one-way streets if they do not leave the roadway, but a driver still has the responsibility for preventing an incident (last clear chance law). There are several things a driver must do to make the act of being overtaken and passed a very safe one. 1. When there is no possible hazard, stay in the right hand lane and maintain speed. 2. Help the other driver pass. Check for oncoming traffic. Slow down if the passing vehicle will need more room to get back in line in. 3. When another vehicle is also approaching from the opposite direction creating a hazard for the vehicle trying to pass, move the bus to the parking lane or leave the roadway if it seems that the passing vehicle cannot complete the pass before the oncoming vehicle reaches you, if safe to do so. 4. Before a driver changes lanes, check west coast and fender mirrors and “glance back” to make sure blind spots are clear. Use lane change signal. Move over only when the lane is clear. Proper order is 1) signal; 2) mirrors; and 3) glance.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

DO NOT STARE.

5. Get into the proper lane early when making a turn. When turning right. Stay close enough to the right curb to block anyone from passing on the right. Use the turn signal early.
6. Don't move out of a parking space to check for oncoming traffic. Take a good look before the bus is moved. Signal your intention. Wait for a break in traffic and pull out slowly but efficiently.

MERGING

Care must be used when the driver leaves the bus compound and begins the route. Smooth entry into the flow of traffic is vital for the safe operation of the school bus. Follow these steps to accomplish a smooth entry into the flow of traffic at a stop:

1. Stop at point of entry into the traffic flow.
2. Activate right or left turn signal.
3. Look to determine that there are no pedestrians in the path of the bus.
4. Check mirror to determine that all passengers are seated.
5. Look to the right and left to determine whether there are vehicles in motion on the roadway to be entered.
6. Yield right-of-way to vehicles already on the road.
7. Look for a suitable gap in traffic and when safe, accelerate smoothly into the road, utilizing the

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	turn signal to establish lane position.
	PASSING
	How to pass another vehicle: A school bus driver should not have to pass another vehicle. On occasion, however, it might become necessary and each driver should be aware of how to do it correctly, safely and legally. There is nothing wrong with passing for the right reasons, but it isn't likely to save time.
	REMEMBER – SAFETY FIRST…
	SCHEDULES SECOND!
	Passing entails risk. The best rule is: "When in doubt, don't."
EMPHASIZE!!!!!!!	In any passing maneuver, there are thirteen (13) things to do:
	1. Decide if the pass is necessary.
	2. Make certain that you have maintained a safe following distance.
	3. Check traffic ahead. If the bus and a oncoming vehicle are both traveling at 55 mph, the gap is closing between vehicles at the rate of 1.8 miles per minute. Since it takes a minimum of ten (10) seconds to complete a pass, the oncoming vehicle should be at least one-half of a mile away.
EMPHASIZE!!!!!!!	
	4. A driver should signal before the lane change.
	5. Check mirrors and all blind spots. Check fender and west coast mirrors.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	6. Check traffic behind before changing lanes. 7. Move into the left lane. 8. Accelerate as the bus moves left. 9. Signal the vehicle by tapping the horn or flashing the lights. 10. Signal intention to return to the right lane. 11. Return to the right lane when driver can see all of the passed vehicles in your fender and west coast mirrors. 12. Cancel directional signal. 13. Resume cruising speed as soon as driver has completed the passing maneuver. DO NOT PASS if the vehicle ahead is:
EMPHASIZE THAT THERE USUALLY IS NO GREAT NEED FOR SCHOOL BUSES TO PASS ANOTHER VEHICLE PROVIDED THE SCHOOL BUS DRIVER IS OPERATING THE BUS PROPERLY.	1. signaling or otherwise indicating a turn, 2. changing lanes preparatory to passing; 3. weaving or wandering; 4. decelerating suddenly; 5. passing children, cyclist(s) or animals; and/or 6. being passed by another vehicle.
	FOLLOWING DISTANCE/SPACE CUSHION
RE-EMPHASIZE AND DISCUSS THE FOUR SECOND RULE.	To operate a school bus safely and legally in today's traffic requires the school bus driver to be constantly alert. This is especially true when following a school bus or another vehicle. The school bus driver must maintain a safe following distance. Keep a "space cushion" in order to comply with the law and to avoid an incident. There

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	are four (4) simple steps that will help the school bus driver to properly follow another bus or vehicle. 1. Stay alert. Watch for signs from the driver ahead as to what he intends to do. Is his turn signal on? Are his brake lights lighted? Has he been gradually drifting to the right or left as if to prepare to turn? 2. Stay ahead of the situation. Look beyond the driver ahead to see situations that may force him to act quickly and thereby become a threat to you. Are there vehicles in the roadway or on the shoulder? Are the intersections marked or unmarked? Are cars, pedestrians or livestock present? 3. Stay back. Use and apply the four (4) second minimum rule. 4. Start slowing sooner. Slow down and touch your brakes the instant you see a hazard developing that may require you to stop or take evasive action. Failure to do this is known as "delayed braking," a serious flaw in your driving technique. A competent, professional school bus driver will rarely, if ever, have to make a panic stop.
EMPHASIZE!!!!! **THIS IS THE SECRET TO DEFENSIVE DRIVING.**	The best advice that a driver can adhere is to: **STAY AWAY FROM PEOPLE.** Do not travel next to or close to any other vehicle(s), person(s) or obstacle(s) at any time unless it is absolutely necessary.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	INTERSECTIONS/CROSSWALKS A thorough knowledge of highway signs, signals, markings and legal rights on the road are necessary to be a safe school bus driver. Without traffic laws, rules and controls, travel by a motor vehicle would be very unsafe and impractical. We have already covered two (2) of the three (3) areas of importance – use of lanes and parking. In this section, we will look at speed, crossing intersections and turning on red. Any time a driver comes to a place where others may cross or enter his/her path, they must look to each side to make sure it is safe to proceed. These places include intersections, crosswalks, railroad crossings, parking lots, school areas, playgrounds, shopping centers and related areas. Crossing intersections is a time for extreme care. Not all drivers obey the traffic control devices. School bus drivers must follow these rules any time they approach an intersection. 1. Look both ways. a. Look to the left first since traffic coming from the left is closer. b. Look to the right. c. A driver should take one more look to the left before he/she pulls out, just in case

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
EMPHASIZE THAT, IF VIEW IS OBSTRUCTED AND INTERSECTION CAUSES A CONTINUAL PROBLEM, ASK YOUR BUS TRANSPORTATION SUPERVISOR TO EVALUATE THE SITUATION AND CHANGE YOUR ROUTE TO AVOID THE HAZARD.	there is something they did not see the first time. 2. Do not rely on traffic signals. a. At an intersection, look left and right, even if other traffic has a red light or a stop sign. Someone may disobey either one. 3. Make sure you have a good view. a. If the view of a cross street is blocked by a building or a row of parked vehicles, edge forward slowly until visibility is clear in both directions. b. If traffic in one lane is blocking the view of another lane, wait until it clears. If a driver tries to look by putting the front of the bus into the other lane, they may get hit. Crosswalks are set aside for people to cross the street. Usually they are marked with yellow or white lines and have warning signs. Most crosswalks are located at intersections. Some are located, however, in the middle of the block, especially in cities and town. While turning a corner, watch for pedestrians who are about to cross the street you are turning onto. Remember, if a driver has a green light, the pedestrian has a green light also. The law requires drivers to yield to pedestrians in the crosswalk. Certain rules govern the crossing and entering of

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
EMPHASIZE THAT A DRIVER CAN BE RIGHT AND STILL BE IN AN INCIDENT. DON'T BE DEAD RIGHT!!!!	intersections. The right-of-way rules contribute to the safe passage of the vehicles through an intersection provided each driver obeys the rules. 1. Right-of-way rules for an intersection not controlled by signs or signal devices. a. Generally drivers on single lane or two (2) lane roadways must yield the right-of-way to vehicles on divided roadways or roadways of three (3) or more lanes. b. Usually, drivers on unpaved roadways must yield the right-of-way to vehicles on paved roadways. c. Drivers on roadways consisting of the same number or lanes and similar surfacing must yield the right-of-way to vehicles approaching from the right which are close enough to contribute to a hazard. d. Drivers who are required to yield the right-of-way may enter the intersection only if the movement can be made without interference or collision with traffic using the intersection. 2. Right-of-way at an intersection with a stop sign or yield sign. a. Drivers approaching intersections controlled by stop or yield right-of-way signs must obey such signs and may enter

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	the intersection if the movement can be made without interference or collision with traffic using the intersection.
	3. Right-of-way at an intersection with a signal light.
	a. When stop and go lights are operating, a driver entering the intersection on a green light has the right-of-way.
EMPHASIZE THAT SCHOOL BUS DRIVERS SHOULD NEVER TURN ON RED.	b. When stop and go lights are operating, a driver approaching the intersection on a red light alone must stop. After waiting until the intersection may be safely entered, a driver may turn right or if the intersecting streets are both one-way, may turn left. (Turns on red lights may be prohibited by traffic signs. A Kentucky school bus shall not turn right on red. **REMEMBER: SAFETY FIRST …SCHEDULE SECOND!!!)** The driver may drive only in the direction the arrow points and shall yield the right-of-way to pedestrians lawfully using the crosswalk and to other traffic lawfully using the intersection.
	c. When a flashing red light is operating, a driver approaching the red light must stop before entering the intersection. Procedure and right-of-way after stop are

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
EMPHASIZE THE NEED FOR EXTREME CARE WHEN APPROACHING A FLASHING YELLOW LIGHT. SOME PEOPLE ACT AS IF IT WERE A FLASHING RED AND STOP. YOU COULD REAR-END A VEHICLE IF THIS HAPPENS AND YOU ARE NOT PREPARED.	the same as at a stop sign. d. A flashing yellow light is a caution signal to warn drivers of a traffic hazard and requires a speed slow enough to avoid a collision. 4. Right-of-way when entering a roadway. a. A vehicle entering a crossing or roadway from an alley, building, private road or driveway must yield to vehicles on the roadway. b. A vehicle merging from an alley, driveway (including a school driveway), or building in a business or residential area must stop before driving onto the crosswalk or past the sidewalk, and must yield to any pedestrians and to vehicles on the roadway. c. A vehicle entering a roadway or traffic lane from an angle or parallel parked position, or from the roadway shoulder, must yield to all vehicles close enough to contribute to an immediate hazard. 5. Right-of-way on left turns. a. A vehicle turning left at an intersection must yield to those vehicles approaching from the opposite direction that are close

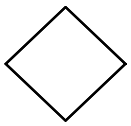
INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	enough to contribute to an immediate hazard. b. A vehicle turning left within an intersection or into an alley, private road, or driveway must yield to any vehicle approaching from opposite direction which is within the intersection or close enough to be an immediate hazard. 6. Right-of-way on the approach of an emergency vehicle. a. The approach of an emergency vehicle using a siren and/or red light requires other vehicles to move to the right, clear of any intersections and stop until the emergency vehicle has passed. When conditions make it impossible to move to the right, the vehicle should stop and remain stopped until the emergency vehicle has passed. Under no circumstances should a driver ever pull to the left. Emergency vehicle drivers are taught to pass on the left. **<u>TRAFFIC AIDS (LIGHT, SIGNALS, ETC.)</u>** Traffic laws and signals are standard throughout the state, but traffic signs may vary depending upon the local road geography. The United States is moving toward an international style of traffic signs, which emphasizes pictures and symbols rather than written messages.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

Size, shape and color are used in specific ways and each convey a definite message.

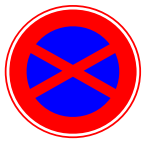
SHAPE

An octagon (eight-sided) shape always means stop.



A diamond shape is a warning of existing or possible hazards on the roadway on adjacent areas.

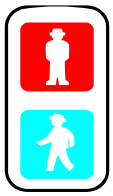
A triangle shape means to yield.



A round shape (circle) means railroad crossing.

A pentagon (five-sided) shape tells you there is a school zone or school crossing ahead.

A horizontal (rectangle) shape is a guide sign.



Vertical rectangles are generally used for regulatory signs that tell you the law – what you must do.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

COLOR

The color of the sign also has meaning:

RED Stop, yield, do not enter or wrong way.

YELLOW General warning of what to expect ahead.

BLUE Information about motorist services along the road.

GREEN Guide information such as distance or direction.

WHITE Regulatory.

BLACK One-way traffic and weigh stations.

ORANGE Warning of construction and maintenance.

BROWN Public recreation areas and scenic guidance.

TRAFFIC LIGHTS

There are control devices located at intersections. These could be either traffic signals or signs.

First we will discuss traffic signals or lights. The three main colors which guide traffic flow are:

RED MEANS STOP

GREEN MEANS GO

YELLOW MEANS WARNING/CAUTION POSSIBLE HAZARD AHEAD

RED

A red light without a green arrow means "STOP" behind a crosswalk or stop line until the green light appears.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	YELLOW The yellow light means that the traffic signal is about to turn red. Stop if you can do so safely. Never try to "beat" a yellow light. Not only is it unsafe, it is against the law to be in an intersection when the light is red, even if it was yellow when you entered. **GREEN** If the way is clear, you may go straight or turn left or right, unless such turns are prohibited. **FLASHING LIGHTS** A flashing yellow light means you must slow down and watch for others. It is found at intersections, construction areas and on some emergency vehicles such as tow trucks. **FLASHING RED LIGHTS** Flashing red lights means that you must come to a complete stop and proceed only when the way is clear. **TWO FLASHING RED LIGHTS** Two flashing red lights mark a railroad crossing. **LIGHTED ARROWS** Some intersection traffic lights have lighted arrows in addition to the regular lights to tell you when it is your turn to proceed. **GREEN ARROW** A green arrow means you may proceed in the direction of the arrow provided you are in the proper lane.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	FLASHING YELLOW ARROW A flashing yellow arrow means you may proceed with caution in the direction of the arrow. **ARROW POINTED UPWARD OR DOWNWARD** This means you may go "straight ahead." When there is more than one traffic light, obey the one that is over your lane.
SHOW EXAMPLES	**<u>TRAFFIC SIGNS AND SIGNALS</u>** Traffic signals tell you what to do. **STOP SIGN** A stop sign is red with white letters and has eight (8) sides. It means you must come to a complete stop in a safe position in relation to traffic, then proceed when the way is clear. **YELLOW SIGN** A yield sign is shaped like a triangle and is red and white. It means you should slow down and yield to traffic. **RED SLASH INSIDE A CIRCLE** A red slash inside a circle means you cannot do something. At any intersection which has a police officer directing traffic, do what the officer instructs you to do. **<u>MIRRORS</u>** The school bus is equipped with mirrors to assist the driver in seeing all that goes on around the bus. One of the characteristics of school bus construction is that it

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	produces blind spots and danger zones. Many of the serious incidents involving school buses occur in these areas. Mirrors have been added to the school bus to assist the driver in seeing these areas. A driver cannot safely operate a school bus without using the mirrors properly. The first and foremost action a driver must take when using the mirrors is to ensure that they are properly adjusted so that all areas can be monitored and the mirrors can be readily seen from the driver's seat. Mirrors should be positioned and adjusted so that the driver can monitor all areas without moving his/her head. Mirrors should be monitored by shifting the eyes only. Mirrors must be checked as part of the scanning process that the driver follows in reading the road. A school bus is equipped with the following mirrors: 1. An interior rear view mirror is mounted above the windshield. 2. West coast mirrors are mounted on the left so that the driver has an unobstructed view of it through the driver's window and on the right so that the driver has a good view of the mirror through the right side of the windshield. 3. Each school bus also has four (4) convex mirrors (on older buses) – two (2) mounted on each front fender. Two (2) mirrors are positioned to give the driver a clear view in front of the bus all the way down to ground

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	level – these are called crossover mirrors – and one (1) positioned on each side to give a view down the left and right sides of the bus called fender mirrors.
POINT OUT MIRRORS AND THEIR USE WHEN YOU GIVE DRIVERS AN ORIENTATION ON THE BUS.	**MIRROR ADJUSTMENT** Drivers must be sure to check mirror adjustment as part of the pre-trip inspection (see Chapter IV). No movement of the bus should be made until are mirrors have been checked to ensure that no child or any object is close to the bus. Mirrors are vital to the safe operation of the school bus. They must be used to safely turn, back or move the bus in traffic. A driver cannot be an effective professional school bus driver without using mirrors properly. A school bus driver should constantly be performing a visual scan. He/she should check all mirrors at least every five (5) seconds. Drivers will have an opportunity to work with adjusting the mirrors later in this course. Use of mirrors is called for throughout this course. BE SURE THAT YOU USE THEM PROPERLY.
DISCUSS DANGER ZONES. BE SURE TO POINT OUT THE MOST DANGEROUS ZONES.	**DANGER ZONES/DEATH ZONES** Most injuries that involve school buses occur outside of the school bus. Drivers must exercise extreme care to ensure that they do not injure or kill a child with the school bus. There are very hazardous areas around the bus – areas in which drivers have great difficulty seeing all that goes on around the bus. These areas are referred

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
DISCUSS TRIANGLES OF INVISIBILITY. BE SURE TO POINT OUT THE DANGERS.	to as danger zones or death zones. Drivers must have their mirrors adjusted so that they can see into these areas. It is virtually impossible to see small children when they are in these areas or zones. **It cannot be emphasized enough that no movement of the bus is to be made until the driver has checked each zone or area for clearance.** **USE OF MIRRORS FOR BACKING** School buses should be backed only when there is no other alternative. Back only when absolutely necessary because of the dangers involved and never on school grounds. It is better to drive around the block and alter your route to avoid backing the school bus. There will be, however, instances when this is not feasible and school bus drivers must know the proper method to back a school bus. Backing a school bus in a straight line will require extreme caution on the part of the driver. The driver must learn to back into a given space without scraping or hitting stationary objects. In backing a school bus with a manual transmission, the driver must: 1. Activate the four-way flashers, prior to stopping for backing. 2. Stop the bus in correct position to back. 3. Check mirrors. 4. Assure yourself that area is clear. 5. Secure visual assistance if possible.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	6. Apply brake. 7. Depress clutch. 8. Shift to reverse. 9. Tap horn lightly. 10. Release brake. 11. Release clutch to friction point. 12. Gradually accelerate and release the clutch all of the way. 13. Steer wheel as necessary. 14. Use mirrors to monitor direction of bus. 15. Always try to back straight or to the driver's side as this provides maximum visibility. In backing a school bus with an automatic transmission, the driver must: 1. Activate four-way flashers, prior to stopping or backing. 2. Stop bus in correct position to back. 3. Check mirrors. 4. Assure that area is clear. 5. Secure visual assistance if possible. 6. Apply brake. 7. Shift to reverse. 8. Tap horn lightly. 9. Release brake. 10. Gradually and slowly move. 11. Steer wheel as necessary.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
EXPLAIN EACH OF THESE TECHNIQUES. ASK DRIVERS TO EXPLAIN.	12. Use mirrors to monitor the direction of the bus. Several techniques for backing which the driver should use are: 1. Physically get out and check behind the bus. 2. Use helper assistance, if possible. 3. For straight backing, hold the steering wheel in 10/2 or 9/3 position. 4. Hand-over-hand steering for either right or left backing. 5. Back slowly. 6. Keep foot completely off of the clutch pedal. 7. Use two (2) west coast mirrors. 8. Use the inside rear view mirror when possible. 9. Use two (2) fender mirrors for obstructions (not distance judgement). 10. Keep eyes moving to all five (5) mirrors. 11. If still unsure while backing, stop and check outside again.

7/02

NAME: _____DATE:_____

DRIVING FUNDAMENTALS
TEST
ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE OR FILL IN THE BLANK

1. _____ The width of a full size school bus, excluding mirrors, is how many inches?

2. _____ When performing a visual scan, a school bus driver should look ahead how many seconds?

3. _____ Parking is prohibited within thirty feet (30’) of a railroad crossing.

4. _____ The most effective steering technique is push-pull.

5. _____ An oil pressure gauge indicates how much oil you have in the bus.

6. _____ Warm up an engine at fast idle.

7. _____ A diesel engine should run at least three (3) minutes before it is shut down.

8. _____ Your foot should remain over the clutch at all times when you are driving.

9. _____ The correct hand position on the steering wheel is 9 and 2.

10. _____ When approaching a railroad crossing, a school bus driver should tap the brakes a minimum of how many times?

11. _____ It is not legal to pass another vehicle on the right at any time.

12. _____ The normal reaction time for most drivers is 1/2 second.

13. _____ Parking is prohibited within intersections.

14. _____ The distance a bus must stop at a railroad crossing is not less than fifteen (15) or more than thirty feet (30').

15. _____ The only turnabout that should be performed in a Kentucky school bus is a three point turnabout.

16. _____ School bus drivers shall not turn right on red.

17. _____ An rectangular sign shape means information.

18. _____ A road sign with red slash inside a circle means that something is prohibited.

19._____ No person shall stop a school bus within 30 feet of any flashing beacon, stop sign, or traffic control signal located at the side of the road.

20. _____ You may legally stop a school bus in front of a driveway to load or unload students.

INSTRUCTOR'S SIGNATE: _____

DRIVING FUNDAMENTALS
TEST
ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE OR FILL IN THE BLANK

ANSWER KEY

The answer key is only released to KDE endorsed trainers.

CHAPTER 9

FORWARD CONTROL BUSES

FORWARD CONTROL BUSES

LESSON TOPICS:

FORWARD CONTROL BUSES

OBJECTIVES:

- To enable the driver to gain knowledge and display the necessary skills to safely and properly operate a forward control bus.
- To ensure safe and efficient transportation of students with this gained knowledge of skills to properly operate a forward control bus.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	INTRODUCTION Due to the differences in forward control buses versus the more common conventional style buses, this unit will focus on the driver adapting to these differences: A. Mirrors B. Turning radius C. Backing D. Driver's seat E. Distance from students F. Foot position G. Air operated door H. Driving fundamentals I. Stopping distance **VOCABULARY** **AIR OPERATED DOOR –** (automatic door) operates on air pressure by an electrical switch located on the control panel. **CONTROLLED SLIPPING** – steering recovery technique. **CONVENTIONAL (TYPE C) –** engine is in front of the windshield and the entrance door is behind the front wheels. **CONVEX MIRROR** – the center of the mirror is higher than it's sides. **COUNTER-STEER** – to turn the steering wheel back in other direction.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	CROSSOVER MIRROR – mirror that shows the front of the bus and down to the pavement. **DOG HOUSE** – the inside cover of the engine, located by the driver's seat. **DOUBLE NICKEL** – a mirror that provides a long view along the left and right sides of the vehicle to enable the driver to view the rear tires at ground level; minimum distance of two hundred feet (200') to the rear of the bus and at least twelve feet (12') perpendicular to the side of the bus at the rear tire. **EGRESS** – to exit. **FORWARD CONTROL (TYPE D)** – a body installed upon a chassis with the engine mounted in front; the front axle is behind the windshield and the engine is beside the driver's seat; the entrance door is ahead of the front wheels. **HAND-OVER-HAND** – a steering technique where hands cross over one another. **INGRESS** – to enter. **PIVOT POINT** – the rear-end swing from the rear tire of the bus while making turns; rear overhang swings in opposite direction of turn. **PUSH-PULL** – a steering technique where one hand pushes the steering wheel up while the other hand pulls the steering wheel down. **TRACKING** – the path of front tires on a separate path of rear tires when turning; a visual technique used to

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	teach drivers proper lane positioning. **WEST COAST** –a rear visual outside long mirror that provides view along the left and right side of the vehicle. **WHEELBASE** – the distance from the front tires to the rear tires. **DIFFERENCES OF FORWARD CONTROL VS. CONVENTIONAL BUSES** The are many differences between a forward control and conventional bus. One of the major differences is visibility in relation to mirrors, side windows, windshields and maneuverability. In operating a forward control vehicle, the driver will notice almost immediately that visibility is greater due to the width of the windshield. **MIRRORS** There are currently seven (7) mirrors on the forward control bus. Mirrors will be different on each bus, depending upon the year of manufacture. There may be a West Coast mirror and two (2) convex mirrors on each side or there may be a set of double nickel mirrors with two (2) convex mirrors on each side which could bring the total of mirrors to nine (9), counting the inside rear view mirror. The double nickel replaces the West Coast mirror. The driver of a forward control bus does not have as clear a view of the windows down the left side. The mirrors can be difficult to adjust in order to achieve full view. The driver will need assistance in the adjustment due to the height of the mirrors.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	TURNING RADIUS Whenever you drive a forward control bus, be aware that the longer the wheelbase – the wider the turn. The forward control bus has a shorter wheelbase than the conventional bus so turns can be made easier in close areas. The wheelbase and rear wheels must be considered while making turns and while rounding curves. The forward control is generally easier to maneuver in tight places. Making left and right turns can be achieved with less room available, which decreases incident potential. **BACKING** In backing the forward control bus, there is very little difference since both vehicles are straight. Use of the mirrors is a must for backing all buses. All mirrors must be in proper adjustment to meet the needs of the individual driver. Since the turning radius is smaller, care must be taken when backing and turning the wheel. You must remember that you have an overhang in front of the axle and in the rear, so be aware that the right or left corner will strike any object near the bus, if the driver turns the wheel in excess of what is required. **The secret to teaching backing is to go slow.** **DRIVER'S SEAT** When entering a forward control bus, it is apparent that the driver's seating arrangement is much different than in a conventional bus. The housing for the engine (dog house) is an obstacle. In the older forward control

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	buses, the dog house is not to be climbed upon for any reason. The driver must get into the driver's seat by careful maneuvering. The newer forward control buses have a plate on the dog house that will allow the driver to step on or walk over.
	DISTANCE FROM STUDENTS
	Upon entering the forward control bus, it's obvious that the driver is in an isolated area. This creates potential problems. Student behavior is more difficult to manage because of this space – the sound of the motor is loud and the driver cannot always hear the students – the students cannot always hear the driver giving instructions. The driver is restricted by space which could cause problems if he/she needs to leave his/her area quickly. The time it would take to actually get to a student takes longer, so the driver has to be alert to potential safety problems.
	FOOT POSITIONS
	Older Type D forward control driver seats have little or no lateral movement. Forward and reverse movement of the driver's seat is adequate. To obtain the best possible foot position, all drivers should adhere to the following: 1. Adjust the driver's seat to the best possible body configuration. 2. Adjust the seat so that the right foot can reach the foot pedals for safe operation of the vehicle.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	3. When moving the right foot from the accelerator to the brake, lift the right foot completely off the accelerator pedal and place on the brake pedal. Do no mistake the accelerator for the brake pedal. 4. When depressing the brake pedal, it is recommended that only light steady pressure be applied, using the forward portion of the right foot (ball) to apply the brake. **AIR OPERATED DOOR** Forward control buses are equipped with an air operated door, activated by an electrical switch located on the control panel. All air operated doors are not equipped with a delay switch. Even though this door is easier to operate, the driver must constantly be aware of passenger movement to guard against student injury and/or egress. **TURNING** When turning a forward control bus, you should pull further into the intersection before turning. As with turning any vehicle, you must have your speed reduced, be in the proper lane for turning and constantly monitoring the mirrors and traffic environment. **STOPPING DISTANCE** Tests have shown no significant differences in stopping distances comparing a forward control vehicle to a conventional. In a forward control bus, the driver feels the stopping distance is longer due to the increased

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	distance of the driver from the rear of the vehicle. Note that forward control vehicles seem to slide more than the conventional when making a panic stop. **NOTE: THE MAIN CONCERN REGARDING THE DIFFERENCES BETWEEN CONVENTIONAL AND FORWARD CONTROL BUSES IS THE CHANGING BACK AND FORTH OF DRIVING ONE TYPE OF VEHICLE AND THEN THE OTHER TYPE OF VEHICLE. WHEN A DRIVER MAKES SUCH A CHANGE, THEY MUST CONTINUALLY BE AWARE OF THE DIFFERENCES AS THEY ADAPT.**

NAME: _____ DATE: _____

FORWARD CONTROL BUS
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

1. _____ The crossover mirror shows the front of the bus.

2. _____ The forward control bus has a longer wheelbase than a conventional bus.

3. _____ The Type D forward control bus has greater visibility to the rear than a conventional bus.

4. _____ The best steering technique for a non-tilt steering wheel is the push-pull method.

5. _____ Proper lane positioning is vital before turning at an intersection.

6. _____ Proper hand positioning on the steering wheel is at the clock position of 10 and 3.

7. _____ To counter steer is to turn the steering wheel counter clockwise.

8. _____ A right turn in a forward control bus can be made in less space than a right turn in a conventional bus.

9. _____ When making a left turn, the vehicle is moved partially into the intersection before starting the turn.

10. _____ Stopping distance is increased when operating a forward control bus.

11. _____ A Type D bus is a conventional bus.

12. _____ The housing for the engine compartment is referred to as the dog house.

13. _____ Some differences between a forward control and conventional bus are mirrors, windshields and maneuverability.

14. _____ Drivers should climb onto the dog house to enter and exit the driver's seat on all forward control buses.

15. _____ Communication between driver and passenger is more difficult to achieve on a forward control bus.

INSTRUCTOR'S SIGNATURE: _____DATE: _____

FORWARD CONTROL BUS
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

ANSWER KEY

The answer key is only released to KDE endorsed trainers.

1.

CHAPTER 10
DEFENSIVE DRIVING

DEFENSIVE DRIVING

LESSON TOPIC:

DEFENSIVE DRIVING

OBJECTIVES:

- To review procedures and techniques to help avoid placing the driver, vehicle and/or passengers in hazardous situations.

PERFORMANCE STANDARDS:

The driver will:

- understand both the vital importance of constantly evaluating the mechanical limitations of the bus, and their own physical and mental limitations as far as driving is concerned.
- develop the ability to use surveillance technique to aid in recognizing possible dangers associated with drivers, vehicles and natural and man-made conditions; and
- know what steps to take in anticipation of potentially hazardous situations and how to select driving techniques adapted to use the specific circumstances involved.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	INTRODUCTION: Incident investigators report that between 95% to 99% of all traffic incidents are caused by human failure. Probably the most significant human failure, as far as the school bus driver is concerned, is his failure to adjust his driving to hazardous conditions that can cause incidents. Proper adjustment to such conditions is what we mean by defensive driving.
SHOW TRANSPARENCIES AND READ ALOUD TO CLASS.	**DEFENSIVE DRIVING** DEFENSIVE DRIVING is defined as a set of procedures and techniques designed to help the driver avoid getting himself, his vehicle and his passengers into hazardous situations; or, staying away from other motorists, obstacles or pedestrians. **If you are not close to something, you cannot hit it and it can't hit you.**
PRINT FORMULA IN UPPER FAR LEFT CORNER OF THE BOARD (OUT OF THE WAY, BUT VISIBLE).	Stated as a FORMULA, defensive driving safety means: **RECOGNIZE POTENTIAL HAZARDS + DECIDE ON THE DEFENSE AND ACT = SAFETY IN TIME** The definition says to avoid hazardous situations and the formula describes how to do it. Your success as a defensive driver and a safe school bus operator will depend in part upon your ability to recognize and react to potentially hazardous situations.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
REMOVE TRANSPARENCY.	**<u>POTENTIAL HAZARDS</u>** BUT WHAT IS A POTENTIAL HAZARD AND HOW DO YOU RECOGNIZE IT? Let's look at an example of what we mean. Let's say you are driving your own car and have gone to a party where alcoholic beverages are being served. A. The potential hazard is – becoming drunk. B. The defenses are – don't drink or don't drive. C. The time to act is – before drinking or before driving. ** ALL THE PARTS OF THE FORMULA ARE IMPORTANT**
PRINT THESE ON THE BOARD BENEATH THE FORMULA: **DRIVER CONDITIONS** **VEHICLE CONDITIONS** **NATURAL CONDITIONS** **MAN-MADE CONDITIONS**	You can't act if you have not recognized the potential hazard and all the recognition in the world won't help if you can't understand the necessary defense and act in time. This is just one example. In the remainder of this section, we will see HOW THE DEFENSIVE DRIVING FORMULA CAN BE APPLIED to the following types of normal and unusual conditions that the school bus driver must face.
PUT A CHECK BY "DRIVER CONDITIONS" ON THE BOARD.	**<u>DRIVER'S CONDITION</u>** Let's start with you, the driver. When you drive a school bus, you may be a hazard to yourself, the vehicle or your passengers if you lack the necessary knowledge skills, health and/or attitude to be a safe driver.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
ASK: "WHAT ARE SOME THINGS A DRIVER MUST KNOW BEFORE HE CAN DRIVE A SCHOOL BUS SAFELY AND EFFICIENTLY?"	**DRIVER'S KNOWLEDGE** A driver who does not possess the following knowledge must be considered a hazard: A. state highway laws B. local rules and regulations C. maintenance procedures D. incident and emergency procedures E. defensive driving F. first aid Ignorance is the potential hazard, and recognition is simple: Are you knowledgeable in each of the areas discussed above? Do you know how, what, where, when and why about each? If not, the time to become knowledgeable is before you drive. **DRIVER'S SKILL** As with knowledge, a driver without the necessary skills is also a hazard when he/she is on the road with a bus load of children. The driver must be able to: A. correctly and safely perform all driving maneuvers, and B. operate all equipment (including emergency equipment). **PRACTICE SHOULD BE PERFORMED IN A BUS WITH NO PASSENGERS.**
ASK: "WHAT ARE SOME HEALTH FACTORS THAT COULD CAUSE PROBLEMS AND WHAT SHOULD YOU DO ABOUT THEM?"	**DRIVER'S HEALTH** Another condition that must be checked for potential

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	hazards is the driver's health. A good defensive driver will not drive with any of the following health problems: A. fatigue B. sickness C. defective eyesight D. defective hearing E. emotional instability If you must drive with a health problem, take extra precautions in order to compensate for the problem, but be alert to compensating for health problems with prescription or patent medicines. A driver should report to his/her supervisor any medication that he/she is currently taking. Some effects of the cure may be as bad as the original problem. Check with your doctor about the possible effects of prescriptions and read patent medicine labels carefully. Will they affect your ability to safely operate a bus? **DRIVER'S ATTITUDE** The last driver condition to check for potential hazards is attitude. Although often overlooked, this area is probably the one that has the greatest influence on a person's driving performance. While not usually difficult to correct, it is probably the most difficult condition to recognize. The defensive driver must constantly check to make sure he/she is:

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	A. alert; B. thinking positively; C. concentrating on the job at hand; and D. is in control of his/her emotions. If you've had an argument **BEFORE** you start driving, you may not be in control of your temper – or properly in control of the bus. **DRIVER SUMMARY** In summary, the first and most often overlook area of defensive driving is in the mental and physical condition of the driver.
ASK: "ARE THERE ANY QUESTIONS ABOUT 'DRIVER CONDITIONS'?"	Check and correct yourself before you drive. A driver on the road without the necessary knowledge or skills, with health problems or with a poor attitude is headed for disaster.
PLACE A CHECK BY "VEHICLE CONDITIONS" ON THE BOARD. **POINT TO THE FORMULA.**	**<u>VEHICLE CONDITIONS</u>** It is obvious now that the driver may constitute a hazard. In this section, we'll turn our attention to the vehicle and ask a similar question. Is the mechanical condition of the bus a hazard? How can the defensive driving formula be applied to vehicle conditions? Is the bus in safe operating condition? You'll never know unless you perform a legal pre-trip and even then, recognition of a potential hazard is only half the battle. Defects or potential defects should be repaired or at least watched and compensated for, if applicable.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
SHOW TRANSPARENCY. **READ EACH ITEM AND BRIEFLY DISCUSS.**	It should be obvious to you that the recognition of, and defense against, potential vehicle hazards is nothing more than preventative maintenance. **SUMMARY** To summarize quickly, plus offer a little review, let's go over the PRE-TRIP INSPECTION items (see Chapter IV). **PRE-TRIP INSPECTION ITEMS** ✓ TIRES & WHEELS ✓ BATTERY ✓ HEADLIGHTS ✓ HEATER ✓ TURN SIGNALS ✓ WINDOWS ✓ BELTS ✓ HORN ✓ MIRRORS ✓ CROSSING GATE, IF EQUIPPED ✓ FLASHERS ✓ STOP ARM and 8-WAY LOADING LIGHTS ✓ SEATS ✓ COOLANT ✓ BRAKES ✓ WINDSHIELD ✓ BRAKE LIGHTS ✓ DOORS

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	✓ OIL ✓ EMERGENCY EQUIPMENT ✓ ENGINE ✓ TRANSMISSION

7/02

NAME: _____ DATE: _____

DEFENSIVE DRIVING
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

1. _____ The number one cause of traffic accidents is driver error.

2. _____ An example of a vehicle condition that could lead to a hazardous situation is the driver being intoxicated.

3. _____ Driver attitude usually has little effect on driving ability.

4. _____ When learning to drive a school bus, it is best to become knowledgeable by driving with children on board.

5. _____ Preventative maintenance is a vital part of defensive driving.

INSTRUCTOR'S SIGNATURE: _____

DEFENSIVE DRIVING
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

KEY

The answer key is only released to KDE endorsed trainers.

CHAPTER 11
CRITICAL SITUATIONS

CRITICAL SITUATIONS

LESSON TOPIC:

CRITICAL SITUATIONS

OBJECTIVES:

The driver will be able to:

- explain how he/she can improve his/her ability to correctly respond to critical situations;
- identify and list a set of principles for preventing and correcting any kind of traction loss;
- explain the correct response for dealing with loss of brakes, steering failure, tire blow-out, headlight failure, “stuck” accelerator and overheated engine;
- identify the three classifications of fires and name the number and type of fire extinguisher(s) to be carried on the bus;
- explain and demonstrate the correct procedure for operating a fire extinguisher;
- state the procedure for placing warning devices around the bus; and
- explain, in depth, the seven emergency evacuation procedures and briefly explain the eighth.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	INTRODUCTION Even the most competent bus driver is confronted by critical situations created by various causes; such as hazardous roadway conditions, mechanical malfunction, unpredictable outside forces or obstacles and driving failures. The professional bus driver is prepared to meet these situations. Listed below are some of the most common critical situations you might experience which we will discuss in this chapter: 1. Responses to critical situations. 2. Traction loss. 3. Vehicle malfunction and failure. One of the goals of this unit is helping you properly respond to critical situations. To help you in this regard, we will: 1. define critical situations; 2. identify critical situations; 3. predict how drivers respond; 4. explain why they respond a certain way; and 5. explain how you can improve your responses.
SHOW TRANSPARENCIES	**CAUSES** A critical situation is any situation which may result in a collision. Critical situations may be caused by: 1. driver action; 2. roadway situation; and/or 3. vehicle malfunction.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	Critical situations allow little or no time for decision making and frequently produce an incorrect response. A driver will make close to **twenty (20) major decisions every mile**. A major decision is classified as one that could be life threatening. The element of surprise influences a driver's actions. Lack of knowledge and skill, and lack of practice of that knowledge and skill can also influence whether a driver is surprised. **<u>RESPONSE</u>** Why drivers respond as they do: **SURPRISE CAUSES HASTY ACTIONS** ↕ **SURPRISE LEADS TO PANIC/FEAR** ↕ **PANIC CONFUSES SKILLS** ↕ **CORRECT ACTIONS MUST BE LEARNED IN ADVANCE** Experience in dealing with a critical situation reduces the emotional impact on drivers and increases the chance of making the correct response. Drivers can improve their responses by learning the following: Thinking reduces panic. ↕ Ability depends upon driver mindset. ↕ Knowledge and practice reduces surprise. ↕ "What if" is good practice. ↕ Repetition reduces surprise.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	DRIVER SAFETY FORMULA **SKILL** **+ KNOWLEDGE** **+CONDITIONING** **+CONCENTRATION** **= REDUCTION IN CRITICAL SITUATIONS** The main point of this formula is a combination of several components that leads to a reduction in critical driving situations. These components will be covered in this unit. A conditioning process and constant concentration will help you prevent critical situations from going beyond the point of no escape. It is felt that if a driver makes a concerted effort to stay away from other vehicles, obstacles, and pedestrians, he/she will lessen the decisions that he/she will be required to make. Thus, the fewer the decisions, the fewer the opportunities for mistakes. **TRACTION LOSS** Traction is important for starting, stopping and turning any vehicle. Therefore, when traction is reduced or lost completely, you are confronted with a critical situation. Traction is the friction between the tires and the road surface that prevents the wheels from slipping or skidding. Traction loss occurs when tires lose their rolling grip on the road surface, resulting in partial or total loss of vehicle control.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

CAUSES OF TRACTION LOSS

1. Tire conditions
2. Hydroplaning
3. Environmental conditions
4. Driving techniques (over-accelerating, over-braking, over-steering)
5. Speed

Skidding can be minimized by:

1. Keeping brakes and tires in good working order.
2. Increasing sight distance and reacting to hazards well in advance.
3. Matching speed to conditions.
4. Avoiding over-powering, over-braking and over-steering.
5. Periodically checking the "feel" of slippery surface.
6. Staying off the highway when conditions are hazardous.

POTENTIAL VEHICLE MALFUNCTIONS

Critical situations influencing the safety of the school bus and its passengers can develop from vehicle malfunctions as well as from traction loss. Listed below are the potential vehicle malfunctions we will discuss at this point:

1. Loss of brakes
2. Steering failure

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	3. Tire blow-out 4. Headlight failure 5. Accelerator sticking 6. Engine over-heating 7. Stop Arm/Crossing Gate malfunction **LOSS OF BRAKES** **INDICATOR:** Low air pressure buzzer, gauges. **CORRECTION:** 1. Use the engine as a brake, downshift. 2. Use remaining air pressure to stop bus in a safe location. 3. Call for assistance. **STEERING FAILURE** **INDICATOR:** Bus does not respond to steering or responds strangely. **CORRECTION:** 1. Grip wheel firmly – decrease bus speed. 2. Stop bus quickly and safely – get off road if safe to do so. 3. Evacuate passengers, if needed. 4. Secure area. **TIRE BLOW-OUT** **INDICATOR:** Front tire – bus will pull in direction of flat. Back tire – rear of bus will swerve or sway violently.
WITH SOME POWER STEERING SYSTEMS, THE POWER STEERING WILL BE LOST – MAKING IT EXTREMELY DIFFICULT TO STEER THE BUS.	

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

CORRECTION:

1. Grip wheel firmly.
2. Release accelerator.
3. Brake gradually – do not lock wheels.
4. Move off roadway when safe to do so.
5. Secure vehicle.

HEADLIGHT FAILURE

INDICATOR:

Roadway darkens.

CORRECTION:

1. Slow down.
2. Stay on path.
3. Look for escape.
4. Look for alternate lighting to assist you.
5. Turn on parking/auxiliary lights.
6. Turn on emergency flashers, brake lights and right/left turn signals.

ACCELERATOR STICKING

INDICATOR:

The engine races.

CORRECTION:

1. Cut power to wheels by shifting to neutral.
2. Depress clutch if manual transmission.
3. Get off roadway.
4. Turn off ignition.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
CHECK WITH SUPERVISOR ON WHETHER YOU SHOULD ATTEMPT TO DO ANYTHING UNDER THE HOOD.	**ENGINE OVERHEATS** **INDICATOR:** Shown by temperature gauge or warning light. **CORRECTION:** 1. Pull off road. 2. Shift to neutral and set park brake. 3. Run engine at fast idle. 4. Stop engine if it does not cool **NOTE: DO NOT TAKE THE CAP OFF THE RADIATOR. BECAUSE OF THE TREMENDOUS PRESSURE THAT HAS BUILT UP IN THE COOLING SYSTEM, THE WATER WILL SHOOT OUT AND YOU COULD BECOME SEVERELY BURNED.** 5. Call for assistance. **<u>EMERGENCY EQUIPMENT</u>** At times, when critical situations occur, it is necessary to operate some of the emergency equipment in the bus or to engage in emergency procedures to protect the passengers and the bus. We will review: 1. operating a fire extinguisher; 2. placing reflective triangles; and 3. evacuating the bus in an emergency.
ALL KENTUCKY SCHOOL BUSES HAVE A FIRE EXTINGUISHER THAT WILL EXTINGUISH ALL THREE TYPES OF FIRES.	**FIRES/FIRE EXTINGUISHERS** There are different types of fires and each must be handled differently. Furthermore, fire extinguishers are classified by the type(s) of fires they are designed to

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

combat. It is important that you recognize the different types so you can select the appropriate fire extinguisher for the type of fire involved.

There are three major classifications of fires:

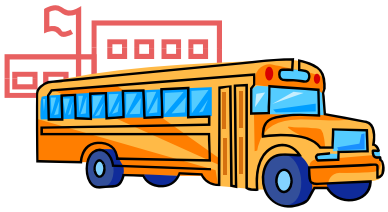
1. Type A – combustible materials
2. Type B – flammable liquids
3. Type C – electrical

A school bus must carry at least one fire extinguisher. The fire extinguisher should be of a 2A-20-BC dry chemical type. If the school bus was manufactured after 1986, the fire extinguisher should be 3A-40-BC.

During any fire, time is of the essence. There is no time to be fumbling around trying to find the fire extinguisher or figuring out how to operate it. It is important that you know the location of the fire extinguisher, how it operates, and how to fight the fire. This response must be almost automatic.

OPERATING A FIRE EXTINGUISHER

1. Pull pin – use twisting motion.
2. Hold in upright position.
3. Squeeze trigger lever.
4. Direct at base of fire.
5. Use side to side motion.
6. Leave yourself an exit.



All of the aforementioned information is secondary to getting the passengers off the bus – **the safety of the students should always come first**. A school bus can be

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	replaced – passengers cannot. **NOTE:** FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION ON FIRE EXTINGUISHERS, SEE CHAPTER 10. **WARNING DEVICES** The Kentucky School Bus Minimum Specifications requires that three (3) bi-directional emergency reflective triangles be carried in all school buses and used for warning devices. If the situation dictates using reflective triangles, you should do so within ten (10) minutes after stopping. Place the triangles in the following locations: 1. on the traffic side of the vehicle, within ten feet (10’) of the rear bumper; 2. about one hundred feet (100’) behind and ahead of the vehicle, on the shoulder or in the lane in which you are stopped; and 3. back beyond any hill, curve or other obstruction that prevents other drivers from seeing the bus within 500 feet (500’). If you must stop on or by a one-way or divided highway, place warning devices ten feet (10’), one-hundred feet (100’) and two-hundred feet (200’) behind the bus, toward the approaching traffic. When placing your triangles, hold them between yourself and the oncoming traffic.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
DEMONSTRATE THE SEVEN EMERGENCY EVACUATION PROCEDURES.	**EMERGENCY EVACUATION PROCEDURES** There are times when a critical situation occurs of such severity, or poses such a threat to the passengers, that the best thing to do is evacuate the school bus. A bus should always be evacuated when: 1. there is a fire; 2. there is the potential for a fire to occur; or 3. the vehicle is in a dangerous position. **TYPES OF EVACUATION PROCEDURES** 1. Front door evacuation 2. Rear door evacuation 3. Side door evacuation 4. Front and rear door evacuation 5. Front and side door evacuation 6. Rear and side door evacuation 7. Front, rear and side door evacuation 8. Emergency windows, hatches and windshield evacuation **FRONT DOOR EVACUATION** 1. The driver should give the command "emergency bus evacuation, remain seated, front-door." 2. The driver should open the front door and then stand between the first occupied seats, facing the front.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	3. A helper(s)_should be appointed to take position outside the front door to assist those leaving the bus. 4. A leader should be appointed to lead the children in a safe direction (to be determined by the driver) at least one hundred feet (100') away from the bus. 5. Starting with the right seat, begin evacuating by backing toward the rear of the bus while releasing the pupils one (1) seat at a time alternating from right to left until all students are evacuated. 6. Walk to the front of the bus, checking each seat to be sure it is empty. 7. Leave the bus and have the helper(s) go with you to join the other students. **REAR DOOR EVACUATION** 1. The driver should give the command "emergency bus evacuation, remain seated, rear-door." 2. After the driver announces a rear door evacuation the driver should proceed to the rear emergency door and open the rear door. 3. Have the helper(s) open the door and take position outside the rear door.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	4. A leader should be appointed to lead the children in a safe direction (to be determined by the driver) at least one hundred feet (100') away from the bus. 5. The driver should then start evacuating the passengers one (1) seat at a time beginning with the left rear seat first and alternating left and right seats until the driver, who is backing towards the front of the bus, reaches the front of the bus and all students have been evacuated. 6. The driver then should walk to the rear of the bus to ensure that all students have exited the bus. 7. The driver should then exit the bus and join the students at the designated assembly location. **SIDE DOOR EVACUATION** **Front Collision** 1. The driver should give the command "emergency bus evacuation, remain seated, side door." 2. When evacuating from the left side, the first thing a driver must determine is if there is traffic approaching the bus from the road and if there is room to evacuate without jumping into traffic. 3. The driver should go to the left side emergency door and open it.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	4. He/she should swing out the door and look in both directions for other vehicles approaching the bus and ensure that no child is evacuated into the path of a moving vehicle. 5. Two (2) helpers should be placed on the ground at the side door to assist those leaving the bus. 6. A leader should be appointed to lead the children around the bus, toward the rear, facing traffic to a designated location (to be determined by the driver) at lease one hundred feet (100') away from the bus. 7. In the event of a **front collision**, the driver should then begin the evacuation by backing toward the front of the bus while releasing the pupils one (1) seat at a time until all those students riding in the front portion of the bus are evacuated. 8. After the front portion of the bus is clear, the driver should then proceed to the area of the side door and back toward the rear of the bus and release the pupils one (1) seat at a time until the remainder of the students are evacuated. 9. The driver should then check the bus to determine that everyone has evacuated and exited through the left side door.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	10. Walk to the rear of the bus, facing traffic and ensure there are no students alongside the bus and then join the students at the designated location. **SIDE DOOR EVACUATION** **Rear Collision** 1. The driver should give the command "emergency bus evacuation, remain seated, side door." 2. When evacuating from the left side, the first thing a driver must determine is if there is traffic approaching the bus from the road and if there is room to evacuate without jumping into traffic. 3. The driver should go to the left side emergency door and open it. 4. He/she should swing out the door and look in both directions for other vehicles approaching the bus and ensure that no child is evacuated into the path of a moving vehicle. 5. Two (2) helpers should be placed on the ground at the side door to assist those leaving the bus. 6. A leader should be appointed to lead the children around the bus, toward the front, with traffic to a designated location (to be determined by the driver) at lease one hundred feet (100') away from the bus.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	7. In the event of a **rear collision**, the rear of the bus should be evacuated first with the driver backing toward the rear from the left side door releasing the students one (1) seat at a time. 8. After the rear portion of the bus is clear, the driver should back towards the front of the bus from the left side door, releasing the students one (1) seat at a time. 9. The driver should then check the bus to determine that everyone has evacuated then exit through the left side door. 10. Walk to the front of the bus, with traffic to ensure that there are no students alongside the bus and then join the students at the designated location. **FRONT – SIDE DOOR EVACUATION** 1. The driver should give the command "emergency bus evacuation, remain seated, front-side door." 2. The driver should open the front door and then stand between the first occupied seats, facing the front. 3. Direct the helper(s) to take position outside the front door to assist those leaving the bus.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	4. A leader should be appointed to lead the children in a safe direction (to be determined by the driver) at least one hundred feet (100') away from the bus. 5. Starting with the right seat, begin evacuating by backing toward the rear of the bus while releasing the pupils one (1) seat at a time alternating from right to left until all students riding in the front portion of the bus are evacuated. 6. At that point, the driver should open the left side emergency door and **check traffic** to determine there is no other moving traffic present which would create a danger to exiting passengers. 7. Two (2) helpers should be placed on the ground to assist passengers as they evacuate the bus. 8. Another leader is appointed to lead the passengers around the bus toward the rear, facing traffic to a designated location where they will join the passengers from the front of the bus. 9. The driver resumes the evacuation, backing towards the rear of the bus releasing the remaining passengers one (1) seat at a time by the right-left side method until all the passengers have evacuated the bus.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	10. After the bus is empty, the driver will check to determine that everyone is off, the driver should then exit the front door. 11. The driver should walk around the bus to ensure that no one is standing alongside the left side of the bus and then join the students at the designated location. **REAR – SIDE DOOR EVACUATION** 1. The driver should give the command "emergency bus evacuation, remain seated, side door." 2. After the driver announces a rear-side door evacuation, the driver should proceed to the rear emergency door and open the rear door. 3. Two (2) helpers should be placed on the ground to assist passengers as they evacuate the bus. 4. A helper should be appointed to lead the children in a safe direction (to be determined by the driver) at lease one hundred feet (100') away from the bus. 5. The driver should then start evacuating the passengers one (1) seat at a time beginning with the left rear seat first and alternating left and right seats until the driver who is backing towards the front of the bus reaches the halfway point.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	6. At that point, the driver should open the left side emergency door and **check traffic** to determine there is no other moving traffic present which would create a danger to exiting passengers. 7. Two (2) more helpers should placed on the ground to assist passengers as they evacuate the bus. 8. Another leader is appointed to lead the passengers around the bus, toward the rear, facing traffic to the assembly point where the rear half of the passengers are located. 9. The driver resumes the evacuation, backing towards the front of the bus releasing the remaining passengers one (1) seat at a time using the left-right side method until all the passengers have evacuated the bus. 10. After the bus is empty, the driver will check to determine that everyone has been evacuated, the driver should then exit the left side door. 11. Walk to the rear of the bus, facing traffic to ensure that there are no students alongside the bus and join the students at the designated point. **FRONT – REAR DOOR EVACUATION** 1. The driver should give the command "emergency bus evacuation, remain seated, front-rear door."

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	2. The driver should then stand between the first occupied seats, facing the front. 3. A helper(s) should be appointed to take position outside the front door to assist those leaving the bus. 4. A leader should be appointed to lead the children in a safe direction (to be determined by the driver) at least one hundred feet (100') away from the bus. 5. Starting with the right seat, begin evacuating by backing toward the rear of the bus while releasing the pupils one (1) seat at a time alternating from right to left until all students riding in the front portion of the bus are evacuated. 6. The driver should then proceed to the rear emergency door and open it. 7. Two (2) helpers should be placed on the ground to assist passengers as they evacuate the bus. 8. A helper should be appointed to lead the children in a safe direction (to be determined by the driver) at least one hundred feet (100') away from the bus.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	9. The driver should then start evacuating the passengers one (1) seat at a time beginning with the left rear seat first and alternating left and right seats until the bus is empty. 10. The driver then should walk to the front of the bus, checking that the bus is empty and then leave through the front door and have the helper(s) go with you to join the other students. **FRONT-REAR-SIDE DOOR EVACUATION** In this type of evacuation, the passengers in the front eight (8) seats exit the front door. The passengers in the next six (6) seats or seven (7) seats (depending on the year of the bus; 1993 buses have a seat in front of the left side door) exit through the left side emergency door and the rear eight (8) seats exit through the rear emergency door. 1. The driver gives the command "emergency evacuation, remain seated, front, rear and side door". 2. The driver should open the front door and then stand between the first occupied seats, facing the front. 3. A helper should be appointed to take position outside the front door to assist those leaving the bus.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	4. A leader should be appointed to lead the children in a safe direction (to be determined by the driver) at least one hundred feet (100') away from the bus. 5. Starting with the right seat, begin evacuating by backing toward the rear of the bus while releasing the pupils one (1) seat at a time alternating from right to left until all students in the front eight (8) seats are evacuated. 6. At that point, the driver should open the left side emergency door and **check traffic** to determine there is no other moving traffic present which would create a danger to exiting passengers. 7. Two (2) helpers should be placed on the ground to assist passengers as they evacuate the bus. 8. Another leader is appointed to lead the passengers around the bus, toward the rear, if safe, facing traffic to the assembly point where the passengers from the front are located. 9. The driver resumes the evacuation, starting with the seat next to the left side door and the seat across from the side door. As the driver is backing towards the rear of the bus releasing the remaining passengers one (1) seat at a time by the left-right side method for five (5) more seats depending on bus size.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	10. The driver should then proceed to the rear emergency door and open it. 11. Two (2) helpers should be placed on the ground to assist passengers as they evacuate the bus. 12. A leader should be appointed to lead the children in a safe direction (to be determined by the driver) at least one hundred feet (100’) away from the bus. 13. The driver should then start evacuating the passengers one (1) seat at a time beginning with the left rear seat first and alternating left and right seats until the driver who is backing towards the front of the bus until the rest of the bus is evacuated. 14. After the passengers are clear, the driver returns to the front of the bus ensuring all passengers are off and exits the front door. 15. The driver then walks off around to the left side of the bus, facing traffic, to ensure no one remains along side of the bus and then joins the passengers at the designated assembly location.

7/02

NAME: _____ DATE: _____

CRITICAL SITUATIONS
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

1. _____ The driver can improve his/her ability to correctly respond to a critical situation.

2. _____ A critical situation is any situation which may result in a collision.

3. _____ Critical situations are caused by driver action, roadway situations and/or vehicle malfunctions only.

4. _____ Critical situations allow adequate time for decision making and usually produce hurried responses.

5. _____ A critical situation may occur when tires lose their grip on the road surface, resulting in partial or total loss of vehicle control.

6. _____ There are several ways to minimize skidding but the best way is by matching speed to road and vehicle conditions.

7. _____ When a critical situation is caused by loss of brakes, the best response is to put the transmission in neutral.

8. _____ A school bus must carry at least one (1) fire extinguisher.

9. _____ The fire extinguisher to be carried on a post 1986 Kentucky school bus is rated as a 3A-40-DC type.

10. _____ When using a fire extinguisher, it should be held in an upright position, directed at the base of the fire and rotated with a side to side motion.

11. _____ There are four (4) portable reflectors required on a Kentucky school bus.

12. _____ Each reflector should be placed fifty feet (50’) apart when staking out a school bus.

13. _____ There are times when a critical situation occurs of such severity, or poses such a threat to the passengers, that the best thing to do is evacuate the school bus.

14. _____ When a school bus is in a dangerous position, it should be evacuated.

INSTRUCTOR’S SIGNATURE: _____

CRITICAL SITUATIONS
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

KEY

The answer key is only released to KDE endorsed trainers.

CHAPTER 12
INCIDENTS AND EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

INCIDENT AND EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

LESSON TOPIC:

INCIDENT AND EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

OBJECTIVE:

GIVEN PROPER INSTRUCTION, THE SCHOOL BUS DRIVER WILL BE ABLE TO DEAL WITH INCIDENTS, MECHANICAL FAILURES/BREAKDOWNS AND EMERGENCY EVACUATIONS.

PERFORMANCE STANDARDS:

THE DRIVER WILL KNOW:

- THE MAJOR CAUSES OF INCIDENTS INVOLVING SCHOOL BUSES;
- THE LEGAL RESPONSIBILITIES AND REQUIRED ACTION IN CASE OF AN INCIDENT;
- WHAT PROCEDURES SHOULD BE TAKEN IN CASE OF AN INCIDENT;
- WHAT PROCEDURES SHOULD BE TAKEN IN CASE OF MECHANICAL FAILURES/BREAKDOWNS; AND
- WHAT PROCEDURES SHOULD BE FOLLOWED IN EVACUATING A BUS IN CASE OF EMERGENCY.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
DISCUSS POSSIBLE REASONS FOR INCIDENTS: YOUNG DRIVERS MAY BE LESS MATURE EMOTIONALLY AND LESS EXPERIENCED IN VARIOUS DRIVING SITUATIONS; ELDERLY DRIVERS TEND TO HAVE LONGER REACTION TIME, POORER VISION AND HEARING.	**INTRODUCTION** On a national and state level, statistics show that school bus drivers are at fault about half of the time; with failure to yield the right of way being the most common driver violation. Young and elderly drivers have a higher incident rate than the intermediate age group. Defective brakes are the most common mechanical factor, however, mechanical failures cause very few incidents.
EMPHASIZE THAT STANDARD OF CONDUCT INVOLVES "DUE CARE" OF VARYING DUTY. SCHOOL BUS DRIVERS ARE USUALLY ASSUMED TO HAVE A LEGAL DUTY TO ACT WITH A HIGHER DEGREE OF CARE THAN THE ORDINARY DRIVER BECAUSE THEY ARE TRANSPORTING PUPILS. **EXPLAIN STATEMENT #2: "FAILURE TO CONFORM TO A STANDARD OF CONDUCT" IS USUALLY DETERMINED BY WHETHER THE DRIVER COULD FORESEE HARM FROM HIS ACTION OR INACTION. THE QUESTION BECOMES: "WAS THE INCIDENT FORESEEABLE – AND THUS, PREVENTABLE – BY THE DRIVER?" IF SO, HE/SHE PROBABLY FAILED TO MEET THE STANDARD OF CONDUCT.**	**DRIVER LIABILITY FOR PUPIL INJURIES** A driver can be liable for injuries to school children caused by negligence. Courts have held that four (4) essential elements for negligence must be present: 1. your legal duty to conform to a standard of conduct for the protection of others against unreasonable risks; 2. your failure to conform to the standard; 3. a reasonable close connection between your conduct and resulting injury; and 4. actual loss of damage of the interests of another.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
DISCUSS THE EIGHT (8) CONSIDERATIONS LISTED. **CAUTION: "NORMALLY ACCEPTED PROCEDURES" MAY NOT INCLUDE CORPORAL PUNISHMENT.** **UNREASONABLE THREATS, ETC. GIVE EXAMPLES OF WHAT YOUR DISTRICT CONSIDERS "NORMALLY ACCEPTABLE."**	The considerations that most courts use in determining driver negligence are: 1. The degree of care a driver must use ranges from "ordinary" and "reasonable" to "extraordinary" and highest degree", and depends on their type of duty. Courts tend to require more care when younger children are involved. 2. Children, ages ten (10) or eleven (11), are generally considered capable of recognizing traffic dangers. 3. The driver and the district are accountable for maintaining a safe vehicle. 4. In incidents occurring while boarding and leaving a bus, factors or "reasonable care" and "safe places" determine negligence. 5. A driver is expected to keep order on a bus and may use any of the normally accepted procedures. 6. A driver is not automatically guilty of negligence if injury occurs. The driver can refute charges with proof that proper care was used. 7. A driver may be held liable for "his/her" actions separate from the district's liability. 8. NEGLIGENCE IS DETERMINED BY A JURY.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
OPTION: SHOW VIDEO FILM, "EMERGENCY PROCEDURES."	**<u>INCIDENT PROCEDURES</u>** If a driver is involved in a incident, there are prescribed procedures to follow that will meet the requirements of state law. Always remember that no two (2) incidents are exactly the same. The sequence of things in the suggested procedure may not be practical in every case. Good common sense should always be the rule. Remember, a driver's primary responsibility is to his/her passengers. The driver must remain calm. If a driver is physically unable to perform their duties, he/she should direct others to perform them. Should this be the case, the oldest and most responsible pupil should be asked to help. The following procedures are recommended, should the driver be involved in an incident or an emergency situation: 1. Set the parking brake. 2. Turn off the ignition and remove the keys. 3. Remain calm and reassure the pupils. 4. Use the emergency reflectors to "protect the scene." To protect the pupils and the bus from further incidents and injuries, place the emergency reflectors in the following manner: **NOTE:** When placing emergency reflectors, carry the open reflector in front of you between your body and oncoming traffic so
HAVE REFLECTORS ON HAND TO DEMONSTRATE HOW TO SET UP. USE OVERHEAD TRANSPARENCIES TO ILLUSTRATE HOW TO PLACE ON ROADWAYS.	

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
TRANSPARENCIES	that you will be more visible to other drivers. A. <u>ON A TWO-LANE HIGHWAY</u> 1) Place the first reflector one hundred feet (100’), or forty (40) paces, to the rear of the bus so that it can be seen but not run over. 2) Place the second reflector ten feet (10’) from left rear corner of bus. 3) Place the third reflector one hundred feet (100’), or forty (40) paces, to the front of the bus. B. <u>ON A CURVE OF HILL:</u> 1) Place the second and third reflectors as stated in Section A. 2) Place the first reflector one to five hundred feet (100’-500’), or forty to two hundred (40-200) paces, to the rear of the bus where it will give ample warning to motorists. C. <u>ON A DIVIDED HIGHWAY:</u> 1) Place the first and second reflectors as stated in Section A. 2) Place the third reflector two hundred feet (200’), or eighty (80) paces, to the rear of the bus. D. If the bus is blocking a traffic lane, all reflectors should be placed in that lane.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	E. If the bus is on the shoulder of the roadway, the reflectors should be placed on the edge of the roadway. 5. Protect the scene from traffic and people so that evidence is not destroyed. 6. Under normal circumstances, the vehicles involved should not be moved until law enforcement officers advise to do so, **unless the bus is on a railroad track or in danger**. 7. Check for injury to pupils. If pupils are injured, follow first aid procedures (first aid is covered in another unit).
EMPHASIZE THAT A BUS CAN BE A POTENTIAL FURNACE.	8. Keep all pupils on the bus except in the following cases: A. A fire or the possibility of a fire. The following are some causes of fires: 1) Ruptured fuel tank and fuel lines. 2) Electrical fires. 3) Hot tires, which may catch fire caused by metal rubbing against tires. Extinguish fire if possible, however, a driver should never endanger himself/herself or their passengers to extinguish a fire.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
DISCUSS C.	B. Danger of Further Collision. In normal traffic conditions, the bus should be visible for a distance of three hundred feet (300') or more. C. Whenever passengers are endangered.
PASS OUT EMERGENCY TELEPHONE NUMBER CARDS.	9. Account for all pupils.
ALWAYS SEND MORE THAN ONE PUPIL. THERE IS GREATER SAFETY IN NUMBERS.	10. Notify school administrators and appropriate law enforcement agencies of the location and nature of the bus incident. A. You should carry a list of emergency telephone numbers on the bus. B. Send for help – if a motorist is available, have him report the incident – if not, have two (2) of the older, more responsible pupils go to the nearest telephone and report the incident. Make sure they know where to go, what to do and what to say before you permit them to leave.
TRANSPARENCIES	11. Do not discuss the facts of the incident with anyone except the investigating officer and school officials. A. Make a list of all pupils' names, ages, and addresses (each district should develop a card for this information). B. Information should be given to the investigating officer concerning the

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	school bus such as insurance, make, model, number, owner, bus number, driver's name, address, driver's license number, and bus serial number, along with the names of children, their ages and seating arrangements. This information should be carried on the bus. C. While being investigated: 1) Be patient. 2) Evaluate questions. 3) Give clear, concise answers. D. A driver involved in an incident is required to give his name, address, driver's license number and vehicle registration number. Be ready to give this information to the other driver and also write down the same information regarding him/her. E. If witnesses are present, other than the pupils, get their names, addresses and license numbers. F. The driver should never admit fault or try to assign blame. Generally, the less said the better. 12. Cooperate with school officials: A. During the investigation of the incident or during a breakdown, do not release any of the pupils to anyone unless told to do so by

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	school administrators. B. If pupils are injured, use the radio to summon help or send someone to call for aid, such as hospital, ambulance or fire department, wherever help can be summoned quickly. The injured pupil(s) should be transported by proper and acceptable means to a hospital for care. C. When authorized to do so, continue the transportation of the pupils by: 1) The present bus, if safe and operable; or 2) A substitute bus. D. Report the facts of the incident to the school official in charge of pupil transportation and assist in completing the necessary incident report forms. E. The driver may be required to submit to a alcohol and/or controlled substances screening in accordance with state and federal laws.
BRIEFLY DISCUSS INCIDENT REPORT FORMS REQUIRED BY THE STATE. THIS IS A GREAT OPPORTUNITY TO WORK ON DRIVER TRAINING.	
QUOTE LOCAL PROCEDURES FOR THIS.	**<u>MECHANICAL FAILURE/BREAKDOWN PROCEDURES</u>** Despite preventative maintenance, buses will have mechanical failures. Know what to do and when to do it if a breakdown occurs on the road. Let's begin by studying legal requirements as far as equipment is concerned.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
DRIVER SHOULD HAVE A THOROUGH KNOWLEDGE OF THE ROUTE, BEST PULL-OFF POSITIONS, LOCATION OF PUBLIC TELEPHONES, WHOM TO CALL, ETC. **EXPLAIN YOUR SCHOOL POLICY ON SENDING STUDENTS FOR HELP, FLAGGING DOWN PASSING MOTORISTS.** **PROVIDE LOCAL POLICY AND PROCEDURE EXCEPTIONS.**	1. Stop the bus as far to the right as possible (on the shoulder, if available). 2. Secure the bus and activate the 4-way hazard lights. 3. Keep the passengers on the bus. If the location of the bus is unsafe, evacuate the passengers to a safer location. 4. Place reflectors in accordance with state and federal laws. 5. Telephone, radio or contact the proper school authorities, giving the bus location and description of breakdown. 6. See that all pupils are delivered to their destination. **Remember, the driver is responsible for the safety of all his/her students.** 7. Complete maintenance repair reports. **<u>LOCAL EXCEPTIONS</u>**

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	<u>EVACUATING THE BUS</u> Usually, pupils remain on the bus during an emergency. There are situations where the bus should be evacuated. Two examples of such times are: 1. **FIRE OR DANGER OF FIRE** The bus should be stopped and evacuated immediately if the engine or any portion of the bus is on fire. Pupils should move to a safe place (one hundred feet {100'} or more from the bus) and remain until the driver of the bus has determined that no danger exists. Being near an existing fire and unable to move the bus away or near the presence of gasoline or other combustible materials should be considered as "danger of fire" and pupils should be evacuated. Also, if smoke is present, the bus should be evacuated. 2. **UNSAFE POSITION** In the event that a bus is stopped due to an incident, mechanical failure, road conditions, or human failure, the driver must determine immediately whether it is safe for pupils to remain in the bus or to evacuate. You must evacuate if: A. The final stopping point is in the path of a train or adjacent to any railroad tracks.
EMPHASIZE: THE SAFETY OF THE PASSENGERS ALWAYS COMES FIRST. A BUS CAN BE REPLACED – PEOPLE CANNOT.	

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	B. The stopping position of the bus may change and increase the danger. If, for example, a bus should come to rest near a body of water or where it could still move and go into the water or over a cliff, it should be evacuated. The driver should see that the evacuation is carried out in a manner, which affords maximum safety for the passengers. C. The stopped position of the bus is such that there is danger of collision. In normal traffic conditions, the bus should be visible for a distance of three hundred feet (300'), or more. A position over a hill or around a curve where such visibility does not exist should be considered reason for evacuation. In any school bus emergency situation, the driver must use his/her own judgement when deciding the best action to take under the circumstances. If an evacuation is necessary, the type of evacuation will depend on the particular situation. Make sure the pupils get off of the bus safely and ensure they are safe after they egress from the bus by having them assemble at least one hundred feet (100') from the bus and traffic. This is a good time to take roll.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
ILLUSTRATE THESE EVACUATIONS PROCEDURES WITH OVERHEAD TRANSPARENCIES. **SHOW EACH TRANSPARENCY.**	There are eight (8) emergency evacuation plans or procedures: **FRONT DOOR** Everyone exits through the front entrance. **REAR DOOR** Everyone exits through the rear emergency door. **FRONT AND REAR DOORS** Front half exits through the front door and the rear half exits through the rear emergency door. **LEFT SIDE DOOR** Everyone exits through the left side door. **FRONT AND LEFT SIDE DOORS** Half of the passengers exit through the front door and half exit through the left side door. **REAR AND LEFT SIDE DOORS** Half of the passengers exit through the rear and half exit through the left side door. **FRONT, REAR AND LEFT SIDE DOORS** Passengers exit through the front, rear and left side doors. **NOTE: IF NO DOOR CAN BE USED, EVERYONE EXITS THROUGH THE SIDE WINDOWS, WINDSHIELD OR ROOF HATCHES.** Only the evacuation procedures listed above, excluding the side windows, roof hatches and windshield, should be practiced by the local school districts during the four (4) annual evacuation drills.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	In a real emergency, a driver may need help. He/she may become incapacitated and not be able to assist in the evacuation. At the beginning of each school year, the driver should choose two (2) or three (3) dependable pupils for helpers (these are not pupil monitors). The helpers should be instructed in how to: 1. Take control and stop the bus if something happens to the driver. 2. Turn off the ignition switch and set the parking brake. 3. Open the service and emergency doors. 4. Assist the other passengers in exiting the bus. One helper should stay inside the bus to keep everyone calm and direct them to the exit they should use. Another helper should be outside the bus to assist exiting passengers and direct them to a safe assembly area. 5. Operate the fire extinguisher. 6. Use the emergency warning devices. 7. Give basic first aid. 8. Summon help. Written consent from the parent should be obtained before assigning a pupil as a helper. **EMERGENCY EVACUATION DRILLS** In an emergency, it is possible for children to jam the emergency door by all trying to get out of the door at the same time. To help avoid this situation, you and the

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	school administration should organize and conduct emergency evacuation drills for all pupils who ride the school buses. These drills should be conducted at least four (4) times during each school year. The required time to conduct these drills are: the first week of school; the first week of the second semester; and the other two (2) drills within the school year, preferably one in the late fall and one in the early spring. In the interest of safety, all drills should be planned in advance with the school administration. The age levels of the pupils should be considered in the planning. 1. All drills should be supervised by the principal, or by persons assigned by the principal, to act in a supervisory capacity. The driver is the person who should administer the drill(s). 2. The driver should have a briefing session with his/her helpers before the drill. Go over the drill procedures with them and make sure they understand what to do. 3. All pupils should be carefully informed about the drill. They should know what to do during the drill or in a real emergency. Never have surprise school bus evacuation drills. 4. Drills should be held on school property and not on bus routes.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	5. The driver should stay on the bus during the drill and follow these steps: A. Stop the bus, set parking brake, turn off engine and remove the key. B. Stand and open the door, face the passengers and get their attention. C. Give the command for the evacuation: "Emergency drill, remain seated", then give one of the following: 1. "front evacuation" 2. "rear evacuation" 3. "front-rear evacuation" 4. "side evacuation" 5. "front-side evacuation" 6. "rear-side evacuation" 7. "front-rear-side evacuation" D. Refer to Chapter XI, "Critical Situations" for the proper procedure of the seven (7) emergency evacuations. 1) Pupils should be shown how the emergency door operates and they should be told not to open the door until the driver has given the command to do so.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	2) Care should be given to small children while exiting the emergency door. They can lower themselves to a sitting position with feet outside the door, then drop to the ground. 3) A gym mat should be placed beneath the door during the drill and a helper should assist the pupils as they exist. E. Types of bus drills should be varied. F. Do not permit children to take lunch boxes, books, etc., with them when they leave the bus – getting the pupil off safely in the shortest time possible and in an orderly fashion is the objective of a school bus evacuation. G. The pupils should go to a distance of at least one hundred feet (100') from the bus away from traffic in an evacuation drill and remain there in a group until given further directions by the driver or assigned pupil. H. All pupils who ride the bus, at any time, should participate – including those children who ride a bus on special trips. I. Each pupil should be instructed in the proper safety precautions while riding the bus and in evacuation drill procedures.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	J. Instruct pupils how and where to get help. Instructions and telephone numbers should be posted or otherwise carried on the bus. K. Every step of an evacuation should be carried out, including placing the reflectors at the proper distance from the bus. L. Since the driver is an active participant in the drill, the principal or some other school official should observe the drill. After the drill, the driver and the observer can advise the pupils of improvements to be made or tell them of the job well done. **EMERGENCY EQUIPMENT** When an emergency or incident happens, it is too late to learn how and when to use the emergency equipment. You should know the exact location and operation of the: ❖ Reflectors; ❖ Hazard flasher; ❖ First-aid kit; ❖ Fire extinguisher; and ❖ Body fluids clean-up kit. **REFLECTORS** 1. There are three (3) red reflectors located on your bus. These can be used at night or in the daytime. Find the location of these and make sure they are on the bus. Check them daily as part of the pre-trip inspection.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

2. Follow the directions for their placement that were described in Chapter XI, "Critical Situations."

HAZARD FLASHERS

1. The switch to activate the hazard flashers is located on the steering column or turn signal arm.
2. Good judgment should be used when turning on the hazard flashers. **They should only be used to warn traffic or in a dangerous situation.**

FIRST-AID KIT

1. The first-aid kit is a 24-unit kit located in the driver's compartment. The first-aid kit should contain the following items:

✓ 1" adhesive bandage	2 units
✓ 2" compress	2 units
✓ 3" compress	2 units
✓ 4" compress	2 units
✓ 2" X 6YD gauze bandage	2 units
✓ Triangular bandage	4 units
✓ 3 X 3 gauze pads	1 unit
✓ 18" X 36" gauze compress	3 units
✓ 24" X 72" gauze compress	3 units
✓ ½" X 2 ½ YD adhesive tape	1 unit
✓ Eye pads w/tape	1 unit
✓ Micro-shield w/gloves	1 unit

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	2. Most of the items in the first-aid kit are used to control bleeding. 3. Three (3) primary first-aid procedures are: A. To restore breathing; B. Stop bleeding; and/or C. Prevent shock. **NOTE: FIRST-AID PROCEDURES ARE DISCUSSED IN CHAPTER 13.** 4. All items used from the first-aid kit should be replaced immediately. **FIRE EXTINGUISHER** 1. All buses manufactured on or before 1980 were required to be equipped with a dry-chemical fire extinguisher with a 20 BC rating. A 20 BC rating means it is large enough to extinguish a Class B or C fire covering twenty (20) square feet of surface. All buses manufactured after 1980 are required to be equipped with a dry-chemical fire extinguisher with a 2A-20-BC rating. 2A-20-BC means that it will also extinguish a Class A fire covering two (2) square feet. A 3A-40-BC fire extinguisher is required on all Kentucky school buses manufactured after 1986.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	2. Class A fires are of ordinary combustible material such as wood, paper, textile fabrics, rubbish, etc. A Class B fire is a chemical fire which would include flammable liquids such as gasoline, oil, paints, grease, etc. A Class C fire is an electrical equipment fire where the use of a "non-conductor" extinguisher agent is of first importance. 3. The fire extinguisher gauge should be checked daily to see that it has adequate pressure. If the indicator needle is in the red area, the extinguisher should be replaced with one that is properly charged.
DEMONSTRATE THE USE OF THE FIRE EXTINGUISHER. **REMIND DRIVERS THAT THE FIRST THING TO DO IN CASE OF FIRE IS TO TURN OFF THE IGNITION AND QUICKLY EVACUATE THE BUS.**	4. To operate the fire extinguisher: A. Remove the fire extinguisher from the bracket. B. Hold the extinguisher in an upright position so that all the powder in the extinguisher will be available for use. C. Pull the safety pin by breaking the seal. D. If possible, stand upwind from the burning material to prevent standing in smoke and heat. E. Squeeze the handle to discharge the powder. Turn on and off to control the fire.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
ONCE EACH WEEK THE FIRE EXTINGUISHER SHOULD BE TAKEN OFF THE BUS AND SHAKEN. IT IS SUGGESTED THAT THE EXTINGUISHER BE TAPPED ON THE GROUND TO BREAK LOOSE ANY POWDER CLUMPS INSIDE THE UNIT.	F. With nozzle in hand, aim powder at base of fire. The idea is to smother the fire and allow no oxygen to reach the flame. On oil or gasoline fires, it is better to use a sweeping motion with the extinguisher. 5. The fire extinguisher, regardless of the extent of use, should be recharged or replaced with a substitute immediately after use. 6. The three (3) most common areas where fires occur in a school bus are: A. Under the hood, which can be a fuel and oil fire, electrical fire, or a combination of both; B. Electrical fire under the dash or in the console; or C. A fuel fire in the area of the fuel tank. **HAZARDOUS BODY FLUIDS CLEAN-UP KIT** The driver is in full charge of the bus at all times. Knowing proper emergency procedures, emergency evacuation procedures, and incident scene procedures is a must. These areas of responsibility deal directly with the safety and care of your passengers in the event of an incident, as well as other emergency situations which may arise.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
ALLOW OPPORTUNITY FOR QUESTIONS. **OPTION: LOCAL POLICIES CONCERNING INCIDENTS AND EMERGENCY PROCEDURES SHOULD BE DISCUSSED AT THIS POINT.**	The school bus driver must know: 1. What to do; 2. How to do it; and 3. When to do it. Check school district policies concerning incidents, emergency procedures or breakdowns.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR USING THE DAILY AND ANNUAL

SCHOOL BUS INCIDENT REPORT FORM(S)

PURPOSE

To compile accurate, uniform and reliable information about school bus incidents so problems and trends can be identified and needed safety programs can be developed.

Information you provide in this Uniform School Bus Incidents Report Form will be required to complete the National Safety Council's **ANNUAL SUMMARY OF SCHOOL BUS INCIDENTS**. Please answer every question.

702 KAR 5:030 Section 3, states "The superintendent shall make reports annually to the Department of Education on all school bus accidents that occurred during the year. Incidents involving serious student injury or fatality or failure of safety equipment shall be reported to KDE immediately. KDE shall then distribute this information to all districts".

WHO SHOULD COMPLETE THIS FORM?

The person designated by state or local jurisdiction.

This form should be completed whether pupils are present of not if the incident you are reporting involves any amount of property damage OR personal injury OR fatality to:

a. occupants in the bus (pupils, drivers or other persons);
b. occupants in any other vehicle(s) involved in the incident; or
c. non-occupants of the school bus or other vehicle (e.g., students in the loading or unloading zone, pedestrian bystanders, etc.).

DEFINITIONS

INCIDENT

Sequence of events which usually produces unintended injury, death or property damage.

BUS

A motor vehicle with motive power, except a trailer, designed for carrying more than ten (10) persons (Code of Federal Regulations, Title 49, Transportation).

DRIVER

The person driving the school bus and/or other vehicle.

INTERSECTION

An area which (1) contains a crossing or connection of two or more roadways not classified as driveway access; and (2) is embraced within the prolongation of the lateral curb lines or, if none the lateral boundary lines of the roadways. Where the distance along a roadway between two (2)

areas meeting these criteria is less than ten meters (33 feet), the two areas and the roadway connecting them are considered to be parts of a single intersection (Classification of Motor Vehicle Traffic Accidents, ANSI DIG.1, American National Standards Institute).

LOADING AND UNLOADING ZONE

Any place the school bus stops to load or unload passengers.

PUPIL

A person who attends an educational institution.

SCHOOL BUS

A bus that is sold, or introduced in interstate commerce, for purposes that include carrying students to and from school or related events, but does not include a bus designated and sold for operation as a common carrier in urban transportation (Code of Federal Regulations, Title 49, Transportation).

There are four (4) types of school buses:

TYPE A — A conversion or body constructed and installed upon a van-type compact truck or front-section vehicle, with a gross vehicle weight rating of 10,000 pounds or less, designed for carrying more than ten (10) persons.

TYPE B — A conversion of body constructed and installed upon a van or front-section chassis, or stripped chassis, with a gross vehicle weight rating of more than 10,000 pounds, designed for carrying more than ten (10) persons. Part of the engine is beneath and/or behind the windshield and beside the driver's seat. The entrance door is behind the front wheels.

TYPE C — A body installed upon a flat back cowl chassis with a gross vehicle weight rating of more than 10,000 pounds, designed for carrying more than ten (10) persons. All of the engine is in front of the windshield and the entrance door is behind the front wheels.

TYPE D — A body installed upon a chassis with the engine mounted in the front, mid-ship or rear, with a gross vehicle weight rating of more than 10,000 pounds, designed for carrying more than ten (10) persons. The engine may be behind the windshield and beside the driver's seat, at the rear of the bus, behind the rear wheels, or mid-ship between the front and rear axles. The entrance door is ahead of the front wheels.

OTHER

Any other person.

KENTUCKY DAILY SCHOOL BUS INCIDENT REPORT

SCHOOL DISTRICT NO._____ SCHOOL DISTRICT NAME:_____

BUS OWNER:_____ BUS BODY MAKE:_____

BUS CHASSIS MAKE:_____ MODEL YEAR:_____

BUS SERIAL #:_____ BUS SIDE #:_____

BUS DRIVER NAME:_____ CITATION ISSUED: ☐ YES ☐ NO

DRIVER LICENSE:_____ DRIVER SSN:_____

DATE OF INCIDENT:_____ DAY OF WEEK:_____

TIME OF INCIDENT:_____ CIRCLE: A.M. P.M. URBAN ☐ RURAL ☐

PART I – SCHOOL BUS PHYSICALLY INVOLVED

1. TYPE OF INCIDENT (see def.) (enter only one response):

1. ☐ between motor vehicles
2. ☐ noncollision
3. ☐ pedestrian
4. ☐ fixed object (complete Question 2)
5. ☐ pedalcycle
6. ☐ railroad train
7. ☐ other-animal, animal-drawn vehicle, streetcar

2. COMPLETE IF FIXED OBJECT INCIDENT (enter only one response, that which caused most damage):

01. ☐ embankment
02 ☐ utility pole
03. ☐ tree
04. ☐ sign
05. ☐ guardrail
06. ☐ bridgerail
07. ☐ fence
08. ☐ median barrier
09. ☐ fire hydrant
10. ☐ curb
11. ☐ culvert-headwall
12. ☐ other (specify)

3. DID INCIDENT RESULT IN (enter only one response:

1. ☐ fatality
2. ☐ incapacitation injury (serious)
3. ☐ non-incapacitating injury
4. ☐ possible injury (minor)

4. NUMBER INJURED (SEE PART III) _____

5. MANNER OF COLLISION BETWEEN VEHICLE OR OBJECTS:

1. ☐ angle 2. ☐ head-on 3. ☐ rear-end 4. ☐ other

6. BUS DIRECTION ANALYSIS (enter only one response for 01 thru 28):

COLLISION WITH PEDESTRIAN

INTERSECTION (see def.)
01. ☐ bus going straight
02. ☐ bus turning right
03 ☐ bus turning left
04. ☐ bus backing
05. ☐ other action (specify)_____

NON-INTERSECTION
06. ☐ bus going straight
07. ☐ bus turning right
08. ☐ bus turning left
09. ☐ bus backing
10. ☐ other action (specify)_____

COLLISION WITH OTHER VEHICLE

INTERSECTION
11. ☐ entering at angle, both moving
12. ☐ entering same direction, both moving
13. ☐ entering opposite direction, both moving
14. ☐ other action (specify)_____

NON-INTERSECTION
15. ☐ same direction, both moving
16. ☐ opposite direction, both moving
17. ☐ one vehicle stopped
18. ☐ other action (specify)_____

ALL OTHER COLLISIONS

INTERSECTION
19. ☐ fixed object
20. ☐ other road vehicle, train, pedalcycle
21. ☐ other object, animal

NON-INTERSECTION
22. ☐ fixed object
23. ☐ other road vehicle, train, pedalcycle
24. ☐ other object, animal

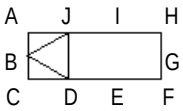
NON- COLLISION

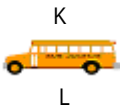
INTERSECTION
25. ☐ overturn
26. ☐ other non-collision

NON-INTERSECTION
27. ☐ overturn
28. ☐ other non-collision

7. FIRST POINT OF IMPACT (enter only one response in box):

Enter Letter ☐





8. TOTAL NUMBER OF LANES ON ROADWAY: _____

9. POSTED SPEED LIMIT: _____

10. APPROXIMATE SPEED OF THE BUS: _____

11. AGE OF SCHOOL BUS DRIVER: _____

12. DRIVER GENDER: 1. ☐ MALE 2. ☐ FEMALE

13. DRIVER'S EXPERIENCE DRIVING SCHOOL BUS:

1. ☐ less than 6 months
2. ☐ 1 year or less
3. ☐ 1-2 years
4. ☐ 2-5 years
5. ☐ 5-10 years
6. ☐ over 10 years

14. IN LAST THREE YEARS, HOW MANY SCHOOL BUS INCIDENTS HAS DRIVER HAD? _____

15. DID THE DRIVER RECEIVE A PRE-SERVICE SCHOOL BUS DRIVER TRAINING COURSE? 1. ☐ YES 2. ☐ NO

16. DID THE DRIVER RECEIVE IN-SERVICED TRAINING IN THE LAST 12 MONTHS? 1. ☐ YES 2. ☐ NO

17. WAS BUS DRIVER'S SEAT BELT IN USE WHEN THE INCIDENT OCCURRED? 1. ☐ YES 2. ☐ NO

18. TYPE OF SCHOOL BUS: (see def.) 1. ☐ TYPE A 2. ☐ TYPE B 3. ☐ TYPE C 4. ☐ TYPE D 5. ☐ OTHER

19. TOTAL NUMBER OF PASSENGERS ON BUS (EXCLUDING DRIVER): _____

20. BUS RATED SEATING CAPACITY: _____

21. SCHOOL BUS USE AT TIME OF INCIDENT:

1. ☐ REGULAR ROUTE
2. ☐ FIELD/ACTIVITY TRIP (SCHOOL RELATED USE)
3. ☐ SPECIAL EDUCATION USE
4. ☐ OTHER USE

22. CONDITION OF ROAD AT TIME OF INCIDENT (enter only one response):

1. ☐ dry
2. ☐ ice
3. ☐ under repair
4. ☐ snow packed
5. ☐ holes or ruts
6. ☐ muddy
7. ☐ wet
8. ☐ other (specify) _____

23. LIGHT CONDITION (enter only one response):

1. ☐ dawn
2. ☐ daylight
3. ☐ dusk
4. ☐ dark, artificially illuminated
5. ☐ dark, not artificially illuminated

24. WEATHER CONDITION (enter only one response):

1. ☐ clear
2. ☐ sleeting
3. ☐ raining
4. ☐ fog
5. ☐ snowing
6. ☐ dusk
7. ☐ smog/smoke
8. ☐ other (specify) _____

PART II – LOADING/UNLOADING ZONE INCIDENTS (SEE DEFINITIONS)

1. AT THE TIME OF THE INCIDENT, WHERE WAS THE BUS? (enter only one response)

1. ☐ approaching zone 2. ☐ stopped in the zone 3. ☐ leaving the zone 4. ☐ not in sight

2. WAS THE PUPIL(S)? 1. ☐ hit by the bus 2. ☐ hit by other vehicle

3. NUMBER INJURED: (SEE PART III)

4. LOCATION OF INJURED PUPILS:

1. ☐ on side of road 2. ☐ in roadway 3. ☐ on sidewalk 4. ☐ other (specify) _____

DESCRIPTION OF INCIDENT: _____

PART III – INJURY TALLY SHEET FOR STUDENT AND SCHOOL PERSONNEL

AGE	ON BOARD BUS										OFF BUS LOADING/UNLOADING ZONE									
	KILLED				INJURED						KILLED				INJURED					
					SERIOUS		MODERATE		MINOR						SERIOUS		MODERATE		MINOR	
		M		F		ALL		ALL		ALL		M		F		ALL		ALL		ALL
Under 5	01		02		03		04		05		06		07		08		09		10	
5	11		12		13		14		15		16		17		18		19		20	
6	21		22		23		24		25		26		27		28		29		30	
7	31		32		33		34		35		36		37		38		39		40	
8	41		42		43		44		45		46		47		48		49		50	
9	51		52		53		54		55		56		57		58		59		60	
10	61		62		63		64		65		66		67		68		69		70	
11	71		72		73		74		75		76		77		78		79		80	
12	81		82		83		84		85		86		87		88		89		90	
13	91		92		93		94		95		96		97		98		99		100	
14	101		102		103		104		105		106		107		108		109		110	
15	111		112		113		114		115		116		117		118		119		120	
16	121		122		123		124		125		126		127		128		129		130	
17	131		132		133		134		135		136		137		138		139		140	
18	141		142		143		144		145		146		147		148		149		150	
Over 18	151		152		153		154		155		156		157		158		159		160	
Driver	161		162		163		164		165		166		167		168		169		170	
Others	171		172		173		174		175		176		177		178		179		180	
Totals	181		182		183		184		185		186		187		188		189		190	

REPORT SUBMITTED BY:

Signature

Name (Print)

Date

Position

KENTUCKY ANNUAL SCHOOL BUS INCIDENT REPORT

_____ SCHOOL YEAR TOTALS

SCHOOL DISTRICT NO._____SCHOOL DISTRICT NAME: _____

CITATION ISSUED: YES _____ NO _____ URBAN _____ RURAL _____

DAY OF WEEK	MON	TUE	WED	THUR	FRI	SAT	SUN

TIME OF INCIDENT:_____A.M. _____ P.M._____

(PLEASE ENTER THE TOTAL NUMBER OF INCIDENTS PER CATEGORY, FOR THE SCHOOL YEAR)

PART I – SCHOOL BUS PHYSICALLY INVOLVED

1. TYPE OF INCIDENT(S) (see def.):

   1. between motor vehicles _____
   2. non-collision _____
   3. pedestrian _____
   4. fixed object (complete Question 2) _____
   5. pedal-cycle _____
   6. railroad train _____
   7. other-animal, animal-drawn vehicle, streetcar _____

2. COMPLETE IF FIXED OBJECT INCIDENTS:

   01. embankment _____
   02 utility pole _____
   03. tree _____
   04. sign _____
   05. guardrail _____
   06. bridge-rail _____
   07. fence _____
   08. median barrier _____
   09. fire hydrant _____
   10. curb _____
   11. culvert-headwall _____
   12. other (specify) _____

3. DID INCIDENT RESULT IN:

   1. fatality _____
   2. incapacitation injury (serious) _____
   3. non-incapacitating injury _____
   4. possible injury (minor) _____

4. NUMBER INJURED (SEE PART III)

5. MANNER OF COLLISION BETWEEN VEHICLES OR OBJECTS:

   1. angle _____ 2. head-on _____ 3. rear-end _____ 4. other _____

6. BUS DIRECTION ANALYSIS:

COLLISION WITH PEDESTRIAN

INTERSECTION (see def.)

01. bus going straight _____
02. bus turning right _____
03 bus turning left _____
04. bus backing _____
05. other action (specify)_____

NON-INTERSECTION

06. bus going straight _____
07. bus turning right _____
08. bus turning left _____
09. bus backing _____
10. other action (specify)_____

COLLISION WITH OTHER VEHICLE

INTERSECTION

11. entering at angle, both moving _____
12. entering same direction, both moving _____
13. entering opposite direction, both moving _____
14. other action (specify)_____

NON-INTERSECTION

15. same direction, both moving _____
16. opposite direction, both moving _____
17. one vehicle stopped _____
18. other action (specify)_____

ALL OTHER COLLISIONS

INTERSECTION

19. fixed object _____
20. other road vehicle, train, pedalcycle _____
21. other object, animal _____

NON-INTERSECTION

22. fixed object _____
23. other road vehicle, train, pedalcycle _____
24. other object, animal _____

NON- COLLISION

INTERSECTION

25. overturn _____
26. other non-collision _____

NON-INTERSECTION

27. overturn _____
28. other non-collision _____

7. TOTAL NUMBER OF LANES ON ROADWAY: One Lane _____ Two Lane _____ Three Lane _____ Multilane _____

8. AGE OF SCHOOL BUS DRIVER: 21-30 _____ 31-40 _____ 41-50 _____ 51-60 _____ Over 60 _____

9. DRIVER GENDER: 1. MALE _____ 2. FEMALE _____

10. DRIVER'S EXPERIENCE DRIVING SCHOOL BUS:

1. less than 6 months _____ 3. 1-2 years _____ 5. 5-10 years _____
2. 1 year or less _____ 4. 2-5 years _____ 6. over 10 years _____

11. WAS BUS DRIVER'S SEAT BELT IN USE WHEN THE INCIDENT OCCURRED? 1. YES _____ 2. NO _____

12. TYPE OF SCHOOL BUS: (see def.) 1. TYPE A _____ 2. TYPE B _____ 3. TYPE C _____ 4. TYPE D _____ 5. OTHER _____

13. SCHOOL BUS USE AT TIME OF INCIDENT:
1. REGULAR ROUTE _____ 3. SPECIAL EDUCATION USE _____
2. FIELD/ACTIVITY TRIP (SCHOOL RELATED USE) _____ 4. OTHER USE _____

14. CONDITION OF ROAD AT TIME OF INCIDENT (enter only one response):

1. dry _____ 3. under repair _____ 5. holes or ruts _____ 7. wet _____
2. ice _____ 4. snow packed _____ 6. muddy _____ 8. other (specify) _____

15. LIGHT CONDITION (enter only one response):
1. dawn _____ 3. dusk _____ 5. dark, not artificially illuminated _____
2. daylight _____ 4. dark, artificially illuminated _____

16. WEATHER CONDITION (enter only one response):

1. clear _____ 3. raining _____ 5. snowing _____ 7. smog/smoke _____
2. sleeting ____ 4. fog _____ 6. dusk _____ 8. other (specify) _____

PART II – LOADING/UNLOADING ZONE INCIDENTS (SEE DEFINITIONS)

1. AT THE TIME OF THE INCIDENT, WHERE WAS THE BUS? (enter only one response)

1. approaching zone _____ 2. stopped in the zone _____ 3. leaving the zone _____ 4. not in sight _____

2. WAS THE PUPIL(S)? 1. hit by the bus _____ 2. hit by other vehicle _____

3. LOCATION OF INJURED PUPILS:

1. on side of road _____ 2. in roadway _____ 3. on sidewalk _____ 4. other (specify) _____

PART III – INJURY TALLY SHEET FOR STUDENT AND SCHOOL PERSONNEL

AGE	ON BOARD BUS										OFF BUS LOADING//UNLOADING ZONE									
	FATALITY				INJURED						FATALITY				INJURED					
					SERIOUS		MODERATE		MINOR						SERIOUS		MODERATE		MINOR	
		M		F		ALL		ALL		ALL		M		F		ALL		ALL		ALL
Under 5																				
5																				
6																				
7																				
8																				
9																				
10																				
11																				
12																				
13																				
14																				
15																				
16																				
17																				
18																				
Over 18																				
Driver																				
Others																				
Totals																				

REPORT SUBMITTED BY:

Signature _____ Name (Print) _____

Date _____ Position _____

KDE MIC APPROVED 2500-1015 8/86

7/02

NAME: _____ DATE: _____

INCIDENTS AND EMERGENCY PROCEDURES
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

1. _____ Failure to yield the right of way is the most common driver violation that causes collisions.

2. _____ Defective brakes is the most common mechanical failure on a school bus.

3. _____ Young drivers have a lower accident rate than older drivers.

4. _____ Negligence on the part of a bus driver may result in the driver being liable for pupil injuries.

5. _____ The school board is directly responsible for maintaining a safe vehicle.

6. _____ State law requires that certain procedures be followed at the time of an incident.

7. _____ A school bus driver's first responsibility is to the passengers when an incident occurs.

8. _____ Emergency reflectors are required equipment on all Kentucky school buses.

9. _____ A school bus should never be moved before the police officer arrives at the scene of an incident.

10. _____ A school bus driver should check for the possibility of injuries after all incidents.

11. _____ A driver involved in an incident is required to give his/her name and address to the investigating officer.

12. _____ The local school district should have emergency information to give all drivers.

13. _____ During the investigation of an incident, pupils should be released to an adult at the scene to lessen the confusion.

14. _____ A school bus should never drive through standing water.

15. _____ The danger of fire and unsafe conditions during a school bus emergency, requires passenger evacuation.

16. _____ State law require pupil evacuation drills.

17. _____ There are four (4) emergency evacuation plans or procedures that should be followed.

18. _____ All school buses are equipped with a pick-head ax.

19. _____ The bus driver should not help with the emergency evacuation drill.

20. _____ Each Kentucky school bus is required to have a fire extinguisher as part of its equipment.

21. _____ The hazard flashers on a school bus should only be used to warn other motorists of a dangerous situation.

22. _____ All Kentucky school buses are required to have first-aid kits.

23. _____ The first three (3) first-aid procedures are (1) stop bleeding, (2) restore pulse and (3) prevent shock.

24. _____ There are three classes of fires that may occur on a bus: A, B and C.

25. _____ A school bus driver must know how, when and what to do if an emergency arises on the bus.

INSTRUCTOR'S SIGNATURE: _____

INCIDENTS AND EMERGENCY PROCEDURES
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

KEY

The answer key is only released to KDE endorsed trainers.

CHAPTER 13

FIRST AID

FIRST AID

LESSON TOPIC:

FIRST AID

OBJECTIVES:

- A driver will understand the basic principles of first aid and the immediate responsibilities of a school bus driver in case of an incident or sudden illness.
- A driver will know the steps to follow in administering mouth-to-mouth breathing.
- A driver will know the steps to follow in clearing the airway of a conscious or unconscious person.
- A driver will learn ways of controlling bleeding.
- A driver will be familiar with contents of a first aid kit.
- A driver will realize the seriousness of shock and the proper treatment to administer.
- A driver will learn the basic principles in splinting a suspected fracture.
- A driver will recognize the signs and symptoms of a victim who has fainted and will be able to administer the proper treatment.
- A driver will be able to administer the proper first aid to the victim with a nosebleed.
- A driver will be able to administer the proper first aid treatment to a victim having an epileptic seizure.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

INTRODUCTION

First aid is the immediate and temporary care given to a victim of an incident or sudden illness until further medical services can be obtained. The primary objective of first aid is to save lives. A school bus driver must know how to administer basic first aid. In an emergency, an error could have disastrous consequences to the patient. **It is as important to know what to do as what not to do.** A person will respond more quickly to treatment if he/she recognizes that a competent person is administering the first aid.

EVALUATING THE SITUATION – SETTING PRIORITIES

To effectively deal with emergencies, the situation must be evaluated and priorities set. Three (3) evaluations, which must be made to establish priorities for treatment are:

1. the condition of the scene;
2. the type of the injury; and
3. the need for treatment.

The primary first aid procedures are:

1. **to restore breathing;**
2. **to control bleeding; and**
3. **prevent shock**

The most urgent action following an incident is to remove everyone from danger. Several types of situations are of high priority; such as fires, electrocution and

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	drowning. Do not give aid until everyone is safe. Do not attempt to make a rescue until you are sure you will not become a victim. **SCHOOL AUTHORITIES SHOULD ALWAYS BE NOTIFIED OF ANY INCIDENT OR INJURY THAT OCCURS WHILE STUDENTS ARE BEING TRANSPORTED.** **EMERGENCY MEDICAL SERVICES (EMS) SYSTEM** An EMS system is community-wide, coordinated means of reporting an incident or sudden illness. The EMS system is activated by calling 911, 0 or the local EMS number. When you call for help, give the following information: 1. WHERE THE EMERGENCY IS, WITH CROSS STREETS, IF POSSIBLE. 2. PHONE NUMBER YOU ARE CALLING FROM. 3. WHAT HAPPENED – BUS INCIDENT, FALL, ETC.? 4. HOW MANY PEOPLE NEED HELP? 5. WHAT IS BEING DONE FOR THE VICTIM? **MOUTH-TO-MOUTH RESUSCITATION** **CONSCIOUS/UNCONSCIOUS** 1. Determine consciousness by taping the victim on shoulder and asking loudly, “Are you okay?” A person who is conscious will respond and will not have stopped breathing.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	POSITION 1. If the victim is unconscious, position the victim on his/her back. 2. Roll the victim as a unit without twisting any body parts. **AIRWAY CHECK** HEAD TILT WITH CHIN LIFT IF CERTAIN OF NO NECK INJURIES. A. **HEAD TILT WITH CHIN LIFT:** ❖ Place one hand on the victim's forehead and apply firm, backward pressure with the palm. ❖ Place your fingertips under the bony part of the jaw near the chin. ❖ Support and lift the jaw with your fingertips, but avoid closing the mouth. Turn your head to the side – look, listen, and feel for five (5) seconds to check for any breathing. **THE QUICK STEP, IF NO BREATHING IS OBSERVED:** 1. Keep the head tilted. 2. Pinch the nostrils together. 3. Cover the victim's mouth with your mouth - make a good seal. 4. Give two (2) slow breaths.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

THE CHECK STEP

1. Check the pulse on the side of the neck near you (Carotid).
2. Keep the head tilted with your hand on the forehead.
3. Place the fingertips of your other hand on the Adam's Apple, then slide your fingers into the groove at the side of the neck.
4. Check for a pulse and any breathing for at least five (5) to ten (10) seconds.

If the person is not breathing, but does have a pulse, give mouth-to-mouth breathing.

If the person does not have a pulse and is not breathing, cardiopulmonary resuscitation is needed. If not trained to give CPR, make sure EMS has been called.

MOUTH-TO-MOUTH BREATHING

1. Be sure the head is still tilted.
2. Pinch the nose shut again.
3. Take a deep breath, open your mouth wide and make a tight seal over the victim's mouth.
   - Blow to fill up lungs;
   - Watch for the chest to rise,
   - Listen and feel for air, and
   - Watch the chest fall.
4. Repeat these steps once every five (5) seconds. It may help to count "one, one-thousand, two,

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	one-thousand, three, one-thousand, four, one-thousand, five, one-thousand", BREATH!

MOUTH-TO-NOSE BREATHING

If you cannot make a good mouth-to-mouth seal, give mouth-to-nose breathing:

1. Tilt the head using head tilt and chin lift.
2. Close the mouth.
3. Push on the chin, not on the throat so that you don't shut the victim's airway.
4. Blow into the nose.
5. Open the mouth and listen for air.
6. Watch the chest fall.

AIR IN THE STOMACH

When you are giving mouth-to-mouth breathing, the victim's stomach may fill up with air. Air in the stomach can push against the lungs, making it difficult or impossible to give full breaths. You can expel the air by gently but firmly pushing on the stomach. This may be dangerous to do because the victim could vomit and inhale the vomit into the lungs. When you give breaths, try to blow just hard enough to make the chest rise because you are likely to force air into the stomach if you blow too hard.

If the stomach is bulging with air and you cannot inflate the lungs, take these steps:

1. Turn the victim on one side.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	2. Gently push on the stomach with your hand between the rib cage and the waist. 3. Clean out the mouth if the victim vomits. 4. Roll the victim on their back and continue mouth-to-mouth breathing. **NOTE: FOR A CHILD, AGES 1-8, BREATH INTO MOUTH ONCE EVERY THREE (3) SECONDS.** **CLEARING OBSTRUCTED AIRWAY** When an object lodges in the throat or airway so that it prevents breathing, the victim has approximately four (4) minutes before brain damage may occur from a lack of oxygen. A person who has a completely blocked airway cannot speak or cough. **CONSCIOUS VICTIM** Give four (4) abdominal thrusts (Heimlich Maneuver): 1. Stand behind the victim and place your arms around him/her. 2. Place the thumb side of your fist against the midline of the abdomen just above the navel. 3. Grasp fist with other hand and press victim's abdomen with a quick inward upward thrust. 4. Repeat until either, object is dislodged, or the person becomes unconscious. 5. Encourage the victim to cough. Do not give up.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	UNCONSCIOUS VICTIM If mouth-to-mouth breathing has been attempted and the airway has been found to be blocked, retilt the head. If still blocked, it will be necessary to immediately attempt to clear the airway. **GIVE ABDOMINAL THRUSTS** 1. It is acceptable to kneel astride the victim's hips or on one (1) thigh, or along the side of the victim. 2. Roll the victim on his/her back. 3. Place the heel of one hand on the victim's abdomen just above the navel and place the other hand of top of the first. 4. Point the fingers of the bottom hand toward the head. 5. With the shoulders directly over the victim's abdomen, press inward with four (4) quick thrusts. Do not press to either side because an injury may result. 6. Following the abdominal thrusts, lift jaw and tongue and check for objects. If seen, sweep it out with finger using a hooking action. 7. Mouth-to-mouth breathing should again be attempted. If unsuccessful, retilt. If continued unsuccessful, repeat thrusts. **NOTE: BACK BLOWS ARE NO LONGER RECOMMENDED BY THE AMERICAN RED**

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	CROSS FOR ANYONE EXCEPT VERY SMALL INFANTS. CONTACT YOUR REGIONAL RED CROSS FOR CURRENT INFORMATION ON THIS MATTER.
	BLEEDING
	Bleeding requires immediate attention. If a person is bleeding intensely, he/she can die in less than two (2) minutes. The loss of a pint of blood by a child and a quart by an adult may have disastrous results. Even the loss of a small amount of blood produces weakness and possibly shock. Evaluate the type of bleeding and the blood loss.
	EVALUATION OF BLEEDING
	CAPILLARY BLEEDING
	This comes from injuries to capillaries or small veins. It is indicated by steady oozing of dark-colored blood.
	VENOUS BLEEDING
	Bleeding from a vein indicated by a flow of dark colored blood at a steady rate.
	ARTERIAL BLEEDING
	Bleeding from an artery indicated by bright red blood flowing quickly in spurts or jets. Arterial bleeding may be mixed with venous bleeding.
	INTERNAL BLEEDING
	Internal bleeding often has no outward indication. Tender, swollen, bruised or hard areas of the body, such as the abdomen may indicate there is a possibility of internal bleeding. If the person collapses or has anxiety,

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

marked paleness of the skin, rapid breathing, rapid and weak pulse, restlessness and thirst, the person could be in shock from internal bleeding.

CONTROL OF BLEEDING

DIRECT PRESSURE

The primary step to control bleeding is to exert direct pressure over the wound. As a universal precaution, use protective gloves in situations involving blood or body fluids.

1. Place the cleanest material available against the bleeding point and apply firm pressure with the hand until the wound clots and it can be properly dressed. Do not wait if a clean bandage or any material is not available. Apply direct pressure with the bare hand.
2. If a bandage is used and blood soaks through the bandage, **do not remove it**. Apply additional bandages and secure them in place. Be sure the bandage is not too tight.
3. Elevate the wound above the level of the heart, except when there is a broken bone.

ARTERIAL PRESSURE POINTS

If direct pressure on the wound does not control bleeding, direct pressure on any arterial pressure point close to the wound is necessary. The arterial pressure point must be located between the heart and the wound.

- **BRACHIAL** - located on the inner side of the

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

upper arm approximately three inches (3”) below the armpit.

- **FEMORAL** - located midway in the groan
- **TEMPORAL** – located midway in the groan
- **CAROTID** – located deep and back of each side of the Adam’s Apple.
- **SUBCLAVIAN** – located deep down in the hollow near the collarbone
- **FACIAL** – located in the small crevice one inch (1”) from the angle of the jaw.

When you use a pressure point, keep using direct pressure.

TOURNIQUET

A tourniquet applied to control bleeding is mentioned principally to discourage its use. It is dangerous to apply, dangerous to leave on and dangerous to remove. It will cause tissue injury and stoppage of the entire supply of blood to the part below it. This can cause gangrene and could result in the loss of a limb. A tourniquet is rarely required and should be used only for severe, life-threatening hemorrhaging that cannot be controlled with direct or arterial pressure.

DRESSING AND BANDAGES

A dressing, also called a compress, is the immediate protective cover placed over a wound.

A bandage is a strip of woven material used to hold a

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	dressing or compress in place. It may also be used to hold a splint in place. **BUS DRIVER FIRST AID KIT** 1. GAUZE COMPRESS – Use as a dressing or padding for a splint. 2. BANDAGE COMPRESS – Compress and bandage attached. 3. TRIANGULAR BANDAGE – May be used as a sling for fracture or other injury of the arm or hand. May be folded and used as a circular, spiral or figure-eight bandage. 4. ADHESIVE BANDAGE –Band-aid 5. GAUZE BANDAGE – To be used around body or limb to hold compress in place. 6. SCISSORS AND TWEEZERS **<u>SHOCK</u>** Shock is a condition in which the circulatory system fails to deliver blood to all parts of the body. **Shock may be fatal even through the injury which causes it may not be enough to cause death.** Shock can be made worse by extreme pain and fright. THREE (3) very common causes of severe shock are: 1. inadequate breathing; 2. excessive bleeding; and 3. unsplinted fractures. Treating these problems lessens the shock.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

SYMPTOMS OF SHOCK

1. Skin is pale, cold and clammy with small drops of sweat particularly around the lips and forehead.
2. Nausea and dizziness may be present.
3. Restlessness or irritability may occur.
4. Altered consciousness may occur.
5. Pulse may be fast and weak, or absent.
6. Breathing may be shallow and irregular.
7. Eyes may be dull with enlarged or dilated (larger) pupils.
8. Victim may be unaware of the seriousness of the injury, then suddenly collapse.

TREATMENT OBJECTIVES

1. Improve circulation of blood.
2. Ensure an adequate supply of oxygen.
3. Maintain normal body temperatures.

BODY POSITION

1. Standard position – lying on back, feet elevated six to twelve inches (6” –12”) – unless you suspect head, neck, or back injuries or possible broken bones involving the hips or legs).
2. If you are unsure of the victim’s condition, leave him/her lying flat.
3. A victim who is bleeding from the mouth or vomiting should lie on one side so that fluid will drain from the mouth.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

REGULATING BODY TEMPERATURE

Keep the victim warm enough to avoid or overcome chilling. If the victim is exposed to cold or dampness, blankets or additional clothing should be placed over and under him/her to prevent chilling.

ADMINISTERING FLUIDS

Do not give the victim anything to eat or drink, even though he or she is likely to be thirsty.

Call your local emergency number immediately. Shock can't be managed effectively by first aid alone. A victim of shock requires advanced medical care as soon as possible.

FRACTURES AND SPLINTING

A closed fracture is an injury beneath the skin and may be difficult to detect. Do not move or have the victim move any body parts. The signs of a closed fracture are pain, swelling, deformity and discoloration.

An open fracture is usually much more serious than closed fractures because of the amount of tissue damage, bleeding and danger of infection. In most cases, the bone slips back inside the skin. Do not try to push a bone end back inside the skin.

SPLINTING

- Splint only if the victim must be moved or transported by someone other than emergency medical personal.
- Splint only if you can do it without causing more pain and discomfort to the victim.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	➢ Splint an injury in the position you find it. ➢ Splint the injured area and the joints above and below the injury. ➢ Check for proper circulation before and after splinting. It may be necessary to stop any associated bleeding and treat for shock. **FAINTING** Fainting is partial or complete loss of consciousness due to a reduced supply of blood to the brain for a short time. Occasionally, a person may collapse suddenly without warning. Recovery of consciousness almost always occurs when the victim falls or is placed in a reclining position. Signs and symptoms are usually preceded or accompanied by: ❖ extreme paleness; ❖ sweating ❖ coldness of the skin; ❖ dizziness; ❖ numbness and tingling of the hands and feet; ❖ nausea; and/or ❖ possible disturbance of vision. **NOTE: TO WARD OFF A FAINTING SPELL, HAVE PATIENT SIT WITH HEAD BETWEEN THE KNEES.**

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

FIRST AID

First aid for fainting should include:

1. Leave the victim lying down.
2. Loosen any tight clothing and keep crowds away.
3. If the victim vomits, roll him/her onto their side and, if necessary, wipe out his/her mouth with your fingers.
4. Maintain an open airway.
5. Do not pour water over the victim's face because of the danger of aspiration; instead, bathe the face gently with cool water.
6. Do not give any liquids unless the victim has revived.
7. Examine the victim to determine if he/she has suffered an injury from the fall.

NOSE BLEEDING

1. Place the victim in a sitting position. Have the victim lean forward.
2. Loosen the collar and anything tight around the neck.
3. Give the victim a compress to hold over their nose. (Driver should use protective gloves to do these procedures.)
4. Apply pressure directly at the site of the bleeding by pressing the bleeding nostril toward the midline.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	5. If bleeding continues, the victim should insert a small, clean pad of gauze (not absorbent cotton) into one or both nostrils and apply pressure with thumb and index finger. 6. Do not allow the victim to blow nose. **EPILEPSY AND OTHER SOURCES OF CONVULSIONS** The two (2) major signs of a serious epileptic attach are convulsions and loss of consciousness. A mild attack may last only a second and may not be noticed by others. First aid for epilepsy is the same as for other convulsions with the primary effort being made to prevent the victim from hurting himself/herself. 1. Push away nearby objects. 2. Do not force a blunt object between the victim's teeth. 3. When jerking is over, loosen the clothing around the neck. 4. Keep the victim lying down. 5. Keep his/her airway open. 6. Do not try to restrain the victim. Jerking motions and/or foaming at the mouth may often occur. 7. If breathing stops, give artificial respiration. 8. Allow the victim to sleep or rest following the seizure. Do not question, disturb or embarrass the victim.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	9. Assure all bystanders that the victim will not harm anyone. **BLOODBORNE PATHOGENS** Bloodborne pathogens are micro-organisms in the bloodstream that can cause disease. The two (2) diseases that are of major concern in the work environment are Hepatitis B and HIV (AIDS). Bloodborne pathogens are found in blood and blood products such as: semen, vaginal secretions, breast milk and other body fluids. Only blood, semen, vaginal secretions and breast milk have been proven to transmit the HIV virus. HIV is a more lethal virus, yet Hepatitis B is more contagious. HIV and Hepatitis B can only be transmitted if the exposed blood is infectious and that blood is allowed to enter directly into the body. Blood or other infectious material could enter the body through: 1. unprotected openings in the skin such as cuts, scrapes and dermatitis; 2. unprotected mucus membrane openings such as the eyes, nose and mouth; and/or 3. penetration into the skin by a sharp object such as broken glass, a needle or knife blade. Drivers should report any exposure to their supervisor. Drivers should always use the “Body Fluid Clean-Up Kit” when dealing with blood or body fluids such as vomit. Kits usually include items such as disposable

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	gloves, spatulas, a contaminated materials bag and germicidal antiseptic wiping cloths. Employees should consult their school district's "Exposure Control Plan Reference Procedures and Universal Precautions" relating to Bloodborne pathogens. Each school district is required to provide training for employees with occupational exposure.
	SUMMARY
	There are obviously many other medical problems that may arise on a school bus or at the scene of an emergency. Only a few critical problems have been dealt with in this unit.
	Drivers should remember that, above all – as a first aid worker, they should know the limits of their capabilities and make every effort to avoid further injury to the victim in an attempt to provide the best possible emergency care.

07/02

NAME: _____DATE:_____

FIRST AID
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

1. _____ First aid is the immediate and temporary care given to a victim of an accident/incident or sudden illness until medical services can be obtained.

2. _____ The three (3) primary first aid procedures are: restore breathing, control bleeding and prevent shock.

3. _____ Tourniquets should be used before trying pressure points.

4. _____ When minor first aid incidents occur, the supervisor need not be contacted.

5. _____ If an object lodges in a person's throat, give back blows immediately.

6. _____ Protective gloves should be worn when dealing with blood or blood products.

7. _____ If a bandage becomes soaked with blood, remove it and replace with a clean bandage as quickly as possible.

8. _____ The three (3) most common causes of shock are inadequate breathing, excessive bleeding and unsplinted fractures.

9. _____ The body temperature of a shock victim usually rises.

10. _____ A open fracture is usually associated with an open wound.

11. _____ Open fractures are usually more serious than closed because of tissue damage, danger of infection and bleeding.

12. _____ Abdominal thrusts and the Heimlich Maneuver are the only two (2) accepted methods of choking control for all ages.

13. _____ All drivers should know the limitations of their capabilities when giving first aid.

14. _____ Hepatitis B is more contagious than HIV.

15. _____ Drivers should report exposure to blood and blood products to their supervisor.

16. _____ Fainting is usually accompanied by a flushed face and extremely hot skin.

17. _____ Drivers should only use the body fluid clean-up kit for severe incidents.

18. _____ Drivers should be familiar with the contents of the bus first aid kit.

19. _____ The primary objective of first aid is to save lives.

20. _____ When giving first aid, the driver could cause further injury to the victim.

INSTRUCTOR'S SIGNATURE: _____

FIRST AID
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

KEY

The answer key is only released to KDE endorsed trainers.

CHAPTER 14
TRANSPORTING STUDENTS WITH SPECIAL NEEDS

LESSON TOPIC:

TRANSPORTING STUDENTS WITH SPECIAL NEEDS

OBJECTIVE:

The driver will be able to:

- identify some physical characteristics and behavior tendencies of special needs students;
- describe loading/unloading procedures;
- describe student management techniques; and
- suggest ways to communicate with special needs students

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	INTRODUCTION A school bus driver has a unique opportunity to provide a positive influence on the lives of special needs students as they are being transported. Many basic tasks of meeting personal care needs, communicating and socializing with others and physically moving from one (1) location to another are major accomplishments for these students. By providing an atmosphere of friendly assistance and responding to their individual and group needs, a driver is in a position to become an important link in their efforts to reach their achievement potential. The success of a program for exceptional children depends upon the people who have daily contact with the children. They should be patient, alert, flexible, resourceful, enthusiastic, emotionally stable, have personal warmth, friendliness, understanding and compassion. A bus driver should be able to develop and maintain rapport with children and be able to exercise mature judgement in relation to both the care of exceptional children and the responsibilities of driving. A driver should be able to accept this child and his/her problems as he/she would accept any child. These children should be treated as a person would treat their own children with special needs. The daily bus ride to school can be an important part of the child's progress toward accomplishment of his/her goals. The child will learn how to leave home to meet the

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	bus. The bus rules should be explained and the child will learn to obey them. The bus ride to and from school can be a pleasant experience which a child anticipates eagerly, or it can become a dreaded experience. The driver should be thoughtful and careful about such routine matters as assigning a seat or seatmate, the presentation and purpose of a seatbelt and student management. The driver of special needs students has many areas that are unique to his/her bus and their students, which the regular drivers do not have. Following are some ideas that could be helpful to the driver in these special areas. They are given only as suggestions and ideas. **REMEMBER:** 1. Be firm – but gentle. 2. Be patient – but persistent. 3. Always be consistent and fair. The driver's primary purpose is to take children to and from school safely and dependably. While allowances are made for specific problems of these students, a child's social adjustment should be of less importance than getting to school on time and the safety of the bus, driver and other children. **<u>COMMUNICATIONS</u>** The driver should know about the needs and abilities of the passengers, and the best way to learn these is through communication with school staff.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

PARENT – DRIVER

With the school's permission, drivers and parents should discuss safety rules on the bus, special equipment use, schedules and transporting medication as various needs require various plans.

LIFTING AND/OR CARRYING STUDENTS

There are several safe and effective ways to lift a child. The driver will be able to learn these techniques by conversation and application with school specialists. These techniques will vary depending on each child's needs.

SPECIAL EQUIPMENT

Following are recommendations for special needs students:

1. Due to varied disabling conditions, all seats have rolled padded tops and sides to help reduce chances of pupil injury on panic stops. Foam seats provide more secure seating. Modesty panels and stanchion posts should be added.
2. Seatbelts on school buses are recommended for the safety of all special needs students.

DRIVER QUALIFICATIONS

Besides operator qualifications regarding age, health, past experience, knowledge of vehicles and maintenance, safe driving practices, etc.; a driver should be able to operate specially equipped or adapted vehicles. The

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	driver should become familiar with the use of wheelchairs, braces, crutches, etc.
	MEDICAL NEEDS
	INFORMATION
	The driver should be aware of the problems of each of the students who ride the bus. He/she should be familiar with the medical and physical aspects of disabilities of each child. He/she should, through communication with school personnel and parents, know when a child is on medication and the effects of that medication. This will help him/her to determine when a child is behaving accordingly.
	The driver has the responsibility of reporting to school authorities or to parents specific incidents, attitudes, etc., which may be significant in the treatment of the child. He/she should know what special steps to take in case of a traffic incident or breakdown because the comfort and emotional well-being of these children is the driver's responsibility. He/she may spend much time learning how to care for each child under the many circumstances that might occur while the children are on the bus.
	SEIZURE MANAGEMENT
	TO PREVENT INJURY TO THE CHILD
	1. Observe the progression of symptoms during the seizure. Note the:
	a. first thing the child does in an attack, in regard to movements;

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	b. types of movements of the part involved (stiffness starts, position of eyeballs and head); c. body parts involved; d. size of the pupils; e. incontinence of urine and feces; f. duration of each phase of the attack; g. unconsciousness, if present, and its duration; h. any obvious paralysis or weakness of arms or legs after the attack; i. inability to speak after the attack; and j. whether or not the child sleeps after the attack. 2. Support the child during the convulsive seizure. a. Ensure the child has adequate airway. b. Give the child privacy and protection from curious on-lookers. c. Protect the head with padding to prevent head injury. ➢ Towels, blankets, coats, clothes or book bags can be used. ➢ Loosen constrictive clothing. ➢ Provide protection with the possibility of suffocation.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	d. When jaws are clenched in spasm DO NOT attempt to pry open to insert a mouth gag. e. Place child on his/her side during convulsion (if possible) to facilitate drainage of mucus and saliva. Do not attempt to lift child during the seizure; to do so may cause injury. Instead of moving the child during a seizure, remove things that could cause injury. f. Once convulsive movements have stopped, allow the child to recover naturally. When appropriate (when the child awakens), reorient the child to his/her environment. **TYPES OF SEIZURES AND THEIR CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS** 1. AURA a. Small localized seizures that sometimes precede grand mal seizures and act as a warning. b. The child cannot explain them but knows they exist. c. May include vague symptoms such as irritability, headache, gastrointestinal disturbances or mental dullness.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	d. The interval between the aura and grand mal seizure is usually short, but it may be an hour or more than a day. 2. GRAND MAL a. Onset ➢ Onset is abrupt. ➢ May occur at night. ➢ An aura occurs in about one-third of epileptic children prior to a grand mal seizure. b. Tonic Spasm ➢ The child's entire body becomes stiff. ➢ The child usually loses consciousness. ➢ The face may become pale and distorted. ➢ The eyes are frequently fixed in one position. ➢ The back may be arched with the head held backward or to one side. ➢ The arms are usually flexed with the hands clenched. ➢ The child may bite his/her tongue or cheek. (This occurs because of a sudden forceful contraction of jaw and abdominal muscles.) ➢ The child is often unable to swallow his/her saliva.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	➢ Breathing is ineffective and cyanosis (turning blue) results if spasm includes the muscles of respiration. ➢ The pulse may become weak and irregular. c. Clonic Phase ➢ This phase is characterized by twitching movements that follow the tonic state. ➢ Phase usually starts in one place and becomes generalized, including the muscles of the face. d. Duration ➢ Length varies. ➢ Usually, convulsions cease after a few minutes and consciousness returns. e. Post-Convulsive State of Child ➢ The child is usually sleepy or exhausted. ➢ May complain of headache. ➢ May appear to be in a dazed state. ➢ Often performs relatively automatic tasks without being able to recall the episode. 3. PETIT MAL a. Petit mal onset rarely appears before three (3) years of age. b. Clinical Signs

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	➢ Loss of contact with the environment for a few brief seconds. May appear to be staring or daydreaming and will suddenly discontinue any activity and resume it when the seizure has ended. ➢ Minor manifestations include rolling of the eyes, nodding of the head and slight quivering of the trunk and limb muscles. c. Duration is usually less than thirty (30) seconds. d. Frequency varies from one to two per month to several hundred each day. e. Post convulsive state of child: ➢ appears normal; and ➢ the child is not aware of having had a convulsion. 4. FOCAL SEIZURES (PSYCHOMOTOR) a. Clinical Signs ✓ Child undertakes purposeful but inappropriate motor acts. ✓ Child may pick at clothing with hands. ✓ Child may make chewing movements with mouth or perform other complicated actions.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	✓ A young child may emit a shrill cry or attempt to run for help. There is usually a gradual loss of postural tone. ✓ May have pallor around mouth. b. Duration is brief, usually about one (1) minute. c. Post-Convulsive State of Child ➢ Child may be confused after an attack, but has no "memory of what happened." 5. FOCAL MOTOR (JACKSONIAN SEIZURES) a. Clinical Signs ➢ Sudden jerking movements occur in a particular area of the body such as the face, arms or tongue (less often the leg or foot). ➢ Seizure begins on one (1) side of the body and spreads to adjacent areas on the same side in a fixed progression. ➢ Prognosis: seizure may become more extensive as the child matures, leading to grand mal seizures. b. Focal Sensory (rare in children) ➢ Sensations may occur, such as numbness, tingling and coldness.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	TO OBSERVE THE CHILD FOR RECURRENT SEIZURES: 1. Place the child where he/she can be watched closely. 2. Check child frequently. Watch for and report to school or parent(s) /guardian(s) if you see: ➢ behavior changes; ➢ irritability; ➢ restlessness; and/or ➢ listlessness. **CARE DURING A SEIZURE:** 1. Maintain patient airway and adequate ventilation. Loosen tight clothing (belt, collar, etc.); turn child onto side to facilitate drainage, or turn head to the side and point chin downward. This allows saliva and mucus to run out of the mouth and not be aspirated; the tongue will drop forward away from airway. During convulsions, the child is unable to swallow. This increases the possibility of aspiration because vomitus and increased secretions are frequently present. 2. Do not attempt to forcibly open convulsing child's mouth if the jaws are clenched. 3. Do not attempt to push an airway or tongue blade forcibly between front teeth. To do so may break or loosen teeth or injure lips.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	4. Never put your fingers into the child's mouth; the child may accidentally bite you during the seizure. 5. Do not attempt to restrain the child's movements during convulsions. Restraint may increase the movements and their severity and could cause fracture if extreme spasticity is present. Lightly hold the child's hands to prevent him/her from banging them. **DEFINITIONS AND DESCRIPTIONS** 1. Physically Disabled Or Orthopedically Impaired a. Severe orthopedic impairment which adversely affects educational performance to the extent that specially designed instruction is required for the pupil to benefit from education. b. These students have a range of physical or health problems. Some are able to work full-time in the general (comprehensive) education program and need only special transportation and an architecturally accessible building. They are taught to lead productive, independent lives by learning to compensate for their physical disabilities.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	2. Other Health Impaired a. Limited strength, vitality or alertness, due to a chronic or acute health problem, which adversely affects educational performance to the extent that specially designed instruction is required for the pupil to benefit from education. b. These students are medically fragile and/or chronically ill and need the environment of a special classroom. They are taught to compensate for their physical disabilities to the extent possible in order to lead productive, independent lives. 3. Communication Disorder – Speech/Language Impaired a. Disorder in language, articulation, voice or fluency, which adversely affects educational performance that specially designed instruction is required for the pupil to benefit from education. b. The student may have any or all of the following problems: does not pronounce words clearly, stutters, does not understand what people say to him/her, and/or is unable to put his/her thought into words.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	4. Hearing Impairment a. Physiological hearing loss ranging from mild to profound, permanent or fluctuating, and of such a degree that the pupil is impaired in the processing of linguistic information via the auditory channel either with or without amplification, adversely affecting educational performance so that specially designed instruction is required for the pupil to benefit from education. b. These students have a range of hearing loss from mild to profound. All of them are encouraged to communicate through speech that is somewhat difficult to understand. They are also expected to speech read ("read lips") as much as possible so that they will be able to communicate with non-handicapped persons. Some students supplement their speech with various types of manual (hand) signing. It is easier for them to speech read if the person if facing them and speaks at a normal (not slowed) rate. (A mustache/beard sometimes makes speech reading more difficult.) Many hearing impaired students have some

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	speech, but have difficulty discriminating between speech and background noises. Almost all hearing impaired students have hearing aids and should be encouraged to wear/use them at all times. 5. Mental Disability a. Deficit or delay in intellectual or adaptive behavior functioning, which adversely affects educational performance so that specially designed instruction is required for the pupil to benefit from education. b. Individual intellectual assessment reflects: ➢ Educable Mentally Handicapped (EMH, 75-50 IQ). These students are mildly mentally disabled. As adults, many may be successfully employed and live independently. They learn best when provided with very clear, specific directions and much repetition. They tend to follow the leadership of others (adults or fellow students) but have difficulty discriminating whether or not that leadership is appropriate.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	➢ Trainable Mentally Handicapped (TMH, 50-35 IQ). These students are moderately mentally disabled. As adults, they may be employable and may experience independent living. Many TMH students have impaired motor skills and move more slowly and awkwardly than do non-handicapped students. They are generally willing and able to follow directions that are given in simple terms. ➢ Severely/Profoundly Handicapped (SPH, Below 35 IQ). These students are severely mentally disabled and frequently have physically disabilities as well. They will benefit from inclusion in social activities and other learning experiences with non-handicapped persons. A major goal is to teach them to be as independent as possible, using whatever language and motor skills they have in order to care for their own needs and interests with others. As adults, while gainful employment and independent living are possible, self care is anticipated.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	6. Emotional-Behavioral Disability a. Behavioral excess or deficit, which significantly interferes with a pupil's interpersonal relationships or learning process to the extent that it adversely affects educational performance so that specially designed instruction is required. b. The major problems these students have are usually those of controlling their own behavior and interacting appropriately with adults and peers. They may over-react to apparent trivial situations. They may also be defiant of authority – especially in front of their peers. They may "test" an adult to find out if misbehavior will be tolerated. They need to be given – before an incident occurs – very specific directions as to what is expected of them. It is helpful to establish a few rules. It is better to state rules in terms of what they should do (e.g., "Keep your hands inside the bus.") rather than what they should not do (e.g., "Do not put your hands outside the bus."_ Do not make idle threats; if consequences have been previously established for a specific misbehavior, they must be capable of being carried out. Some students are on a

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	behavior management program and are rewarded when the bus driver reports to the teacher that their bus behavior has been acceptable. 7. Multiple Disability a. A combination of two (2) or more disabilities resulting in significant learning, developmental or behavioral and emotional problems. Adversely affect educational performance to the extent that specially designed instruction is required for the pupil to benefit from education. b. Students in this category have a combination of two (2) or more handicapping conditions – physical and/or mental. The students within this category do not all have similar needs. Their programs are specially designed to match their needs and abilities. 8. Specific Learning Disability Disorder in one (1) or more of the psychological processes. Primarily involved in understanding or using spoken or written language which selectively and significantly interferes with the acquisition, integration or application of listening, speaking, reading, writing, reasoning or mathematical abilities.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	➢ This disorder is life long. Intrinsic to the individual, it adversely affects educational performance to the extent that specially designed instruction is required for the pupil to benefit from education. ➢ This term does not include a learning problem which is a direct result of a hearing impairment; visual, physical, mental or emotional-behavioral disabilities or environmental, cultural or economic differences. These students have difficulties in one (1) or more specific areas, such as motor skills or reading, writing, or mathematics. Their problems are mostly academic, but sometimes their frustration with avoidance of academic tasks can result in mild behavior problems. These students tend to learn each thing in isolation, rather than applying their knowledge to many situations, and the students tend to act on impulse without considering the consequences.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	9. Visually Disabled a. Visual impairment which, even with correction, adversely affects educational performance to the extent that specially designed instruction is required for the pupil to benefit from education. b. Very few of these students are totally blind. Most have some usable vision and can see shapes, shadows and other clues that help them to move through their surroundings. They are taught to use their senses of touch and hearing to provide the additional information they do not receive with their eyes. While some read Braille materials, most can use large print textbooks or other enlarging devices. 10. Traumatic Brain Injury a. Acquired impairment to the neurological system resulting from an injury to the brain, which adversely affects educational performance to the extent that specially designed instruction is required for the pupil to benefit from education. ➢ Does not include a brain injury that is congenital or degenerative, or a brain injury induced by birth trauma.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	b. These students have experienced some injury to the brain and exhibit a wide range of mental and physical abilities. These students will have shorter attention span, short-term memory loss or lack of concentration. Mild behavior problems may result. Due to the nature of the injury, students have individual needs. 11. Autism a. Developmental disability significantly affecting verbal and non-verbal communication and social interaction, generally evident before age three (3) that adversely affects education performance to the extent that specially designed instruction is required for the pupil to benefit from education. Characteristics include: ➢ irregularity and impairment in communication; ➢ engagement in repetitive activity and stereotyped movement; ➢ resistance to environmental change or change in daily routine; and/or ➢ unusual responses to sensory experiences.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	This does not include children with characteristics of an emotional-behavioral disability. b. The student displaying "autistic" or "autistic-like" behaviors may have difficulty developing and using verbal or nonverbal communication systems making it difficult to use traditional methods of interaction. The student may engage in repetitive motions or behavioral patterns and perhaps will be sensitive to being touched. Specific behavior modification techniques are needed to elicit the most correct behavior, making it important for the transportation staff to conference with the student's teacher regarding appropriate interventions. **BEHAVIOR PATTERNS** Behavior patterns of each child are individual problems and should be understood. Each driver must treat each child separately. For example, don't give a general direction to the entire busload of children. You can't assume everyone would understand this direction. Behavior patterns of these children for any given day or hour of the day can be caused or changed by the actions of many people:

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	1. you, the school bus driver; 2. parents, or members of the family; 3. teacher or aide; and/or 4. other bus passengers. These people affect any child, but they can compound the trouble that a special needs child may already have. The person managing the student can understand what may have caused the problem and be able to correct it. When you correct a child, regardless of the age and size of him/her, take into consideration his/her attention span. With some children, this can be rather short. Be consistent when you correct a child. A student may behave differently from day to day because of medication, which he/she may be taking. Many students are extremely hyperactive and use their excessive energy to get attention from you or from someone else. It is difficult to give guidelines for handling all situations. Following are some courses of action that should prove helpful: 1. Work with school specialist by talking over any problems. 2. Work with the teachers. 3. Work with the parents. 4. Work with the child. It can also be of help to move the child to another seat away from a student who may be causing problems.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	EDUCATIONALLY HANDICAPPED CHILDREN IN TRANSPORT Maintain a set of clear-cut rules. Make a short list of rules concerning behavior while riding the bus and following them to the letter. The child wants to know where he/she stands at all times. Remember, once children begin to misbehave, they may not be able to help themselves – you must help them. Any deviation from these rules will only confuse the child. Be firm, but fair, smile often for this child, but be direct when you address him/her. You could be the key to the pupils' whole day! You are the first school authority to see them in the morning and the last to see them at night. Say "Good morning" and let them know that you are glad to see them and want them to ride on your bus. (This will be difficult at times, but it will pay off in the long run.) If a child is on a medication, you must know the effects of the medication and what to do if it should wear off. You must be resourceful in discipline areas. **LOADING AND UNLOADING** Most transportation systems, when possible, load and unload special education children in front of each child's home due to the fact that the child cannot be left unattended. These children sometimes need assistance to board the bus. Eye-to-eye contact with some children is a must. Most buses used for this purpose are equipped with safety devices (harnesses, etc.), which should be used.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

Care is needed at all times to keep these children on the bus when other children are being loaded or unloaded.

A child who must use special equipment such as a wheelchair, braces, crutches, etc., has problems during the loading and unloading process, and it is your responsibility to learn these problems and know how to correct them.

Remember, care and protection are two (2) things which the parents and children expect from a driver.

Usually, you will follow the same loading and unloading procedures for controlling the bus as you would when transporting regular passengers.

PROCEDURE FOR OPERATING <u>SOME</u> LIFT EQUIPMENT

1. Bus must be in neutral, emergency brake on.
2. Open lift doors and hook latches in outside wall of bus.
3. Remove hand-held controls and push long lever down to unfold platform (platform will be flush with floor of bus).
4. Press “lower platform” button.
5. Lower platform to ground level (make sure hinge releases barrier).
6. Roll wheelchair backwards and lock hand brakes.
7. Place hand on wheelchair to give the student secure feeling.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	8. Press “raise platform” button, making sure barrier locks in place. (Platform will raise to bus floor level.) 9. Pull wheelchair into bus and secure. 10. Fold platform back into bus and shut doors. 11. No one may ride on the lift with a student. Then follow these steps: **IF AN AIDE IS ASSIGNED TO THE BUS** 1. Be sure each person knows his/her role. In the case of misunderstanding, don’t argue. Carry on any discussion out of the student’s presence. 2. Direct the aide to carry or guide the student onto the bus. 3. When the use of assistive devices are required, check to see that they are securely fastened before putting bus into motion. 4. When specially equipped buses are used to accommodate wheelchairs, etc., with the use of a ramp or lift, supervise the aide in guiding chair onto bus and securing it in place inside the bus. 5. When loading or unloading, the driver must be on the bus. 6. Check to see that the ramp and side door have been securely fastened into a locked position after the student has entered the bus. Start the bus and follow procedure for entering the flow of traffic.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	IF AN AIDE IS NOT USED: 1. Set the parking brake, secure the bus in "park," turn off the motor and take the key out of the ignition. 2. Leave the bus and carry or guide the handicapped student onto the bus. (The student should be brought to the bus by a parent or other responsible person.) 3. Check to see that the ramp and side door have been securely fastened into a locked position after the student has entered the bus. Start the bus and follow proper procedure for entering the flow of traffic. **UNLOADING ON SCHOOL GROUNDS:** 1. Carry or guide, each student off the bus into the charge of a teacher of other school attendant. 2. Check to see that all belongings of each student are taken off the bus. **UNLOADING THE PASSENGER AT HOME:** 1. Carry, or guide, each student off the bus into the charge of a parent or other responsible person. 2. Check to see that all belongings of each student are taken off the bus. 3. Report tactfully to the parent and school officials any observation, which may be inappropriate, whether medical or behavioral.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

4. If an authorized person is not at home to receive the student, follow local procedures.

DUTIES

ON THE ROAD

1. Assign the bus aid to ensure that all passengers remain safely seated. Occasionally a particular student's needs require more than you can provide as one who must be responsible for the safety of all passengers. Do not allow students to continually demand your attention when you are driving.
2. If any students show symptoms of illness that require immediate attention, pull the bus as far off of the road as possible and stop; activate four-way hazards lights.
   a. If a radio is available, notify the proper authorities; otherwise, notify the aide or passing motorist to call authorities from a phone booth or nearby private home.
   b. Watch for unusual behavior that may occur; for example, petit mal or grand mal seizures, erratic behavior or inactivity, etc.

GETTING THE FACTS

A driver must have pertinent information about each of the passengers and be a special observer of behavior on the bus. A driver is often the source of information, which is vitally important to the supervisor, the student's teacher and parents. Some passengers will have medical

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

medical instructions specifying special care or medication limitations. Secure pertinent information about each student transported. Make a confidential card file form to be kept on the bus and in your supervisor's office. A 3" X 5" card is suggested. See below:

	Name:
	Address:
	Telephone#:
	Emergency Back Up #:
	Birthdate:
Parents:	
Medication:	
Hospital:	
Doctor:	
Doctor Phone #:	
Insurance:	
Special Instructions:	
Map where child lives may be put on back.	

SUPPLEMENTAL RESOURCES:

"The Special Needs Pupil Transportation Series", video, AMS Distributors, Inc., Roswell, GA

"A Video Training Program on School Bus Evacuation", video, Monroe Boces #1, Fairport, NY, 1991.

"Every Student I Have Ever Driven – Evacuation All Students From Your School Bus." Manual, Monroe Boces #1, Fairport, NY 1991.

"School Bus Driver Program: Pupils Are Different", film, Aetna Life and Casualty.

"Problems in Transporting the Handicapped", film, Visucom Products, Inc., Redwood City, CA.

7/02

NAME: _____DATE: _____

<u>TRANSPORTING STUDENTS WITH SPECIAL NEEDS</u>
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

1. _____ The driver cannot be expected to accept a special needs child as he/she would any child, since the child has obvious differences.

2. _____ The driver of a special needs bus should be fair, firm and consistent when dealing with pupil behavior management.

3. _____ There is a law that requires seat belts on special needs buses.

4. _____ Two types of seizures are aura and clonic spasms.

5. _____ During a tonic spasm seizure, a victim usually remains conscious.

6. _____ A petit mal seizure usually lasts less than thirty (30) seconds.

7. _____ An EMH student has an IQ in the 75-50 range.

8. _____ When dealing with special needs students, it is almost impossible to have a set of clear-cut rules for the entire bus.

9. _____ Two things that the parents and children expect from the driver when loading and unloading is care and protection.

10. _____ Any misunderstanding between the driver and the aide should be dealt with immediately at all times, so as to keep the lines of communication open.

INSTRUCTOR'S SIGNATURE: _____

TRANSPORTING STUDENTS WITH SPECIAL NEEDS
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

KEY

The answer key is only released to KDE endorsed trainers.

CHAPTER 15
COMMERCIAL DRIVER'S LICENSE
(CDL)

COMMERCIAL DRIVER'S LICENSE (CDL)

LESSON TOPIC:

COMMERCIAL DRIVER'S LICENSE (CDL)

OBJECTIVES:

- The driver will be knowledgeable of the Federally mandated CDL Law.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	INTRODUCTION This unit will discuss the various aspects of the federally mandated CDL law, which affect a Kentucky school bus driver. **CLASS A** Any combination of vehicles with a gross vehicle weight rating of more than 26,000 pounds, provided that the vehicle being towed is a semi-trailer with two (2) or more axles or has a gross vehicle weight rating in excess of 10,000 pounds. **CLASS B** Any single vehicle with a gross vehicle weight rating of more than 26,000 pounds; any such vehicle towing a vehicle that is not in excess of 10,000 pounds; or is a semi-trailer or a trailer with two (2) or more axles. **CLASS C** Any single vehicle with a gross vehicle weight rating of 26,000 pounds or less or any such vehicle towing a vehicle not in excess of 10,000 pounds that is: 1. designed to transport sixteen (16) or more passengers, including the driver; or 2. used in transportation of hazardous materials requiring the vehicle to be placarded under 49 CFR, Part 172, Sub-Part F. **CLASS D** Automobiles, pick-up trucks and all other motor vehicles not specified in Class A, B or C.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	WHO MUST HAVE A KENTUCKY COMMERCIAL DRIVER'S LICENSE? If you live in Kentucky and want to drive a commercial motor vehicle on public roads, you must have a Kentucky commercial driver's license unless you are expressly exempt. **COMMERCIAL DRIVER'S INSTRUCTION PERMIT** A commercial driver's instruction permit may be issued to an individual who holds a valid operator's or Class D driver's license who has passed the vision and written tests required for issuance of a commercial driver's license. The commercial driver's instruction permit may be issued for a period not to exceed six (6) months. The holder of a commercial driver's instruction permit may drive a commercial motor vehicle on a highway only when accompanied by the holder of a commercial driver's license valid for that type of vehicle and who occupies a seat beside the individual for the purpose of giving instruction or testing. A commercial driver's instruction permit may only be issued to an individual who is at least eighteen (18) years of age and has held an operator's license for at least two (2) years (must be twenty-one (21) to drive a Kentucky school bus). The applicant for a commercial driver's instruction permit must also be otherwise qualified to hold a

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	commercial driver's license.
	APPLICANT RECORD CHECK
	Before issuing a commercial driver's license, the commissioner must obtain driving record information through the commercial driver's license information systems, the National Driver Register, and each state in which the person has been licensed.
	NOTIFICATION OF LICENSE ISSUANCE
	Within ten (10) days after issuing a commercial driver's license, the commissioner shall notify the commercial driver's license information system (CDLIS) of the fact, providing all information required to ensure identification of the person.
	AGE AND FITNESS REQUIREMENTS
	You must be at least eighteen (18) years of age and have two (2) years of experience as a licensed driver to qualify for a commercial driver's license or a commercial driver's instruction permit. Federal Motor Carrier Rules (49CFR, Part 391.41) require that drivers subject to those rules meet specific physical qualification standards and carry evidence of such qualification in the form of a medical certificate.
	At the time of application for a Kentucky commercial driver's license, you must certify under oath that you either possess such certificates or are not subject to the FMCSR. Should you later become subject to FMCSR and fail to obtain the proper medical certification, your

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	license may be subject to cancellation. A false statement on your application will also subject your license to cancellation.
	NEW RESIDENT AND TRANSFER OF CDL
	After establishing residence in Kentucky, anyone who wishes to drive commercial motor vehicles must apply for a Kentucky commercial driver's license within thirty (30) days. If they have a valid out-of-state commercial driver's license, they must pass the vision test if he/she desires a Kentucky commercial driver's license. The Kentucky Department of Transportation, Division of Motor Vehicles, will obtain driving record information through the Commercial Driver's License Information System (CDLIS), the National Driver Register (NDR) and each state which he/she has been licensed. They will also be required to surrender their out-of-state license before a Kentucky commercial driver's license can be issued.
	New residents who do not hold a valid commercial driver's license from another state must follow the same procedures as any first-time applicant for a commercial driver's license.
	RESTRICTED LICENSES
	The Kentucky Department of Transportation, Division of Motor Vehicles, is authorized to impose license restrictions to assure the safe operation of motor vehicles. The Department may issue you a restricted license or may indicate restrictions on the regular license form. Operating a motor vehicle in violation of the restriction is

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	a serious offense and could result in the suspension or revocation of your driving privilege. **EXPIRATION OF LICENSE** Commercial driver's licenses expire four (4) years from the date of issuance. A commercial driver's license held by someone in the armed forces which expires while the person is on active duty remains valid for thirty (30) days from the date the person re-establishes residence in Kentucky. Any person applying to renew a commercial driver's license which has been expired for two (2) years or more must follow the procedures for initial issuance of a commercial driver's license, including testing provisions. **LICENSE RENEWAL PROCEDURES** **All applicants applying for renewal of a commercial driver's license must do so thirty (30) days prior to the expiration date on their current license.** The applicant must complete the application form, providing updated information and required certifications. If the applicant wishes to retain a hazardous material endorsements, he/she must take and pass the written test. **CHANGE OF NAME OR ADDRESS** If you change your name or address, you are required to notify the Kentucky Department of Transportation, Division of Motor Vehicles, in writing, with copies of documents making this change legal. An application for a

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	change of name or address must be made to the Department of Transportation on a driver's license application form. Since this change is considered as a duplicate or reissuance license, a monetary fee is required.
	ORGAN DONOR PROGRAM
	If you wish to become a organ donor, include this information on the back of your license.
	COMMERCIAL DRIVERS PROHIBITED FROM OPERATING WITH ANY ALCOHOL IN SYSTEM
	1. Not withstanding any other provision of law, a person with measurable alcohol in his/her system may not drive, operate or be in physical control of a commercial motor vehicle. 2. A person with measurable alcohol in his/her system who drives, operates or is in physical control of a commercial motor vehicle or refuses to take a preliminary breath test to determine blood alcohol level must be placed out-of-service for twenty-four (24) hours.
	IMPLIED CONSENT AND THE CHEMICAL TEST
	Anyone who accepts the privilege of driving in Kentucky is deemed to have given consent, if requested, to taking the designated test to determine body alcohol content. If the driver refuses to take the chemical test, his/her privilege of operating a motor vehicle will be suspended for a period of one (1) year to life.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	Many people mistakenly think that the Implied Consent Law means that they will be fined or go to jail if they have alcohol on their breath when they are stopped. On the contrary, since the blood alcohol test provides a medically accepted measure of alcohol concentration, the law protects the driver who has not been drinking. The Implied Consent Law protects the public from intoxicated drivers who refuse to be tested for blood alcohol content when arrested. Without this law, some drivers might escape punishment and continue to pose a danger to the public. **KNOWLEDGE EXAMINATION** All applicants must take the knowledge test, either written or oral, and pass it with a least an 80% score. Beginning with a general knowledge test, all applicants must pass an air brake test or the commercial driver's license will be restricted to vehicles without air brakes. Endorsement tests can be taken at the same time as the general knowledge test or at a later time. **SKILLS TEST** The Skills Test, if required, will not be given until you have passed all parts of the written examination. Each section of the Skills Test (i.e., Pre-Trip Inspection, Basic Controls and Road Test) must be passed in sequence in order to proceed to the next section. All Skills Tests will be administered by certified third-party examiners.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	DRIVER RESPONSIBILITIES The driver privilege carries with it many responsibilities. The driver is responsible for their actions. There are a number of areas that the license holder must be aware of in order to maintain the privilege of driving in Kentucky. No person who operates a commercial motor vehicle is allowed to have more than one (1) driver's license at a time. Any Kentucky licensed commercial motor vehicle driver who receives an out-of-state violation (other than parking violations) must notify the Kentucky Department of Transportation, Division of Motor Vehicles, within thirty (30) days after the date of the violation. **NOTIFICATION OF SUSPENSIONS, REVOCATIONS, CANCELLATIONS AND EXPIRATIONS** Each driver who has their license suspended, revoked, cancelled or expired by any state, who loses the privilege of driving a commercial motor vehicle in any state for a period or is disqualified from driving a commercial motor vehicle for any period, must notify his/her employer before the end of the business day following the day the driver received notice of that fact. **NOTIFICATION OF PREVIOUS EMPLOYMENT** Anyone who applies to be a commercial motor vehicle driver must provide the employer, at the time of application, with the following information for the ten (10) preceding years:

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	1. a list of names and addresses of previous employers for whom the applicant drove a commercial motor vehicle; 2. the dates of such employment; and 3. the reason for termination. Applicants must certify that all information furnished is true and complete. An employer may require an applicant to provide additional information. **ENDORSEMENTS AND RESTRICTIONS** "A" restricts the driver to driving only vehicles equipped with automatic transmissions. "H" authorizes the driver to drive a vehicle transporting hazardous materials. "I" restricts the driver to intrastate use only. "J" restricts the driver from operating Class A or B buses. "K" restricts the driver to vehicles not equipped with air brakes. "L" restricts the driver from operating Class A buses. "N" authorizes driving tank vehicles. "P" authorizes driving vehicles carrying passengers. "S" allows the driver to use school buses/mass transit buses/church buses for non-profit use only. "T" authorized driving double and triple trailers. "X" represents a combination of hazardous materials and tank vehicle endorsements.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	DISQUALIFICATION AND CANCELLATION A driver will be: 1. Disqualified from driving a commercial motor vehicle for a period or not less than one (1) year if convicted of a first violation of: a. driving a commercial motor vehicle under the influence of alcohol or a controlled substance; b. driving a commercial motor vehicle while his/her blood or breath alcohol concentration is 0.04 or more; c. refusal to submit to a test to determine his/her alcohol concentration while driving a commercial motor vehicle; and/or d. using a commercial motor vehicle in the commission of any felony, as defined in this article. 2. Disqualified, as an operator of any vehicle, for conviction of any of the following offices (for a period of not less than three (3) years if the violations occurred while transporting a hazardous material required to be placarded): a. manslaughter or negligent homicide resulting from operation of a motor vehicle; b. driving while license is suspended or revoked; or

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

c. perjury or making a false affidavit or false statement under oath to the Division of Motor Vehicles.

3. Disqualified for life if convicted of two (2) or more violations or any of the offenses specified in "Subsection A" of this section or any combination of those offenses arising from two (2) or more separate violations.
4. **Under the new CDL Regulations (2003) any holder of a commercial drivers license will be held accountable for any and all tickets, infractions, etc., received while operating his/her personal vehicle. These infractions may result in the suspension of the driver's CDL. All districts should require, by board policy, drivers to report any and all infractions incurred.**

This section will discuss the skills needed to safely operate a commercial motor vehicle. A school bus driver must have a comprehensive knowledge of the procedures used in operating a commercial vehicle safely.

BASIC CONTROL OF YOUR VEHICLE

Safe operation of a commercial vehicle calls for skills in:

1. ACCELERATING
   a. Partly engage clutch before taking your foot off of the brake.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	b. Use the parking brake to keep from rolling back and release only when you have enough power to keep you from rolling back. 2. STEERING a. Hold steering wheel firmly with both hands, either in the 9-3 or 10-2 positions. b. Hands should be on opposite sides of the wheel. 3. BACK UP SAFELY a. Back up slowly. b. Use the mirrors. c. Correct drift of a bus by turning the top of the steering wheel in the direction that the rear of the bus is drifting. d. Pull forward to reposition the vehicle as needed. e. Use a helper and hand signals. f. Back and turn to the driver's side when possible. g. Avoid backing, when you can. **SHIFTING GEARS** Correct shifting of gears is necessary for control of your vehicle. 1. Many manual transmissions (stick-shifts) for heavy vehicles must be double-clutched.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

2. Downshift before going down a hill.
3. Downshift before entering a curve.

SCANNING

Seeing what is around you is important.

1. Look ahead the distance the vehicle would travel in twelve to fifteen (12-15) seconds (at highway speeds that is about ¼ mile) for:
   a. traffic;
   b. road conditions; and
   c. signs.
2. Look to the sides and rear, using mirrors for:
   a. checking traffic;
   b. checking your vehicles and tires; and/or
   c. lane changes, turns, merges and tight moves.
3. Check mirrors quickly and return attention to road ahead.
4. Curved mirrors, as well as convex mirrors, make things seem farther away than they are.
5. There are blind spots that your mirrors cannot show you.

COMMUNICATING

Signaling what you will do is very important for safety.

1. Signal early before you turn or change lanes.
2. Cancel your signal after the turn or lane change.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	3. Flash the brake lights to warn other drivers that you will need to slow down for a hazard or stop. 4. Use the four-way emergency flashers when moving slowly or when you are parked, when appropriate. 5. Don't signal others to pass as it could cause an incident. 6. Brake early and slow gradually for tight turns. <u>In communicating your presence to others:</u> 1. Don't assume that others can see you. 2. At night, flash lights to high beam, then back to low beam when you are about to pass a vehicle. 3. Use low beam headlights so you can be seen easier. 4. When passing, tap the horn lightly or flash the high beams. 5. Use the horn only when needed; otherwise, it can startle other drivers. 6. When parked on the side of the road: a. turn on four-way emergency flashers; b. place reflective triangles within ten (10) minutes after stopping; and; c. when putting out the triangles, hold them between yourself and the oncoming traffic for your safety.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

NOTE: ON A HILL OR CURVE, THE REAR TRIANGLE SHOULD BE MOVED UP TO FIVE HUNDRED FEET (500') TO PROVIDE ADEQUATE WARNING.

CONTROLLING SPEED (STOPPING)

You may have to change your speed because of traffic, hills, weather conditions and curves.

1. Stopping distance includes:
   a. the distance the vehicle goes from the time your eyes see a problem to the time your brain knows it – perception distance;
   b. the distance traveled from the time your brain tells your foot to move from the accelerator until your foot pushes the brake – reaction distance; and
   c. the distance it takes to stop once the brakes are applied – braking distance.

   At 55 mph, it will take about six (5) seconds to stop. Your vehicle will travel about the distance of a football field.

PERCEPTION DISTANCE

+

REACTION DISTANCE

+ BRAKING DISTANCE

= TOTAL STOPPING DISTANCE

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	2. If you double your speed, it will take you about four (4) times the distance to stop your vehicle. 3. Brakes on heavy vehicles are made to work better if your vehicle is loaded. Empty trucks require greater stopping distance because an empty vehicle has less traction. This may cause bouncing and wheel lockup. The heavier a vehicle is, the more work the brakes must do to stop. This makes the brakes hotter. 4. Match your speed to the road surface: a. Slippery roads make the vehicle harder to turn and cause you to take longer to stop. Slow down gradually and allow much more space than is needed for ideal driving conditions. b. On wet roads allow for double stopping distance. Reduce speed by one third (55 mph to 35 mph). c. On packed snow, reduce speed by one-half or more. d. On ice, stop driving as soon as you can safely do so. e. Hydroplaning may happen to a vehicle when it travels on wet roads. Tires lose road contact and have little or no traction.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	5. Speed and curves: a. Adjust speed for curves. b. Downshift before you enter a curve. c. Braking in a curve may cause skidding. d. Vehicles with a high center of gravity can roll over at the speed limit posted for a curve. 6. Be able to stop within the distance you can see ahead. 7. Generally, the safest speed in heavy traffic is the speed of other vehicles. 8. Speed on downgrades – shift to a lower gear before starting down a grade or hill. **VEHICLE SPATIAL AWARENESS** 1. Space Behind a. Stay to the right so faster vehicles may pass. b. Deal with tailgaters safely by: ➢ avoiding quick lane changes; ➢ increasing your following distance; ➢ not speeding up; and/or ➢ turning on tail lights or tapping brakes lights. 2. Space to the Sides a. Stay in the center of the lane.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	b. Avoid traveling next to other vehicles especially when coming out of tunnels. Strong winds may make it difficult to stay in your lane. 3. Space Overhead – Check to be sure you always have overhead clearance. a. Don't assume that the heights posted are correct. b. If your vehicle tilts it could hit an object near the side of the road, drive closer to the center of the road. 4. Space Below **NOTE:** Most drivers forget about the clearance under the vehicles. 5. Space for Turns **NOTE:** Because of wide turning and off-tracking, large vehicles can hit other vehicles or objects during turns. a. Rights Turns ➢ Turn slowly to give yourself and others more time to avoid problems. ➢ Turn wide as you complete the turn. ➢ Don't turn wide to the left at the beginning of the turn unless necessary.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	b. Left Turns ➢ Reach the center of the intersection before you start the turn. ➢ Use the right-hand turn lane if there are two (2) turning lanes. 6. Crossing or Entering Traffic a. Be sure of the size and weight of your bus. b. You need a larger gap than a car to enter traffic. c. Allow more room if your bus is heavily loaded. d. Be sure you can get all the way across before traffic reaches you. **DRIVING AT NIGHT** Driver factors causing problems when driving at night are: 1. Vision – People can't see as sharply at night. 2. Glare – You may be blinded for a short time by bright lights. Don't look directly at bright lights. 3. Being tired and sleepy. **ROADWAY FACTORS:** 1. Poor lighting 2. Drunk drivers

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

VEHICLE FACTORS:

1. Headlights – Low beams let you see two hundred and fifty feet (250’) ahead. High beams let you see three hundred and fifty to five hundred feet (350’-500’).
2. Dirty or broken vehicle lights.
3. Dirty windshield and/or mirrors.

NIGHT DRIVING:

1. Be rested and alert.
2. Don’t blind others with high beams. Dim your lights when following or approaching another vehicle within five hundred feet (500’).
3. Avoid looking directly at lights of oncoming vehicles.
4. Use high beams when conditions allow.
5. Drive slowly enough to be able to stop within the range of your headlights.
6. Stop driving and rest at the nearest safe place if you get sleepy or tired.
7. Slow down.

DRIVING IN WINTER WEATHER

Winter pre-trip inspections should include:

1. antifreeze in your vehicle;
2. windshield wiper fluid in your vehicle;
3. defrosters and heaters are working properly;
4. windshield wipers are working properly; tire chains;

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	5. radiator shutters are working properly; and 6. that there are no exhaust system leaks which could allow poisonous carbon monoxide to leak into your vehicle. **DRIVING** 1. Start engine and accelerate slowly to get the feel of the road. 2. Make turns as gently as possible. 3. Adjust speed to conditions. 4. Adjust space to conditions. 5. Avoid getting brakes wet, use lower gear and increase RPMs. 6. Gently put on brakes when going through any water. Maintain light pressure on brakes for a short distance to heat them up in order to dry them out. **DRIVING IN HOT WEATHER** During pre-trip inspections: 1. Inspect tires every two (2) hours or one hundred (100) miles. Tire tread may separate in hot weather. 2. Check proper oil level and pressure – oil helps keep the engine cool. 3. Check proper engine coolant level.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	4. Make sure engine coolant has antifreeze. Antifreeze helps the engine in hot weather as well as cold. Never take off the radiator cap or any part of pressurized system until the engine has completely cooled. 5. Make sure belts are tight to avoid overheating. 6. Make sure coolant hoses are not cracked or dry-rotted. **DRIVING** 1. Watch for bleeding tar on the road. 2. High speeds will increase tire problems and make tires and engine hotter. 3. Never check air pressure in hot tires. If tire is too hot to touch, remain stopped until tire cools. **MOUNTAIN DRIVING** 1. Be in correct gear before going down steep grades. a. Older vehicles – Choose same gear you would use to go up the grade. b. Newer vehicles – Choose a gear lower than you would use to go up the grade. 2. Brake properly. a. Go slow enough down a grade that light use of the brakes will keep your speed from increasing.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

b. Brakes that get hot may fade.

c. Use on again-off again braking with a target speed. Refer to the Commercial Driver License Manual (Revised 1994), Chapters 2-39.

3. Know escape ramp locations on the route. Escape ramps are made to safely stop runaway vehicles as well as to avoid damage and prevent injury to drivers, passengers and vehicles.

SEEING HAZARDS

A hazard is any road condition or road user that is a possible danger.

1. Seeing hazards lets you be prepared.
2. Learn to recognize hazards.

Slow down and drive with care if any of the following road hazards are in evidence:

1. Work zones – drive slowly and use four-way flashers or brake lights to warn others.
2. Drop-offs – Don't drive too near edge of road.
3. Foreign objects – Try to avoid them without making sudden or unsafe moves.
4. Off/On ramps:
   a. Posted off-ramp speeds may not be safe for larger vehicles or heavily loaded vehicles.
   b. Braking and turning at the same time is dangerous.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	c. Slow down before the curved part of an off-ramp or on-ramp. Be aware of hazards such as: 1. drivers with blocked vision; 2. distracted drivers; 3. talkers; 4. children; 5. workers; 6. disabled vehicles; 7. incidents; 8. shoppers; 9. confused drivers; 10. slow drivers; 11. drivers in a hurry; 12. impaired drivers; 13. slow vehicles (identified with red triangle with an orange center); and 14. if there is movement inside a parked car which could mean someone is about to get out. Always have a plan: Driver body movement may be a clue for a turn or lane change. 1. Watch for other drivers who can't decide which way to go. 2. Look for hazards to have time to plan before an emergency. 3. Be ready to act based on emergency plans.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

EMERGENCIES

An example of a traffic emergency is when two (2) or more vehicles might crash.

Vehicle emergencies can happen when tires, brakes or vehicle parts fail.

REMEMBER: A VEHICLE MAY BE ABLE TO TURN MORE QUICKLY THAN TO STOP.

Steer to avoid a crash:

1. Stopping is not always the best thing to do.
   a. A quick turn can be made safely if the driver:
      - doesn't apply brakes when turning;
      - avoids braking until the vehicle speed is less than 20 mph; and
      - keeps both hands on steering wheel.
   b. "Counter-steer" (turn wheel back in other direction) once you have passed the danger.
2. Steer to the right if an upcoming car has drifted into your lane. Don't turn any more than necessary to clear what is in your way.
3. Leave the road if necessary.
   a. Brake gently to avoid skidding.
   b. Keep one (1) set of wheels on the pavement, when possible.
   c. Stay on the shoulder if possible.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	d. If the driver must return to the road before stopping: ➢ reduce speed or even stop if safe to do so; ➢ turn enough to get back on the road; and ➢ counter-steer immediately when front tires are on the road. **STOPPING QUICKLY AND SAFELY** 1. Controlled Braking: a. Apply brakes as hard as possible without locking the wheels. b. If wheels lock, release brakes. c. Use brakes again, as soon as possible. 2. Stab Braking: a. Apply brakes all the way. b. Release brakes when wheels lock up. c. As soon as wheels start rolling again fully apply brakes. 3. Don't jam on the brakes. If the wheels are skidding, you cannot control the vehicle. 4. Never disable or unhook steering axle brakes. **BRAKE FAILURE** 1. Brake failures are caused by: a. loss of hydraulic pressure; and/or

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	b. brake fade from overheating. 2. When brakes fail: a. downshift; b. pump the brakes; c. use the parking brake; d. find an escape route; and e. use escape ramp if available. **TIRE FAILURE** 1. Recognize a tire failure by: a. sound; b. vibration; and/or c. feel. 2. Hold the steering wheel firmly. 3. Stay off the brake until the vehicle slows down. 4. After stopping, check all the tires. **SKID CONTROL AND RECOVERY** Five (5) main causes of skids are: 1. over-braking; 2. over-steering; 3. over-accelerating; 4. driving too fast for road conditions; or 5. not enough weight on front axle. **DRIVE WHEEL SKIDS** 1. Drive wheel skids caused by acceleration can be stopped easily by taking your foot off the accelerator.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	2. Drive wheel braking skids can be corrected by: a. stopping braking; b. turning quickly in the direction of the skid; and/or c. counter-steering. **FRONT-WHEEL SKIDS** 1. Front wheel skids are caused by driving too fast for the conditions. 2. The front end tends to go in a straight line no matter how much you turn the steering wheel. 3. Slow down as quickly as possible without skidding. **INCIDENT PROCEDURES** 1. Protect the area. a. Get the vehicle to the side of the road. b. Park away from the incident if stopping to help. c. Put your flashers on. d. Set out reflective triangles. 2. Notify authorities. Use two-way radio to notify authorities before leaving the vehicle if possible. a. Protect area, then telephone or send someone for help.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

3. Care for the injured.
   a. If a qualified person is at the incident scene and helping the injured, stay out of the way unless asked to help.
   b. Don't move a severely injured person unless the danger of fire passing traffic or additional danger makes it necessary.
   c. Stop bleeding by applying direct pressure to the wound.
   d. Keep the injured person warm.
4. Collect information on the incident.

FIRES

Some causes of fires are:

1. spilled fuel after an incident;
2. under-inflated tires or dual tires that touch;
3. electrical system short-circuits;
4. improper fueling, loose connections or driver smoking;
5. flammable cargo, improperly loaded with poor ventilation; or
6. the improper use of flares.

Fire prevention involved:

pre-trip inspections (see "Care and Maintenance");

a. inspection of vehicle at stops during the trip;
b. following safety procedures; and

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	c. monitoring vehicle gauges and mirrors to check cargo and vehicle. **FIREFIGHTING** 1. Pull off the road. a. For engine fires, turn off the engine as soon as possible. Don't open the hood. b. For cargo fires, keep cargo doors shut. 2. Keep the fire from spreading. 3. Use the fire extinguisher. 4. Extinguish the fire. a. Don't use water on an electrical or gasoline fire. b. Burning tires must be cooled with water. **<u>STAY ALERT AND FIT TO DRIVE</u>** Stay alert by: 1. getting enough sleep; 2. scheduling trips during hours you are normally awake and can remain alert; 3. not taking medicine that has a label warning against operating vehicles; 4. keeping cool; and/or 5. taking short breaks before you feel drowsy. When sleepy: 1. stop driving; 2. sleep or take a nap; and/or 3. avoid taking drugs to keep you awake.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

NOTE: ONLY SLEEP CAN OVERCOME BEING TIRED.

ALCOHOL AND DRIVING

1. Alcohol in your body is measured by blood alcohol concentration (BAC).
2. The alcohol in drinks affects human performance.
   a. It first affects a person's good judgement and self-control.
   b. It then affects muscle control, vision and coordination, which can cause serious driving errors and increase the possibilities of incidents due to:
      - increased reaction time;
      - driving too fast or too slow;
      - weaving;
      - straddling lanes;
      - quick, jerky starts;
      - not signaling;
      - running stop signs and red lights; and/or
      - improper passing.

OTHER DRUGS

1. Possession or use of many drugs while on duty is forbidden.
2. Don't take over-the-counter drugs which warn of side affects.
3. Use of drugs can lead to traffic incidents, arrest, fines and/or jail sentences.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

4. Possession and use of prescription drugs is permitted if the doctor informs the driver that it will not affect safe driving ability.

NOTE: DON'T DRIVE WHEN ILL.

AIR BRAKE SYSTEMS

An air brake system is made up of three (3) parts.

1. The service brake system applies and releases the brakes when you use the brake pedal when driving.
2. The parking brake system applies and releases the parking brake when you use the parking brake control.
3. The emergency brake system uses parts of the service and parking systems to stop the vehicle if the service brake system fails.

Air brakes use compressed air to make the brakes work.

Air brakes are a safe way of stopping large vehicles if the brakes are well kept and used correctly.

PARTS OF THE AIR BRAKE SYSTEM

The air compressor pumps air into the air storage tanks. If the compressor has its own oil supply, check the oil level before driving.

The air compressor governor turns the air compressor on and off and controls the air being pumped into the tanks.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	The air storage tanks hold compressed air-enough air to let the brakes be used several times even if the air compressor stops working. **AIR TANK DRAINS** 1. Compressed air has some water and oil in it. a. Water and compressor oil tend to collect in the bottom of the air tank. b. Water can freeze in parts of the brake system, making the brakes fail. 2. Drain valves let you drain the unwanted oil and water that collects in the bottom of the tank. a. Tanks with manual valves must be drained by hand after each day of driving. b. Tanks with automatic valves drain the water and oil by themselves. **ALCOHOL EVAPORATOR** **(FOUND ON SOME VEHICLES)** 1. The alcohol evaporator puts alcohol into the air system. a. Alcohol helps keep ice from forming in air brake valves and parts. b. Ice can make the brakes stop working. Check the alcohol container every day during cold weather and fill when needed. 2. Drain air tanks daily if tank has a manual valve (see your local district procedure on this).

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

SAFETY VALVE

The safety valve protects the tank and the rest of the system from too much pressure.

1. The brake pedal controls pressure to the brakes.
2. Pushing the pedal down harder applies more air pressure.

FOUNDATION BRAKES

1. The foundation brakes are the brakes at each wheel.
2. The most common type is the S-cam drum brake.
3. Other types are wedge and disc brakes.

SUPPLY PRESSURE GAUGE

The supply pressure gauge tells how much pressure is in the air tanks. All vehicles have a supply pressure gauge.

APPLICATION PRESSURE GAUGE

1. The application pressure gauge shows how much air pressure you are supplying to the brakes.
2. The need to apply more pressure to hold the same speed when going down steep grades:
   a. means the brakes are fading –
      - slow down and
      - look and listen for air leaks;

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

b. can also be caused by

- brakes that are out of adjustment;
- air leaks; or
- mechanical problems.

LOW AIR PRESSURE WARNING SIGNAL

The low air pressure warning signal:

1. is required on vehicles with air brakes;
2. must come on before the air pressure falls below 60 psi;
3. is usually a red light; and
4. means, when it comes on, that you should stop right away and park your vehicle safely.

STOP LIGHT SWITCH

The stop light switch turns on the brake lights when you put on the air brakes to warn drivers behind you.

SPRING BRAKES

Spring brakes:

1. hold emergency and parking brakes on;
2. are held back by air pressure when driving;
3. put the brakes on with their very powerful springs if the air pressure is removed; and
4. depend, for their braking power, on brakes being in adjustment.

PARKING BRAKE CONTROLS

1. The park brake valve is used to apply the spring brakes slowly if service brakes fail.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	2. Dual parking control valves consist of: a. one (1) valve used to put on the spring brakes for parking; and b. another valve using pressure from a separate tank to release the spring brakes so you can move the vehicle in an emergency. **INSPECTING AIR BRAKE SYSTEMS** 1. Check air compressor drive belt. 2. Check manual slack adjusters on S-cam brakes with the vehicle parked on level ground, wheels chocked (held in place by blocks) and parking brake off. 3. Check brake drums (or discs), linings and hoses. 4. Test low-pressure warning signal. 5. Check that spring brakes are activated automatically. 6. Test air leakage rate: a. Loss rate should be less than 2 psi in one (1) minute for single vehicles with engine off, brakes released. b. Loss rate should be less than 3 psi in one (1) minute for single vehicles with the service brake on.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	7. Check air compressor governor cut-in and out pressure. 8. Test parking brake. 9. Test service brakes: a. Move the vehicle forward slowly and apply the brakes firmly. b. Note any vehicle "pulling" to one side, unusual feel or delayed stopping action. **<u>USING AIR BRAKES</u>** For a normal stop, use brake pedal to control the pressure so the vehicle comes to a smooth, safe stop. For emergency stops, brake so you can steer safely and the vehicle stays in a straight line. 1. Controlled braking requires you to: a. firmly apply brakes; b. release brakes if wheels slide; and c. reapply brakes. 2. Stab braking requires that you: a. press the brake pedal as hard as you can; b. release the brakes when the wheels lock up; and c. put the brakes on again when the wheels start rolling.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

STOPPING DISTANCE FOR VEHICLES WITH AIR BRAKES

1. Air brakes, unlike hydraulic brakes, take time to work after the brake pedal is pushed.
   a. It takes one-half of a second or more for the air to flow through the lines to the brakes.
   b. On dry pavement, the air brake lag distance at 55 mph is about thirty-two feet (32').
2. Stopping distance is the total of four factors:

PERCEPTION DISTANCE
+
REACTION
+
EFFECTIVE BRAKING DISTANCE
+
BRAKE LAG DISTANCE
=
STOPPING DISTANCE

BRAKING ON DOWNGRADES

1. When you try to slow down from a high speed, often or quickly, the brakes get too hot.
2. Brakes will fade when they get too hot and you will have to push harder to get the same stopping force.
3. Use a low gear. On again-off again techniques with a target speed is the approved downhill braking procedure.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT

4. Brake system adjustments must be balanced to give the same braking to each wheel.

PARKING BRAKE

Use the parking brake any time you park the vehicle (or load/unload students).

1. Let hot brakes cool before applying parking brakes (chock wheels).
2. Before using parking brakes in freezing weather, be sure to dry brakes that are wet (drive with brakes lightly applied).
3. Parking brakes must be held by mechanical force.
4. Drain air tanks of water and oil after each working day (see your local district procedures before doing this).

LOADING THE BUS

NOTE: All bus drivers must have a commercial driver's license with a passenger endorsement.

Any item transported on a school bus must:

1. be stored in the undercarriage of the bus. The driver is the only person who shall store or retrieve items from undercarriage.
2. fit in the lap of the student and shall not infringe upon the space of other riders.
3. be placed on the floor of bus and held by the student and shall not infringe upon other riders space.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	4. any item that cannot be secured by the above means must be secured using approved webbing or straps that meet all applicable federal and state standards. **RIDERS** Riders: 1. may not stand forward of the rear of the driver's seat; and 2. must remain behind the standee line. There should be not standees on a Kentucky school bus. Remind riders to take carry-ons with them as they are getting off the bus. **ON THE ROAD** Supervise passengers: 1. While driving, scan the inside of the bus as well as the road ahead. 2. Remind riders about rules, if needed. 3. Follow LEA rules for handling drunk or rude drivers. 4. Remind riders to watch their step when leaving the bus. 5. Never drive with an open emergency exit door or window.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	SPEED MANAGEMENT AND BRAKING 1. Whenever you double your speed, it takes approximately four (4) times as much stopping distance. 2. Slow down before curves. Although the posted speed is safe for cars, it may be too high for buses. 3. Stop fifty feet (50') before a drawbridge that does not have a signal light or traffic attendant. 4. Adjust your speed by slowing down when going from high beams to low beams. 5. Slow down and look: a. at street car crossings; b. where a policeman or flagman is directing traffic; and c. at crossings marked "exempt crossings." **FOLLOWING DISTANCE** 1. Use one (1) second for every ten feet (10') of vehicle length up to 40 mph. 2. Add one (1) second over 40 mph. 3. When driving on a slippery road, allow much more space for following distances. Other measures to prevent having an incident are: 1. Use caution at intersections. 2. Know the space your bus needs to merge with traffic:

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	a. Never assume other drivers will brake to give you room. b. Avoid traveling next to other vehicles. c. Lane changes – you need to check your mirrors to make sure no one is alongside you or about to pass you. Check mirrors: ➢ before you start to change lanes; ➢ after you have signaled your intentions; ➢ immediately after starting the change; and ➢ after the change is completed. 3. Be cautious at railroad crossings. a. Stop between fifteen and fifty-feet (15-50’) from railroad crossings, set parking brake. b. Listen and look both ways for trains. c. If one train has passed, look both ways again to make sure another train isn’t comings. d. Never change gears while crossing railroad tracks. 4. See ahead. a. All drivers look ahead, but many drivers don’t look far enough. b. Recognize hazards such as an ice cream truck, blind intersections or a driver signaling a turn.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	AFTER-TRIP INSPECTION 1. Inspect your bus after every shift. 2. Report any damage or mechanical problems. **PROHIBITED PRACTICES** 1. Don’t do anything that distracts you from driving. 2. Don’t tow or push a bus with riders on it unless getting passengers off would be dangerous. 3. Don’t refuel a bus when riders are on board. 4. Don’t use brake interlocks when safety requires use of a parking brake.

07/02

NAME: _____DATE: _____

COMMERCIAL DRIVERS LICENSE (CDL)
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

1. _____ An "L" restriction on your license means you can drive on interstate highways only.
2. _____ You should look ahead of your bus 12-15 seconds.
3. _____ One use of your mirrors is to check the condition of your tires.
4. _____ Stopping distance includes: perception distance, reaction and braking distance.
5. _____ Wet roads will triple your stopping distance.
6. _____ You should slow down before entering a curve, then speed up as you exit the curve.
7. _____ High beam headlights allow you to see 500-750 feet in front of you.
8. _____ In hot weather, you should check your tires every 3 hours or 150 miles.
9. _____ The use of brakes on a long steep downgrade is only a supplement to the braking effect of the engine.
10. _____ A hazard is any road condition or road user that is a possible danger.
11. _____ Most accidents are caused by driving too fast for road conditions.
12. _____ You must have your parking brake off to properly check your slack adjuster.
13. _____ Front tires may be recapped.
14. _____ The driver's seat belt must be worn when transporting students only.
15. _____ When using the on again off again braking technique, the brake applications phase should last about 5 seconds.

INSTRUCTOR'S SIGNATURE: _____

COMMERCIAL DRIVERS LICENSE (CDL)
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

KEY

F The answer key is only released to KDE endorsed trainers.

CHAPTER 16
EXTRA-CURRICULAR TRIPS

LESSON TOPIC:

EXTRA-CURRICULAR TRIPS

OBJECTIVES:

- To enable the drivers to identify the necessary information needed in planning a field trip, handling emergencies while on field trips, types of field trips, leaders and responsibilities of each and to identify behavioral problems and solutions.
- The driver will accurately and carefully plan for and conduct a safe, efficient and trouble-free trip.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
INTRODUCE UNIT.	**<u>INTRODUCTION</u>** Numerous problems can arise when driving on field trips – problems such as selecting the wrong route, running out of fuel, arriving late or not at all. Student problems can also arise because of no food or rest stops. These can also cause the driver to have an unhappy or more importantly a unsafe trip. The field trip or activity trip is a special and exciting time for all concerned. It should also be a safe time. The best way to ensure a safe and happy trip is through **pre-planning**.
REVIEW IMPORTANCE OF MAJOR TOPICS TO BE DISCUSSED.	Following are items to be discussed in this chapter: 1. Times 2. Route Planning 3. Emergency Preparations 4. Responsibilities 5. Problem Causing Situations
INTRODUCE TOPIC	**<u>TIMES</u>** Many field trips take drivers out of their district. If problems arise, the driver will probably have a more difficult time in getting assistance. Problems, therefore, take on a more critical nature. Without planning, minor problems can become major ones. Have the students arrive at the designated meeting location thirty (30) minutes prior to departure for information concerning the field trip, practicing

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	emergency evacuations, explaining planned stops, expected behavior, etc. Departure times and locations are important. Drivers have to know the exact time they are to arrive at the school, the exact location for the student pickup and the exact time of departure for the event. The same is true for arriving at the event. The exact arrival time and location must be known. For the return trip, drivers must know when they are to arrive at the student pickup spot, the exact location and when to depart. It is also important that drivers know their expected arrival time and location back at the school so that parents know when and where to pick up their children.
EMPHASIZE THAT THE DRIVER CONTACTS THE TRIP SPONSOR, GATHERS PERTINENT INFORMATION AND DETERMINES THE EXIT TIME.	**<u>ROUTE PLANNING</u>** Since departure and arrival times are important, it is necessary for the driver to plan routes in sufficient detail that travel times can be reasonably estimated. The planned route should include both a primary route and a secondary route, in case of a traffic tie-up or detour on the primary route. Special stops along the way should also be planned in advance. These would include stops for food, fuel and comfort (refer to 702 KAR 5:080, Section 17, "Fueling the Bus"). It is best if they can all be accomplished in one stop rather than a separate one for each. If a fuel stop is

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	required the driver must have adequate means to pay for the fuel whether by school fuel card, cash, etc. When estimating travel time, time estimates for these stops will have to be included. A driver should know any special situations along the way. Bridges and tunnels would be good examples. The questions the driver might ask is: "Is there anything along the way that I cannot get over, under or through?" Tolls are another consideration. Does the route cross any toll bridge or use a toll road? If it does, the driver will need sufficient money to pay these tolls. Frequently, at special events, there is a special parking area for buses. The driver needs to know if there is such a special area and where it is located. A final consideration is any special instructions. Is there anything else you need to know for a safe and happy trip? Drivers should check with the transportation supervisor for special conditions or situations.
INTRODUCE TOPIC.	**<u>EMERGENCY PREPARATIONS</u>** Many things can go wrong while on any trip. These mishaps can range from very minor events to major catastrophes. On a field trip, a mishap of any degree of seriousness is always more difficult to handle because drivers typically are not as familiar with the area as they are with their own route, and assistance may be more difficult to obtain.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
REVIEW PREPARATION FOR EMERGENCIES. ILLUSTRATE WITH ACTUAL SITUATIONS WHENEVER POSSIBLE.	Drivers should have on hand several phone numbers should they need to get in touch with key supervisory personnel. This would include the school office and transportation supervisor. Phone numbers of where these individuals can be reached in the evening, as well as their normal office phone number should be obtained. The driver should have available the name, address and phone number of the insurance carrier should an incident occur. This information should be on each bus the district operates. A two-way radio under emergency conditions is almost a necessity. If at all possible, a radio should be carried so the driver has a means to contact the school or emergency agencies to request assistance. If a cell phone is taken, the driver should stop the bus in a safe location before use. Some of the students may have a special medical problem(s). These students and their medical problem(s) should be known before the trip begins. Only in this way can any medical problem be planned for in advance. Because of the excitement of the trip, and its length, it is possible that a student might become ill. Drivers need to know how to handle common illnesses and plan for them in advance.
INTRODUCE TOPIC.	**<u>RESPONSIBILITIES</u>** A number of different types of groups participate in field or activity trips. Each group may have one (1) or

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	more different types of group leaders. Typical groups and group leaders would include: 1. team/coach; 2. class/teacher; or 3. group/chaperons. On field and activity trips, responsibilities are shared between the driver and the group leader and/or chaperone. The transportation supervisor also has certain responsibilities to determine whether road conditions are such that it would be safe or practical to travel.
REVIEW RESPONSIBILITIES OF DRIVER.	**RESPONSIBILITIES OF THE DRIVER** 1. To obey all safety regulations. 2. To review with the students the emergency evacuation before the beginning of the trip or if needed conduct an evacuation drill. 3. To maintain passenger control. 4. To control emergency situations. 5. To maintain safe vehicle condition. 6. To select rest, food and fuel stops. 7. To ensure the eight (8) way warning lights, stop arm and crossing control arm are activated at any time students are loading or unloading. 8. Ensure any and all dunnage is properly secured. 9. Head counts.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	RESPONSIBILITIES OF GROUP LEADERS AND/OR CHAPERONES KRS 161.185. Teacher of staff member to accompany students on school-sponsored or endorsed trips – Exceptions. 1. Except as provided in subsection (2), boards of education shall require a member or the school faculty or a member of the administrative staff to accompany students on all school sponsored or school-endorsed trips. 2. Boards of education may permit a nonfaculty coach or nonfaculty assistant, as defined by administrative regulation promulgated by the Kentucky Board of Education under KRS 156.070(2), to accompany students on all school-sponsored or school-endorsed athletic trips. A nonfaculty coach or nonfaculty assistant shall be at least twenty-one (21) years of age, shall not be a violent offender or convicted of a sex crime as defined by KRS 17.165 which is classified as a felony, and shall submit to a criminal record check under KRS 160.380. 3. Prior to assuming his or her duties, a nonfaculty coach or nonfaculty assistant shall successfully complete training provided by the

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	local school district. The training shall include, but not be limited to, information on the physical and emotional development of students of the age with whom the nonfaculty coach and nonfaculty assistant will be working, the district's and school's discipline policies, procedures for dealing with discipline problems, and safety and first aid training. Follow-up training shall be provided annually. (Repealed and reenact. Acts 1990, ch. 476, Pt. V § 482, effective July 13, 1990; 1998, ch. 178 § 1, effective July 15, 1998.) 1. To relay trip plans and safety precautions. 2. To provide passenger information. 3. To maintain passenger control. 4. To provide supervision at stops. 5. Field trip activity. 6. Head counts. 7. To provide passenger instructions. 8. To properly group students together.
REVIEW RESPONSIBILITIES OF TRANSPORTATION DIRECTOR/SUPERVISOR.	**RESPONSIBILITIES OF DIRECTOR/SUPERVISOR** 1. Vehicle(s) and driver ability. Remember on all out of district trips only 2/3 capacity when transporting middle school or high school students.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	2. Ensure that any and all dunnage to be transported can be properly secured on the selected vehicle(s). 3. To provide necessary time for planning. 4. To know where to communicate with driver in emergency situations. 5. To return special care students.
INTRODUCE TOPIC.	**<u>PROBLEM CAUSING SITUATIONS</u>** Problems may arise while on a field or activity trip because of the nature and length of the trip. Unless plans are made and precautions taken, passenger behavior problems may arise which could get out of control
ASK "WHAT MIGHT CAUSE A BEHAVIOR PROBLEM ON A FIELD OR ACTIVITY TRIP AND HOW MIGHT THIS BE AVOIDED OR DEALT WITH?	The following conditions should be identified: 1. Fatigue – the driver should plan to have sufficient rest and comfort stops to avoid problems arising from this condition. **There should be no more than ninety (90) minutes between stops.** Driver fatigue should also be considered (refer to FMVSS 395.3 for the definition of "On Duty Time"). Remember: FEDERAL Safety Regulations supersede all others.
HAVE INDIVIDUAL CLASS MEMBERS IDENTIFY ONE CONDITION AND EXPLAIN HOW TO AVOID OF DEAL WITH IT.	2. Excitability – drivers should recognize that this will occur because of the nature of the trip. An opportunity should be provided for students to vent some of this excitement before an effort is made to restrain them. The group

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
REVIEW POINTS AS THE DRIVERS IDENTIFY THEM.	leader or chaperone should handle problems arising from these situations. 3. Depression – driver should recognize that this condition could occur and call it to the attention of the group leader or chaperone. The group leader or chaperone should be alerted and deal with this condition on a one-to-one basis with the student(s). 4. Discomfort – the driver should be alerted for conditions which could lead to student discomfort. The temperature of the bus should be closely monitored and sufficient fresh air should be provided. 5. Lack of understanding guidelines – driver should discuss with the group leader or the chaperone the guidelines that are to be followed during the field trip. The group leader or chaperone and the driver should discuss these with the students before the trip begins.
SUMMARIZE UNIT.	**<u>SUMMARY</u>** During this unit, we have examined a number of topics which are necessary to consider when planning and conducting any field trip. Specifically, we reviewed: 1. Times

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	3. Route Planning 4. Responsibilities 5. Problem-Causing Situations If adequate attention is paid to planning the trip and precautions are taken to avoid problem producing situations, the field trip should be a pleasant experience for all concerned. However, without it, things can easily get out of hand. Be prepared and enjoy a pleasant trip. **EXTRA-CURRICULAR TRIPS** **POINTS TO REMEMBER** 1. Departure Times 2. Arrival Times (To and From) 3. Planned Route 4. Secondary Route 5. Special Route 6. Special Situations 7. Tolls 8. Parking 9. Special Instructions 10. Evacuation Procedures 11. Phone Numbers 12. Insurance Carrier Name, Address and Phone 13. Radio 14. Special Medical Problems 15. Driver Responsibilities 16. Speed Limits 17. The Use of Cargo Boxes, When Possible

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	18. Securing Luggage 19. Prohibited Use of Towing Trailers

SAMPLE

FIELD TRIP PROPOSAL

_____SCHOOL DISTRICT

THE FOLLOWING INFORMATION MUST BE PROVIDED IN ORDER FOR THIS PROPOSAL TO BE CONSIDERED*

SCHOOL _____

TEACHER _____

GRADE(S)/CLASS(ES)_____

DESTINATIONS _____

DATE _____

EDUCATIONAL EMPHASIS/OBJECTIVES _____

_____

_____

_____

****PLEASE READ THE FOLLOWING BOARD POLICY AND OBTAIN ALL APPROPRIATE SIGNATURES****

CLASS FIELD TRIPS Requests for school-sponsored field trips shall be submitted to the Principal, who shall approve and forward the request to the Director of Transportation and the Superintendent for final approval. The Board shall approve all field trips for the school year at its November meeting.

EXCEPTIONS Teachers who plan field trips prior to, or after, the November approval date shall forward those requests through the proper channels for approval at least two (2) weeks prior to the event. The Board shall be routinely informed of these trips that were not approved at the November meeting.

OUT-OF-STATE/OVERNIGHT The board shall approve all out-of-state and overnight trips.

DRIVERS All vehicles shall be driven by an adult duly qualified and licensed to operate the vehicle. Drivers of school buses shall comply with the responsibilities as required in 702 KAR 5:080 and all other regulations.

SUPERVISION	A member of the faculty or administration staff shall accompany students on all school-sponsored trips.
INSURANCE	Only board-insured vehicles or appropriately certified common carriers shall be used for transporting students.
PRIOR APPROVAL FOR	Any school-related trip not falling within the guidelines aforementioned shall require prior board approval. Use of certified common carrier service shall be authorized by the board on a case-by-case basis and the reasons to justify such use shall be cited in the board minutes.
PARENT APPROVAL	Parents are to be informed of the nature of the trip, the approximate departure and return times, means of transportation and any other relevant information. Parents must give written approval for students to participate in school-sponsored trips.

_____ _____

PRINCIPAL'S SIGNATURE OF APPROVAL SUPERINTENDENT/SUPERVISOR APPROVAL

_____

DATE BOARD INFORMED/APPROVED

SAMPLE FORM

NAME OF DRIVER	BUS #
DATE OF TRIP	
SCHOOL	DEPARTMENT
DESTINATION	DEPARTURE TIME
APPROXIMATE ARRIVE TIME	AND RETURN
ROUTE	
SPECIAL STOPS (RESTROOM AND FOOD)	
TOLLS AND PARKING EXPENSE	
PERMISSION SLIPS CHECKED?	
DRIVER SIGNATURE	
GROUP LEADER SIGNATURE	
TRANSPORTATION DIRECTOR SIGNATURE	

7/02

NAME: _____ DATE: _____

EXTRA-CURRICULAR TRIPS
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

1. _____ The best way to ensure a safe and happy trip is through post-trip planning.

2. _____ Generally, departure times and locations are flexible.

3. _____ It is not necessary for the driver to have the name, address and phone number of the insurance carrier on a special trip.

4. _____ On an overnight trip, it is an excellent idea for the driver(s) to have a room of their own.

5. _____ On out-of-district trips, there should be no more than two-thirds of bus capacity on any one bus with middle and high school students.

6. _____ Usually, the driver plans the special trips routes.

7. _____ It is not necessary for the driver to have a list of the students on the bus since the school district has one.

8. _____ The maximum speed limit on an extra-curricular trip in a Kentucky school bus is five (5) miles per hour under the posted speed limit unless addressed in local board policy.

9. _____ On an extra-curricular trip a Kentucky school bus can tow a trailer behind the bus.

10. _____ On an extra-curricular trip a Kentucky school bus can be fueled while passengers are on board.

11. _____ Students should arrive for the extra-curricular trip thirty (30) minutes prior to departure.

12. _____ On athletic trips, a volunteer coach or volunteer assistant may serve as a chaperone.

13. _____ A school bus driver should not work over fifteen (15) hours in a twenty-four (24) hour period with not over ten of these hours being driving.

14. _____ The trip chaperone pays for all tolls.

15. _____ The length of the activity trip itself does not create additional problems.

INSTRUCTOR'S SIGNATURE: _____DATE: _____

EXTRA-CURRICULAR TRIPS
TEST
****PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

KEY

The answer key is only released to KDE endorsed trainers.

CHAPTER 17
TRAFFIC CONTROL DEVICES, SIGNS AND MARKINGS

TRAFFIC CONTROL DEVICES,

SIGNS AND MARKINGS

LESSON TOPIC:

TRAFFIC CONTROL DEVICES, SIGNS AND MARKINGS

OBJECTIVES:

To enable the driver to:

- identify the meaning of the standard colors, shapes, symbols and messages used on traffic signs and;
- identify the meaning of standard roadway markings.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
INTRODUCE UNIT.	**INTRODUCTION** Standardized traffic control devices are used to control and guide driver behavior. Most bus drivers will be familiar with most of the devices because they have been driving private automobiles for several years. Many drivers do not know the meanings of some of the older traffic control devices. Many new signs have been introduced which are not familiar to the average motorist.
REVIEW IMPORTANCE OF MAJOR TOPICS TO BE DISCUSSED.	This chapter will review all types of traffic control devices, highlighting some of the less understood and newer devices. Following are topics to be discussed in this chapter: 1. Traffic Signs 2. Traffic Signals 3. Roadway Markings
INTRODUCE TOPIC.	**TRAFFIC SIGNS** Traffic signs can convey many different kinds of messages to the driver. They can inform of laws, warn of hazards ahead or provide information or guidance to the driver. As one travels down the roadway, the shape or color of the sign can be recognized long before the pictorial can be recognized or the message read. For this reason, traffic signs are standardized by shape and color. Each shape and color has a specific meaning.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
ASK "WHAT DO THESE STANDARD COLORS MEAN?"	Standard colors and their meanings are: 1. RED – stop or movement prohibited. 2. GREEN – indicates movements permitted, direction guidance. 3. BLUE – motorist service and guidance. 4. YELLOW – general warning. 5. BLACK – regulation. 6. WHITE – regulation. 7. ORANGE – construction and maintenance warning. 8. BROWN – public recreation and scenic guidance.
ASK "WHAT DO THESE STANDARD SHAPES MEAN?"	Standard shapes and their meanings are: 1. OCTAGON – stop. 2. HORIZONTAL RECTANGLE - guidance information. 3. DIAMOND – general warning. 4. PENTAGON – school warning. 5. PENNANT – warning of no passing zone. 6. VERTICAL RECTANGLE – regulatory except for stop and yield. 7. EQUILATERAL TRIANGLE – yield. 8. ROUND – advance warning of a railroad crossing. 9. CROSSBUCK – railroad crossing. The U.S. is moving toward an international type system of traffic signs which emphasize pictures and

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	symbols rather than written messages. Symbolic signs are not entirely new as some have been used in this country for many years. They provide almost instant communication with the driver since they can be understood at a glance without having to be read. Some of the present word signs will remain in use. These are signs which have proven effective in the past and which contain easily understood messages. Using the standard colors and shapes, there are three (3) classifications of traffic signs. **REGULATORY SIGNS** Regulatory signs inform highway users of traffic laws or regulations. Regulatory signs are generally a rectangle with the longer dimension vertical with a black legend on a white background. Other colors and shapes are also used. Two (2) of the most common regulatory signs are used to indicate right-of-way. These are stop and yield signs. Regulatory signs are used to control speeds such as maximum, night or minimum speeds. Regulatory signs do exactly what they say – they regulate what a driver can do. They are also used to control turning movements. These are shown two (2) ways; by the older message signs or the newer symbolic signs with the red circle and red slash mark which means no or do not. For example: “Do Not Turn Right” or “No U Turn.”

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	They also control turning movements by showing direction of travel in a particular lane. Both lanes can turn left but only the right lane can go ahead – the familiar center lane is for left turns only. Regulatory signs are used to control alignment such as "Pass With Care" or "Do Not Pass." Alignment is also controlled by indicating keep right or keep left. Regulatory signs indicate exclusion such as "Do Not Enter" or "Wrong Way," or by prohibiting certain types of vehicles such as "No Trucks, No Bicycles" or "Motor Vehicles Only." Some regulatory signs indicate one-way movement. Certain regulatory signs control parking. When parking is prohibited, the parking signs have red lettering, such as "No Parking Any Time;" "No Stopping, Standing, or Parking;" or "No Parking, Bus Stop." When parking is permitted, but restricted as to time or manner, the lettering is green; such as "One-hour Parking" or "Parallel Parking Only." Regulatory signs can be used to supplement information given by traffic signals, such as "Stop Here On Red," "No Turn on Red," or "Crosswalk." Finally, regulatory signs are used for a variety of other controls; such as to provide axle weight limits, or indicate

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	railroad crossings, or when the road is closed to through traffic.
	WARNING SIGNS
	The second major classification of traffic signs is "warning signs." Warning signs inform the driver of situations ahead which may require extra care. These signs are yellow with black lettering and generally are diamond-shaped. Other shapes are used for very specific purposes.
	Warning signs are used to show changes in horizontal alignment; such as turns, curves and winding roads.
	Various types of intersections ahead are indicated symbolically. These signs indicate a cross road, a "T", and a "Y" intersection.
	Advance warning of traffic control devices is provided. Sometimes, a written message is used; such as "Stop Ahead." On others, the sign uses the pictures of the device ahead, such as yield sign or a traffic signal.
	Warning signs are used to show converging traffic lanes; such as the symbolic merge sign; or the message or symbolic sign for showing that the right lane ends.
	They are used to indicate narrow roadways such as "Road Narrows" or "One-Lane Bridge."
	Changes in highway design are also shown on warning signs. For instance, "Divided Highway Ahead," "Divided Highway Ends," or "Two-Way Traffic."

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	Highway grades and advance warning of railroad crossings are indicated on warning signs. Roadway surface conditions such as “Bump,” “Soft Shoulder,” and “Slippery When Wet” are also indicated. Various kinds of entrances and crossings are shown on warning signs. For instances, “Truck Entrance,” “Deer Crossing” or “Bicycle Crossing.” Warning signs are used to indicate advisory speeds such as exit and ramp speeds. A special type of warning sign is the pennant-shaped “No Passing Zone” sign. When used, they are on the left side of the road and are used in conjunction with the regulatory “Do Not Pass” sign. Finally, school signs are special kinds or warning signs, utilizing the pentagon shape. These indicate “School Area” and “School Crossing.” **GUIDE SIGNS** “Guide signs” are the third major classification of traffic signs. Guide signs guide drivers along streets and highways, inform them of interesting routes or direct them to their destination. Guide signs are generally rectangular in shape and have a white message on a green background. On conventional roads and streets, black messages on white backgrounds are frequently used as an alternative. Also, different colors and shapes are used for special purposes.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	One (1) type of special guide sign is the route maker. Each highway system has its own distinctive route marker. These illustrate those used on or in conjunction with the interstate system. These are used for US routes, state routes, county roads and roads in national parks and forests. Guide signs are used to indicate junctions of highways, the cardinal direction of a highway, alternate route to a particular number highway when a numbered route ends and temporary routes. A variety of advance route turn arrows and directional arrows are common guide signs. The most typical guide signs are mileage signs. On some of the interchanges, symbolic destination signs such as these illustrations are used. A special type of guide sign is used for recreation areas. These signs have a white message on a brown background. Another special guide sign is the service sign. These are white messages on a blue background and illustrate the location of a phone or hospital and that there are not barriers to the handicapped. Other service signs show gas, food, lodging or camping either through symbolic or message signs. Mileposts are another form of guide signs. Mileage always runs from south to north or west to

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	east and begins at the state line or at a junction where the route begins. Guide signs are used to show the locations of airports, bus stations and train stations. Finally, special panels reading "Exit Only" advise drivers of an imminent lane end situation. These signs use the warning sign combination of black letters on a yellow background. Highway construction and maintenance signs fall into the same three (3) major classifications as other signs; namely regulatory, warning and guide signs. Regulatory signs used in construction and maintenance zones use the normal standard colors, shapes and messages. Warning and guide signs also use the standardized shapes and messages but are distinctive in that black letters are used on an orange background. Typical construction and maintenance warning signs warn of construction or a detour ahead. They can warn of road work, shoulder work or a survey crew ahead. Typical construction and maintenance guide signs provide information on the length of a construction or maintenance zone or the direction of a detour. **<u>TRAFFIC SIGNALS</u>**
INTRODUCE TOPIC.	Traffic signals are valuable devices to control traffic and assign right-of-way. The message in traffic signals is relayed through the use of colors, therefore, the meaning of the colors have been standardized.

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	1. STEADY CIRCULAR GREEN SIGNAL – permits traffic to proceed if it is safe to do so. 2. STEADY CIRCULAR YELLOW SIGNAL - always follows a circular green signal or green arrow and warns that the red signal is about come on. Driver must stop if it is possible to do so. 3. STEADY CIRCULAR RED SIGNAL – means stop and remain stopped until a green signal is shown and it is safe to proceed. 4. STEADY GREEN ARROW – may be used instead of a steady circular green signal. The driver is permitted to proceed in the direction(s) of the arrow(s) if it is safe to do so. 5. FLASHING CIRCULAR RED SIGNAL – means stop and remain stopped until it is safe to proceed. Flashing red signals are used at particularly dangerous locations. 6. FLASHING CIRCULAR YELLOW SIGNAL – is a warning of a particular hazardous location. Drivers may proceed but use extreme caution. **ROADWAY MARKINGS** Like traffic signs and signals, roadway marking have a definite purpose and convey a special meaning. In some cases, they supplement the regulations and warnings conveyed on traffic signs and signals. In other instances,

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	they are used alone as there is no other way to effectively communicate this information. Roadway marking are standardized in color and type. 1. WHITE LINES – delineate separation of traffic flow in the same direction. 2. YELLOW LINES – delineate separation of traffic flow in the opposite directions. 3. BROKEN LINES – are permissive in nature. When traffic permits, broken lines may be crossed. 4. SOLID LINES – are restrictive in nature. Generally, they are not to be crossed. 5. DOUBLE SOLID LINES – indicate maximum restriction. They are not to be crossed. 6. BROKEN WHITE LINES – separate traffic lanes moving in the same direction when a roadway has more than one (1) lane moving in the same direction. Drivers are to drive between and straddle the lines. When traffic permits, broken white lines may be crossed to change lanes. 7. SOLID WHITE LINES – are used to mark the edge of the pavement. Pavement edge lines should not be crossed at moderate to high speeds. They may be crossed, however, at slow speeds when it is necessary to pull off onto the shoulder. When solid white lines

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	separate traffic moving in the same direction, do not cross to change lanes. 8. BROKEN YELLOW LINES – separate traffic moving in the opposite direction. When the broken yellow lines are on the driver's side of the road, it may be crossed if oncoming traffic permits. 9. SOLID YELLOW LINES – also separate traffic moving in the opposite direction. When the solid yellow line is on the driver's side of the road, it must not be crossed. One of the newer uses of the solid and broken yellow line used together is to delineate a left turn lane. The left turn lane is marked on both sides by both solid and broken yellow lines. Drivers wishing to turn left must turn from this lane. 10. DOUBLE SOLID LINES – are used to indicate that traffic from both directions is prohibited from crossing. 11. WHITE ARROWS – are used to show direction of travel for a given lane. Pavement markings are sometimes used to delineate pedestrian crosswalks. These are marked by solid white lines. When lines are used, they run all the way across the pavement. If a stop is required, drivers must stop before crossing the pedestrian crosswalks. Delineators are special kinds of guide markings to aid

INSTRUCTOR GUIDELINES/NOTES	CONTENT
	drivers at night. These little reflective devices are sometimes used on long continuous stretches of highway or on short sections where there is a change in the curvature of the road. Delineators are intended to help guide motorists as to the horizontal and vertical alignment of the highway. Delineator colors conform to the edge line colors painted on the highway. Three (3) colors are used: 1. WHITE – may be placed on the side of the roadway. 2. YELLOW – may be placed on the left side of the roadway. 3. RED – placed backwards on a ramp or roadway so it would be viewed by motorists traveling in the wrong direction on the ramp or roadway. **<u>SUMMARY</u>** During this chapter, traffic control devices, regulation, warning and guiding traffic signs were reviewed. Specifically, we reviewed. 1. Traffic Signs 2. Traffic Signals 3. Roadway Markings Traffic control devices are used to assist motorists in performing their driving task. Drivers should pay particular attention to all signs, signals and markings and adjust their driving behavior accordingly. This results in a safe, more effective flow of traffic.

6/03

NAME: _____DATE:_____

CHAPTER 17
TRAFFIC CONTROL DEVICES, SIGNS AND MARKINGS
TEST
**** PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

1. _____ The three (3) major classifications of traffic signs are regulatory, warning and guide signs.

2. _____ A flashing circular red signal means to come to a complete stop and remain stopped until directed to proceed.

3. _____ Solid yellow lines separate traffic moving in the opposite direction.

4. _____ A public recreation and scenic guidance sign is black in color.

5. _____ An example of a regulatory sign would be a Do Not Pass sign which is used to control alignment.

6. _____ A yellow delineator is usually placed on the left side of the roadway.

7. _____ A school warning sign is usually in the shape of a pentagon.

8. _____ A yield sign is usually in the shape of a pennant.

9. _____ Broken lines are restrictive in nature and should never be crossed.

10. _____ White arrows are used to show direction of travel for a given lane.

INSTRUCTOR'S SIGNATURE: _____ DATE: _____

CHAPTER 17
TRAFFIC CONTROL DEVICES, SIGNS AND MARKINGS
TEST
**** PLEASE ANSWER TRUE OR FALSE****

KEY

The answer key is only released to KDE endorsed trainers.